

ENGLISH

FOR PREPARATORY SCHOOLS

20
26

الصف الأول الإعدادي
الفصل الدراسي الثاني



1st
PREP
SECOND TERM

دار غزة

للطباعة والنشر والتوزيع

ghazzahouse@gmail.com



Contents

1^{st.}

Prep.

English

Part 1

- **Unit 7:** -----
Reviving the Spirit of Civilization
- **Unit 8:** -----
Family Values and Roles
- **Unit 9:** -----
Make It Yourself
- **Review 3:** -----

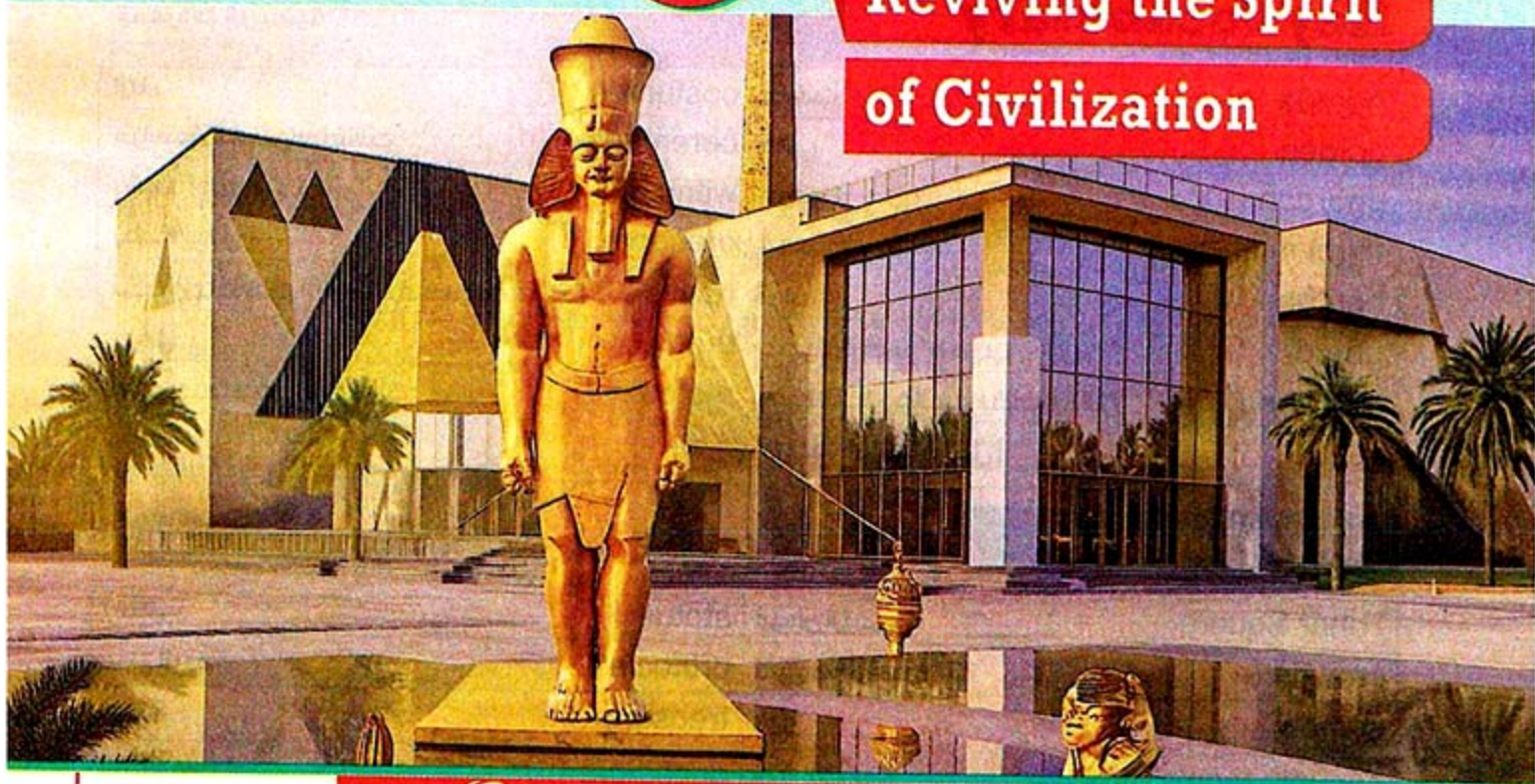
Part 2

- **Unit 10:** -----
Helping Others
- **Unit 11:** -----
The Natural World
- **Unit 12:** -----
I Will Be Responsible
- **Review 4:** -----

Booklet (free with the book)

- **Dictation:** -----
- **Homework exercises on each unit:** -----
- **Tests on units:** -----
- **General Tests on the Second Term** -----
- **Al Azhar Tests** -----
- **Listening material** -----

Reviving the Spirit of Civilization



Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

- Identify main ideas in texts about Egypt's national heritage projects, museums, and cultural events
- Understand descriptions of historical ceremonies
- Infer meaning of new vocabulary from context

Listening:

- Listen for key information in discussions about Egyptian cultural projects and national celebrations

Speaking:

- Share opinions and ideas about how Egypt protects its history
- Engage in meaningful discussions

- about the importance of museums, monuments, and ancient sites
- Ask and answer questions about events, locations and historical figures accurately

Language:

- Use modal verbs for necessity, obligation, advice, and prohibition: must, have to, should, mustn't, don't have to
- Apply modal verbs correctly in speaking, reading comprehension, and writing tasks

Writing:

- Write short advice blogs and paragraphs offering guidance on protecting Egyptian heritage



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

parade (n)	موكب	costumes (n)	ازياء
golden (adj)	ذهبي	ceremonies (n)	مراسم/طقوس/احتفالات
pharaoh (n)	فرعون	witness (ed)	يشهد (حفل او حدث)
royal mummies	موميאות ملكية	preserve (d)	يحفظ/يصون
heritage (n)	تراث	revive (d)	يُحيي (إعادة الحياة لشيء قديم أو مفقود)
grand (adj)	عظيم/كبير/مهيّب	bury (ied)	يدفن
(be) lined (adj)	يصطف على جانبيه/يكتظ/يملئ	restore (d)	يُحيي/يستحضر/يرمم
vehicle (n)	مركبة (وسيلة نقل)		

المفردات الإضافية

Vocabulary



Tahrir Square	ميدان التحرير	statue (n)	تمثال
crowds (n)	حشود/جماهير	artifacts (n)	قطع أثرية
symbol (n)	رمز	treasure (n)	كنز
security teams	فرق الحراسة	ancestors (n)	اسلاف/اجداد
soldier (n)	جندي	beauty (n)	جمال
musician (n)	موسيقيار	celebration (n)	احتفال
performer (n)	مؤدي/فنان	duty (n)	واجب/مسئولية
traditional (adj)	تقليدي	monument (n)	نُصب تذكاري/معلم/أثر تاريخي
glorious (adj)	مجيد/عظيم	roots (n)	اصول/جذور
performance (n)	اداء	the poor (adj)	الفقراء
live (adj) (adv)	بشكل مباشر / على الهواء	alive (adj)	ينبض بالحياة/على قيد الحياة
message (n)	رسالة	amaze (d)	يدهش
pride (n)	فخر	gather (ed)	يتجمع/يحتشد
priceless (adj)	لا يقدر بثمن/ثمين جدا	move (n)/(v.d)	نقل/حركة/يتحرك
generation (n)	جيل	place (d)	يضع
uniform (n)	زي موحد	decorate (d)	يزين
outfit (n)	زي/طقم ملابس	honor (ed)	يكرم
journey	رحلة	inspire (d)	يلهم
the National Museum of Egyptian Civilization	المتحف القومي للحضارة المصرية	respect (n)/(v.ed)	احترام/يحترم
		damage (d)	يدمر/يتلف

archaeologist (n)	عالم آثار	historical (adj)	تاريخي
expert (n)	خبير	strict (adj)	صارم/حازم
soft tools (n)	ادوات غير قاسية (لينّة)	sharp (adj)	حاد
citizen (n)	مواطن		

Definitions

١. محفوظ/محنط
٢. طابور
٣. احتفال
٤. تقليد
٥. مجموعة
٦. ينتقل
٧. جيل
٨. الحالة الاصلية
٩. طريق

royal mummies (n)	مومياوات ملكية	the preserved ⁽¹⁾ bodies of ancient kings and queens
witness (v)	يشهد	to see something happen with your own eyes
parade (n)	موكب	a line ⁽²⁾ of people or things moving together for celebration ⁽³⁾
vehicle (n)	مركبة	car, bus, or machine used to travel from place to place
costumes (n)	ازياء	clothes worn for a special event or tradition ⁽⁴⁾
ceremonies (n)	مراسم / احتفالات / طقوس	a set ⁽⁵⁾ of actions done in the same way for a long time
heritage (n)	تراث	important history, culture, and traditions passed ⁽⁶⁾ from one generation ⁽⁷⁾ to another
grand (adj)	كبير/عظيم	very large, important, or impressive
restore (v)	يرمم/يستحضر/يُحيي	to bring something back to its original condition ⁽⁸⁾
(be) lined (v)	يصطف على جانبيه	to be placed along the sides of a street or path ⁽⁹⁾
bury (ied)	يدفن	put in the ground and covered with soil

Expressions & Prepositions

A once-in-a-lifetime event	حدث استثنائي/حدث يحدث مرة واحدة في الحياة	watch the event live	يشاهد الحدث على الهواء/مباشر
come alive	يصبح نابضاً بالحياة	take part in	يشارك في
along the route	على طول الطريق	key to	الاساس لـ/مفتاح لـ
on television	في التلفزيون	safety rules	قواعد الامان
take place	يحدث	a specially designed vehicle	مركبة مصممة خصيصاً
Reviving the Spirit of Civilization	إحياء روح الحضارة		



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
preserve	يحفظ	keep/protect/save		destroy/ruin	يدمر
grand	كبير/عظيم	glorious/magnificent		ordinary/unimportant	عادي/غير مهم
witness	يشهد	attend/watch		ignore/neglect	يتجاهل/يهمل
national	محلي	local		international/global	عالمي
priceless	ثمين جدا	valuable/expensive		worthless/cheap	بلا قيمة/رخيص
powerful	قوي	strong/effective		weak/ineffective	ضعيف/غير مؤثر
damage	يتلف	break/harm		fix/repair	يصلح

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ful	تحول الفعل او الاسم الى صفة	powerful / successful
-al	تحول الاسم الى صفة	national / traditional / historical
-ly	تحول الصفة الى حال	carefully / specially
-ous	تحول الاسم الى صفة	glorious
-ist	تشير الى وظيفة شخص ما	scientist / archaeologist
-ian	تشير الى جنسية او مكان او شخص لديه مهارة او درس موضوع ما	Egyptian / musician
-ation	تحول الفعل الى اسم	civilization
-ed	تحول الفعل الى صفة	decorated/protected
-ity	تحول الصفة الى اسم	security
-en	تحول الاسم الى صفة	golden

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
shine	shone	shone
begin	began	begun
take part	took part	taken part
take place	took place	taken place
wear	wore	worn
bring	brought	brought
buy	bought	bought



Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 a once-in-a-lifetime event

• حدث استثنائي/حدث يحدث مرة واحدة في الحياة

• لاحظ التركيبية صفة تصف اسم بعدها حيث تأتي الكلمات مع شرط كفواصل **once-in-a-lifetime (-)**

Ex. It was a **once-in-a-lifetime** event.

2 life / alive / live

• **life** (اسم - noun) الجمع: **lives** (حيوات)

• تعني "الحياة" كفكرة عامة أو الفترة التي يعيشها الإنسان.

Ex. **Life** is beautiful.

Ex. He risked his **life** to save the child.

• **alive** (صفة - adjective)

• تعني "على قيد الحياة" أو "حي" عكس كلمة ميت (**dead**). تأتي غالباً بعد فعل (**verb to be**) ولا تأتي قبل الاسم مباشرة.

Ex. The fish is still **alive**.

Ex. It's great to feel **alive**!

• **live**

• - صفة: (**Adjective**) تعني "بث مباشر" أو "حي" (تستخدم لوصف الأحداث أو العروض).
النطق: (نطق طويل مثل كلمة "five").

Ex. A **live** program.

Ex. The match will be shown **live** on On Time Sport Channel.

• (لها نطقان واستخدامان).

• - فعل: (**verb**) تعني "يعيش" أو "يسكن".
النطق: (نطق قصير مثل كلمة "sit").

Ex. I **live** in Cairo.

- They **live** a happy life.

3 historical / historic

• **historic**

• تاريخي (قديم متعلق بالماضي له أهمية تاريخية)
• تُستخدم هذه الصفة لوصف حدث أو شيء له أهمية كبرى في التاريخ، أو شيء سيذكره الناس للأبد لأنه غير مجرى الأمور.

Ex. The moon landing was a **historic** event.

(كان الهبوط على القمر حدثاً تاريخياً هاماً.)

Ex. Our team played a **historic** match yesterday.

(لعب فريقنا مباراة تاريخية بالأمس)

• **historical**

• تاريخي (بمعنى «متعلق بالماضي»)
• تُستخدم هذه الصفة لوصف أي شيء له علاقة بالتاريخ أو بدراسة الماضي، بغض النظر عما إذا كان هذا الشيء مهماً أو عادياً.
(أحب قراءة الروايات التاريخية - أي التي تتحدث عن حقبة قديمة.)

Ex. I love reading **historical** novels.

Ex. The museum has many **historical** documents.

(يحتوي المتحف على العديد من الوثائق التاريخية - أي وثائق من الماضي.)

4 in + clothes / in + language

Ex. The boy **in** the **red shirt** is my friend. Ex. The story is written **in** **English**.

Along the **route**⁽¹⁰⁾, soldiers, musicians, and **performers**⁽¹¹⁾ in traditional **costumes**⁽¹²⁾ honored Egypt's **glorious**⁽¹³⁾ past with performances inspired by ancient **ceremonies**⁽¹⁴⁾. People across the world watched the event **live**⁽¹⁵⁾ on television and online. The parade⁽¹⁶⁾ was not just a ceremony - it was a message to the world that Egypt has preserved its history with **pride**⁽¹⁷⁾ and must continue protecting its **priceless**⁽¹⁸⁾ **heritage**⁽¹⁹⁾ for future generations.

Reading Skill

مهارات القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The main purpose of the parade was to move _____ to their new home.
a. theaters b. museum
c. restaurants d. royal mummies
- How many royal mummies took part in the parade? _____
a. 20 b. 21 c. 22 d. 25
- The performers wore _____ during the event.
a. modern uniforms b. traditional costumes
c. tourist clothes d. sports outfits

B. Answer the following questions

- When and where did the parade take place?
- What does the parade show about Egypt's respect for its history?

1. d 2. c 3. b
4. It took place on Saturday, April 3, 2021 from the Egyptian Museum in Tahrir Square to the National Museum of Egyptian Civilization.
5. It shows that Egypt has preserved its history with pride and must continue protecting its priceless heritage for future generations.

Answers:



Audio Script

SB Page (16)

It is our **duty**⁽¹⁾ to protect our history and **preserve**⁽²⁾ our ancient treasures for the future. Egyptian cities **are lined**⁽³⁾ with tourists who want to see how much Egypt respects its grand **civilization**⁽⁴⁾ and **honors**⁽⁵⁾ its **ancestors**⁽⁶⁾. Scientists and **archaeologists**⁽⁷⁾ must follow **strict rules**⁽⁸⁾ to protect the mummies. Some of them were **buried**⁽⁹⁾ thousands of years ago, so the experts must wear gloves and use **soft tools**⁽¹⁰⁾. They mustn't use anything **sharp**⁽¹¹⁾ that might damage them. **Citizens**⁽¹²⁾ should visit museums and historical sites to learn about their **roots**⁽¹³⁾. By exploring monuments, they discover how powerful and creative their ancestors were. People don't need to be experts to enjoy Ancient Egypt; museums help **restore**⁽¹⁴⁾ the past and make it easy for everyone to understand. Teachers always remind us that respecting our history is the key to building a successful future.

- واجب
- يحفظ
- يمتلئ بـ / يصطف
- على جانبه بـ
- حضارة
- يكرم
- اسلاف/اجداد
- علماء الآثار
- قواعد صارمة
- مدفون
- أدوات غير قاسية
- حاد
- مواطنون
- اصول/جذور
- يستحضر/يحيى

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

- To _____ is to see something happen with your own eyes.
a. decorate b. honor c. bury d. witness
- A _____ is a line of people or things moving together for celebration.
a. statue b. parade c. mummy d. symbol
- A _____ is a car, bus, or machine used to travel from place to place
a. vehicle b. museum c. generation d. uniform
- Clothes worn for a special event or tradition are _____.
a. ceremonies b. costumes c. celebration d. ancestors
- To _____ is to bring something back to its original condition.
a. damage b. honor c. restore d. respect
- To _____ is to put in the ground and cover with soil.
a. inspire b. damage c. gather d. bury

Synonyms & Antonyms

- I visited the National Museum. The antonym of the word "national" is _____.
a. local b. international c. general d. cheap
- The lion is a powerful animal. The synonym of the word "powerful" is _____.
a. weak b. ineffective c. strong d. unimportant
- The words "priceless" and "valuable" are _____.
a. synonyms b. antonyms c. nouns d. adverbs
- We must preserve the forest. "Preserve" has the same meaning as _____.
a. keep b. destroy c. ruin d. damage
- The storm didn't damage the house. "Damage" is the opposite of _____.
a. bury b. repair c. harm d. hurt
- Egypt respects its grand civilization. The word "grand" means _____.
a. ordinary b. unimportant c. magnificent d. normal

Prefixes & Suffixes

- We add the suffix "_____" to form the adjective from the word "power".
a. -ly b. -ful c. -ous d. -ion
- The suffix "-ous" changes the noun 'glory' into a/an _____.
a. adjective b. verb c. adverb d. noun

15. To form the adjective of the noun "tradition", we add the suffix "_____".
 a. -ly b. -ist c. -al d. -ive
16. The suffix "_____" changes the verb "civilize" into a noun.
 a. -ation b. -ive c. -ily d. -ness
17. The suffix "_____" turns the word "gold" into an adjective.
 a. -en b. -ly c. -ive d. -ed
18. We can add the suffix "_____" to the verb "decorate" to get the adjective.
 a. -ful b. -ed c. -ly d. -ily

Collocations & Guessing meaning

19. In the museum, students can _____ the beauty of Egypt's history. SB
 a. ignore b. forget c. hide d. witness
20. The _____ were moved to the new museum in a great event in Cairo. SB
 a. rockets b. mummies c. trains d. games
21. During the celebration, people wore traditional _____ from Ancient Egypt. SB
 a. costumes b. customs c. customers d. continents
22. The whole world watched the Pharaohs' Golden _____ on TV. SB
 a. party b. picnic c. parade d. park
23. The Cairo International Book Fair takes _____ in January every year.
 a. part b. place c. area d. idea
24. Did you take _____ in the school play last year?
 a. place b. side c. mummy d. part
25. The match will be shown _____ by the BBC.
 a. live b. life c. living d. alive

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

heritage - took - historic - bury - crowds

The Pharaohs' Golden Parade was a once-in-a-lifetime event that took place in Cairo. It was a ① _____ night where twenty-two royal mummies were moved to a new museum. The streets shone with golden lights as ② _____ gathered to watch the event live. It was amazing to see history come alive before our eyes. Many people ③ _____ part in organizing this celebration to show the world our great ④ _____. Respecting our history is the key to a bright future.



Language

قواعد لغوية

Using Modal Verbs for Necessity, Advice Unnecessity & Prohibition

- تستخدم الافعال الناقصة للتعبير عن الضرورة والنصيحة وعدم الضرورة والمنع او التحريم كما يلي:

1 Necessity and Obligation

الضرورة والالزام

1 Must يجب أن

- نستخدم (must) للتعبير عن شيء واجب فعله او ضروري ولا يوجد خيار آخر.
- نستخدم (must) للضرورة النابعة من دافع داخلي (مشاعر، وعود، أو قواعد عامة يضعها الشخص لنفسه)

Ex. I must study hard to get high marks. (دافع شخصي).

1 Form: التكوين

مصدر الفعل + must + inf. فاعل Subject

Ex. You must follow the teacher's instructions.

2 Question: السؤال

? مصدر الفعل + inf. فاعل Must + subject

Ex. Must he follow the rules?

Ex. Yes, he must. اجابة مثبتة No, he mustn't. اجابة منفية

2 Have/Has to يجب أن

- نستخدم للضرورة المفروضة من جهة خارجية (قوانين، قواعد عمل، أو ظروف خارجة عن إرادتك)

Ex. Students have to wear a uniform at school. (قانون مدرسي).

Form: التكوين

مصدر الفعل + have to + inf. اسم جمع I / We / You / They

مصدر الفعل + has to + inf. اسم مفرد He / She / It

Ex. We have to wear our school uniform every day.

- She has to go to school.

- لاحظ لا نستخدم must للتعبير عن الالزام في الماضي وبدلاً من ذلك نستخدم had

Ex. I had to pay 500 pounds to renew my passport last week.

- بدائل must/ have to/has to : ادرس الآتي سيساعدك في حل سؤال Rewrite

Modal verb	Equal Phrases & Structures	Example
Must / Have / Has to	It's necessary (for someone) to.. من الضروري أن	It's necessary to have a passport.
	It's essential /important to... من المهم أن	It's essential to drink water.
	It's a rule to... انه قانون او قاعدة ان	It's a rule to wear a uniform.
	Be obliged to... يكون مجبر ان	You are obliged to pay taxes.

2 Prohibition

المنع أو التحريم

1 Mustn't لا يجب أن

نستخدمها عندما يكون الشيء ممنوعاً أو غير مسموح به (forbidden) بموجب قوانين أو قواعد.

1 Form: التكوين

مصدر الفعل + mustn't + فاعل Subject

Ex. You **mustn't** park here; it's forbidden.

- **لاحظ:** فعل الشيء هنا سيؤدي إلى مشكلة أو عقوبة.
- نستخدم في اللافتات والإشعارات العامة التي تُبلغ الناس بالقواعد والقوانين.

Ex. You **mustn't** smoke here.

- بدائل **mustn't**: ادرس الاتي سيساعدك في حل سؤال **Rewrite**

Modal verb	Equal Phrases & Structures	Example
Mustn't	It's forbidden to... من المحظور أن...	It's forbidden to park here.
	It's prohibited to... من الممنوع أن...	It's prohibited to enter this room.
	It's not allowed to... غير مسموح ب...	You aren't allowed to shout.
	It's against the law to... مخالف للقانون أن...	It's against the law to steal.
	Be banned from (+ -ing) ممنوع من	You are banned from smoking here.

3 Advice النصيحة

Should/shouldn't

- نستخدمها لإعطاء رأي حول ما هو جيد أو «مستحسن» فعله. (Advisable).

Should / Shouldn't: تعني «يجب» أو «نبغي» / أو لا يجب (بمعنى النصيحة وليس الإلزام).

1 Form: التكوين

مصدر الفعل + should/shouldn't + فاعل Subject

Ex. You **should** see a doctor; you look tired.

Ex. You **shouldn't** eat too much sugar.

2 Question: السؤال

?مصدر الفعل + inf. + فاعل Subject Should/Shouldn't

Ex. **Should** I listen to the teacher?

Ex. Yes, you **should**.

بدائل **should/shouldn't**: ادرس الاتي سيساعدك في حل سؤال **Rewrite**

Modal verb	Equal Phrases & Structures	Example
Should	It's a good idea to... انها فكرة جيدة ان	It's a good idea to sleep early.
	I advise you to... It's advisable انصحك ان من المنصوح به/يستحسن	I advise you to study.
	If I were you, I would... اذا كنت مكانك	If I were you, I'd go to the doctor.
	You'd better... يفضل ان	You'd better start now.
Shouldn't	It's a bad idea to... انها فكرة سيئة ان	It's a bad idea to smoke.
	I advise you not to... It is not advisable to انصحك ان لا لا ينصح ان	I advise you not to be late.
	If I were you, I wouldn't... اذا كنت مكانك لن	If I were you, I wouldn't buy that.

4 Unnecessity

عدم الضرورة

مصدر الفعل. **Subject + don't / doesn't have to + inf.**

- نستخدمها عندما يكون الشيء ليس ضرورياً؛ أي أنك مخير بفعله أو تركه (لست مضطراً).

1 Form: التكوين

مصدر الفعل. **I/We/You/They/ اسم جمع + don't have to inf.**

مصدر الفعل. **He/She/It/ اسم مفرد + doesn't have to + inf.**

Ex. We **don't have to** wear our school uniform on Fun DAY.

Ex. Tomorrow is a holiday, so he **doesn't have to** wake up early.

بدائل **Don't / Doesn't have to**: ادرس الاتي سيساعدك في حل سؤال **Rewrite**

Modal verb	Equal Phrases & Structures	Example
Don't/ Doesn't have to	It's not necessary to... ليس من الضروري ان	It's not necessary to bring a gift.
	There is no need to... لا يوجد حاجة لـ	There is no need to run; we are early.
	Needn't (+ verb)	You needn't come tomorrow.

Exercises on Language

Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

Student's Book Exercises

- I advise you to brush your teeth. (should) SB

- It is very important to follow the school rules. (have to) SB

- It is not allowed to touch the museum artifacts. (mustn't) SB

- It is necessary for us to help the poor. (must) SB

- It is not necessary to bring your own water; the school gives water. (don't have to) SB

- It's forbidden to touch old statues. (mustn't) SB

Bit by Bit Exercises

- I advise you to see a doctor about that cough. (should)

- It's a good idea for Sarah to save some money. (should)

- I advise you not to eat so much junk food. (shouldn't)

- It isn't a good idea to walk alone at night. (shouldn't)

- It is a rule that students wear a uniform. (have to)

- It is necessary for you to wear a seatbelt while driving. (must)

13. The school rules say that students need to arrive at 8:00 a.m. (have to)

14. It is necessary for you to have a passport to enter the country. (must)

15. It is essential for him to take this medicine. (must)

16. I am obliged to attend the meeting. (have to)

17. It is important for you to keep this secret. (must)

18. The rules say players need to stay behind the line. (have to)

19. It is forbidden to use mobile phones during the exam. (mustn't)

20. You aren't allowed to feed the animals in the zoo. (mustn't)

21. It is prohibited to park in front of the gate. (mustn't)

22. Don't touch the paintings; it's against the rules. (mustn't)

23. It isn't necessary for you to wash the car; I did it. (don't have to)

24. You have a choice; you can come or stay home. (don't have to)

25. It isn't necessary for Sara to cook tonight. (doesn't have to)

26. You don't need to pay now; you can pay later. (don't have to)

27. Wearing a tie is not a rule in this office. (don't have to)

28. There is no need to shout; I can hear you. (don't have to)

29. It is essential to wash your hands. (must)

30. If I were you, I wouldn't go out in the rain. (shouldn't)



Speaking

A discussion about protecting Egypt's civilization:

• مناقشة حول حماية الحضارة المصرية:

Question

1. How does Egypt honor its past?

كيف تكرم مصر ماضيها؟

2. How does Egypt protect its civilization for the future generations?

كيف تحمي مصر حضارتها للأجيال القادمة؟

3. Why must we protect our ancient monuments?

لماذا يجب علينا حماية آثارنا القديمة؟

4. What do you think was the most special part of the parade?

ما هو برأيك الجزء الأبرز في العرض؟

5. What must Egyptians do to protect their heritage?

ما الذي يجب على المصريين فعله لحماية تراثهم؟

Answer

By organizing grand events like "The Pharaohs' Golden Parade".

من خلال تنظيم فعاليات ضخمة مثل "موكب الفراعنة الذهبي".

By moving royal mummies to modern museums (like the National Museum of Egyptian Civilization)

من خلال نقل المومياوات الملكية إلى متاحف حديثة (مثل المتحف القومي للحضارة المصرية).

Because they represent a "glorious past" that belongs to future generations.

لأنها تمثل "ماضيًا مجيدًا" يخص الأجيال القادمة.

It was the journey of the 22 royal mummies.

كانت رحلة المومياوات الـ ٢٢ الملكية.

They must learn more about their ancient history

يجب عليهم معرفة المزيد عن تاريخهم القديم.

They should visit museums to understand their civilization.

ينبغي عليهم زيارة المتاحف لفهم حضارتهم.

They mustn't damage or touch old monuments.

يجب عليهم عدم إتلاف أو لمس الآثار القديمة.

General Exercises



on Lessons 1 & 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Royal are the preserved bodies of ancient kings and queens.

- a. monuments b. mummies c. statues d. paintings

2. are a set of actions done in the same way for a long time.

- a. Festivals b. Habits c. Parades d. Ceremonies

3. _____ means very large, important, or impressive.
 a. Grand b. Tiny c. Simple d. Small
4. To be _____ is to be placed along the sides of a street or path.
 a. hidden b. amazed c. lined d. interested
5. The word "local" has the same meaning as "_____".
 a. international b. global c. universal d. national
6. Egyptians gathered to witness history come alive. The word "witness" is the antonym of _____.
 a. attend b. ignore c. watch d. see
7. The antonym of the word "preserve" is "_____".
 a. destroy b. keep c. save d. protect
8. The antonym of the word "priceless" is "_____".
 a. worthless b. expensive c. valuable d. precious
9. The word "powerful" is the opposite of "_____".
 a. strong b. effective c. weak d. huge
10. We add the suffix "_____" to form the adjective from the word "success".
 a. -ly b. -ful c. -ous d. -ion
11. To form the adjective of the verb "decorate", we add the suffix "_____".
 a. -ly b. -ed c. -al d. -ion
12. The suffix "_____" changes the word "special" into an adverb.
 a. -ation b. -ive c. -ly d. -ness
13. The suffix "_____" turns the word "secure" into a noun.
 a. -ful b. -ed c. -ly d. -ity
14. Huge _____ gathered in the street to see the parade.
 a. monuments b. crowds c. roots d. stars
15. We had a big _____ for my brother's birthday.
 a. celebration b. archaeologist c. roots d. history
16. The Great Pyramid is a famous ancient _____.
 a. soldier b. monument c. outfit d. performance
17. A/An _____ studies ancient objects and buildings.
 a. archaeologist b. teacher c. journalist d. nurse

18. The plant is still because I gave it water.
 a. pride b. alive c. week d. dead
19. The government decided to the famous scientists.
 a. honor b. forget c. ignore d. leave
20. Good teachers always their students to work hard.
 a. dislike b. inspire c. damage d. hate

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

preserve - proud - pride - archaeologists - monuments

Egypt has a glorious history. It is famous for its ancient ①, like the Great Pyramids and Sphinx. Long ago, powerful kings and queens ruled this land. Today, ② still find hidden treasure and mummies in the sand. This history is a symbol of ③ for all Egyptians. We must ④ these sites to inspire future generations and keep our roots alive.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

1. If I were you, I would tell the truth. (should)

2. It is necessary for my sister to finish her homework. (has to)

3. Walking on the grass is forbidden. (mustn't)

4. Driving without a license is against the law. (mustn't)

5. It is wrong to lie to your parents. (mustn't)

6. It is not necessary for us to book a table. (don't have to)

7. It is a bad idea to leave your keys in the car. (shouldn't)

8. It isn't necessary for me to get up early on Sunday. (don't have to)

9. Don't smoke in hospitals. It's against the law.

(mustn't)

10. It isn't a good idea to drink too much coffee before bed.

(shouldn't)

4 Complete the following dialog:

Omar and Layla are talking about Egypt's past.

Omar : It's amazing how Egypt honors its past.

Layla : Yes! It is a historic moment for us. We must protect our

① for the future.

Omar : Why is it important to preserve our monuments?

Layla : Because they represent a "glorious ②" that belongs to future generations.

Omar : How does Egypt ③ its past?

Layla : Egypt honors its past by organizing grand events like "The Pharaohs' Golden Parade.

Omar : True. Many young Egyptians took ④ in the celebrations.

Layla : It really makes the past come alive.

5 Write a text of NINETY (90) words on:

(مُجَاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"The Royal parade"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- Where did it take place?
- What happened?
- What was it symbol of?

- جمل تساعدك في كتابة الفقرة:

- It took place in Cairo
- It was a grand celebration to move twenty-two ancient mummies.....
- This parade was a symbol of Egypt's.....



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

magnificent (adj)	رائع/خلاب/مبهر	artifacts (n)	قطع أثرية
exhibition (n)	عرض/معرض	symbol (n)	رمز
civilization (n)	حضارة		

Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM)	المتحف المصري الكبير	conservation center	مركز للترميم (للمحافظة على الآثار)
cultural (adj)	ثقافي	space (n)	مساحة
(be) located (adj)	موجود	workshops (n)	ورش
promising (adj)	واعد/مبشر	unique (adj)	نادر/فريد
modern building	مبنى حديث	wonder (n)	أعجوبة/روعة
glass fronts	واجهات زجاجية	fashion (n)	موضة
hall (n)	صالة/بهو/ممر	education (n)	تعليم
square meter	متر مربع	foreign tourism	السياحة الأجنبية
archaeological (adj)	أثري	cover (v. ed)	يغطي
single (adj)	واحد/فردى	house (v. d)	يحتوى على/يضم
special (adj)	خاص	allow (v. ed)	يسمح/يُتيح
blend (n)	مزيج	explore (v. d)	يستكشف
technology (n)	تكنولوجيا	celebrate (v. d)	يحتفل
interactive displays	شاشات عرض تفاعلية	experience (v. d)	يمر بـ/يواجه/يعيش تجربة
3D models	نماذج ثلاثية الأبعاد	display (v. ed)	يعرض
digital guides	إرشادات/أدلة رقمية	combine (v. d)	يدمج/يمزج

Definitions

artifact (n)	قطعة أثرية	a piece of art or tool ⁽¹⁾ made by humans long ago
civilization (n)	حضارة	people's way of life, culture, and achievements ⁽²⁾
exhibition (n)	معرض/عرض	a public display ⁽³⁾ of objects or artworks
symbol (n)	رمز	a picture or sign ⁽⁴⁾ that shows something
magnificent (adj)	رائع/مبهر/خلاب	extremely beautiful

١. أداة
٢. إنجازات
٣. عرض
٤. علامة

Expressions & Prepositions

(be) located in	موجود/يقع في	symbol of	رمز لـ
stand as a bridge	يمثل جسرا	welcome to	يرحب بـ
blend of	مزيج من	experience the wonder	يجرب/يستمتع بروعة
in a new way	بشكل جديد	in the heart of	في وسط/قلب



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
magnificent	رائع/مبهر	wonderful/impressive		insignificant / unimpressive	غير مهم/غير مثير للإعجاب
promising	واعد/مبشر	hopeful		dull / hopeless	ممل/يأس
modern	حديث	new/up-to-date/recent		ancient / old/old fashioned	قديم
blend	مزيج	mix/compound		division / separation	انقسام
allow	يسمح	approve/support		deny / refuse	يرفض
unique	نادر	special/rare/uncommon		common / normal / ordinary	عادي

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ing	تحول الفعل او الاسم الى صفة	promising
-ed	تحول الاسم او الفعل الى صفة	designed
-ion	تحول الفعل الى اسم	exhibition
-al	تحول الاسم الى صفة	digital/national
-ical	تحول الاسم الى صفة	archaeological
-ation	تحول الفعل الى اسم	civilization/conservation
inter-	تعني بين او متبادل	interactive
-or	تشير الى الشخص الذي يقوم بالفعل	visitor
-ian	تشير الى شخص او شيء مرتبط بـ مكان	Egyptian

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
show	يظهر/يعرض	showed	shown
stand	يقف/يمثل	stood	stood
tell	يخبر	told	told
make	يجعل	made	made



Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 discover / invent / explore

• discover

- يكتشف (شيء موجود ولكنه غير معروف)

Ex. The planet Pluto was **discovered** in 1930.

• invent

- يخترع (شيء لم يكن موجود)

Ex. Graham Bell **invented** the telephone in 1876.

• explore

يستكشف/يستطلع (مكان/شيء)

Ex. Some scientists went to **explore** the new site.

2 include / contain / consist

• include

يشمل/يتضمن/جزء من قائمة

- تستخدم لإضافة شيء كجزء من مجموعة أو قائمة. تعني أن هذا الشيء هو واحد من عدة أشياء أخرى

Ex. The price **includes** breakfast.

• contain

يحتوي (تستخدم عندما يكون الشيء بداخل شيء آخر)

Ex. The box **contains** old photos.

• consist of

يتكون من (كل شيء تماما)

Ex. The team **consists of** 11 players.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Children love to the forest.

a. invent

b. explore

c. invite

d. discover

2. My family my parents and two brothers.

a. includes

b. consists of

c. contains

d. completes

Reading

SB Page (18)



SB Page (18)

استمع إلى النصوص



The Grand Egyptian Museum⁽¹⁾ (GEM) is one of Egypt's most magnificent⁽²⁾ cultural projects. It is located near the Giza Pyramids. It stands⁽³⁾ as a bridge between Egypt's great past and its promising⁽⁴⁾ future. Designed with modern building, glass fronts⁽⁵⁾, and large exhibition⁽⁶⁾ halls, the museum covers over 480.000 square meters⁽⁷⁾, making it the world's largest archaeological museum⁽⁸⁾ for a single civilization⁽⁹⁾.

The GEM will house more than 100.000 artifacts⁽¹⁰⁾ that tell the story of Ancient Egypt. What makes the museum special is its blend⁽¹¹⁾ of tradition and technology. Interactive displays⁽¹²⁾, 3D



models⁽¹³⁾, and digital guides allow visitors to explore Ancient Egypt in a new way. The GEM also includes a conservation center⁽¹⁴⁾, library, cinema, and spaces for workshops and culture events.

More than just a museum, the Grand Egyptian Museum is a symbol of⁽¹⁵⁾ national pride. It celebrates Egypt's unique heritage⁽¹⁶⁾ while welcoming the world to experience the wonder⁽¹⁷⁾ of its civilization in the heart of Giza.

١. المتحف المصري الكبير
٢. مبهر/رائع
٣. يمثل
٤. واعد
٥. واجهات زجاجية
٦. معرض
٧. متر مربع
٨. متحف أثري
٩. حضارة واحدة
١٠. قطع أثرية
١١. مزيج
١٢. شاشات عرض تفاعلية
١٣. نماذج ثلاثية الأبعاد
١٤. مركز للترميم
١٥. رمز
١٦. تراث فريد
١٧. يعيش تجربة روعة

Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Where is the Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM) located?
 - a. In the heart of Luxor.
 - b. Near the Giza Pyramids.
 - c. Inside the Cairo Citadel.
 - d. In Aswan
2. The GEM is the world's largest museum for a _____ civilization.
 - a. single
 - b. modern
 - c. small
 - d. new
3. What can visitors use to explore Ancient Egypt in a new way?
 - a. Only old books.
 - b. Digital guides and 3D models.
 - c. Traditional outfits.
 - d. maps

B. Answer the following questions:

4. How many artifacts will the GEM house?
5. Why is the Grand Egyptian Museum considered a symbol of national pride?

5. Because it celebrates Egypt's unique heritage and shows its great history to the world.

4. It will house more than 100,000 artifacts.

2. a (single). 3. b (Digital guides and 3D models).

1. b (Near the Giza Pyramids).

Answers:

Speaking

Asking and giving opinion/Agreeing and disagreeing:

• طلب وإبداء الرأي/الموافقة والرفض:

Giving opinion

In my opinion / في رأيي / From my point of view... (من وجهة نظري...)

I believe that... (أعتقد أن...)

Agreeing and Disagreeing

Agreeing

I agree with you. (أنا أتفق معك.)

You're right. (أنت محق.)

That's a good point. (هذه نقطة جيدة.)

I totally agree. (أنتفقد تماماً.)

Exactly! (بالضبط!)

Disagreeing

I don't agree with you (أنا لا أتفق معك...)

I'm not sure about that. (لست متأكداً من ذلك.)

I think you're wrong. (أعتقد أنك مخطئ...)

I completely disagree. (أنا أعارض تماماً.)

I don't think so. (لا أظن ذلك.)

Why do you think museums are important for a country?

لماذا تعتقد أن المتاحف مهمة للدولة

What can young people learn when they visit the Grand Egyptian Museum?

ماذا يمكن للشباب تعلمه عند زيارة المتحف المصري الكبير؟

What do you think the Grand Egyptian Museum shows?

ماذا يعرض المتحف المصري الكبير في رأيك؟

I think the Grand Egyptian Museum is the most important museum in the world.

أعتقد أن المتحف المصري الكبير هو أهم متحف في العالم.

I think it is more important that the Pyramids.

أعتقد أنه أكثر أهمية من الأهرامات.

In my opinion, they preserve a country's unique heritage and history.

في رأيي إنها تحافظ على تراث وتاريخ الدولة الفريد.

I think they can explore history in a new way using interactive displays, 3D models, and digital guides.

أعتقد أنه بإمكانهم استكشاف التاريخ بطريقة جديدة باستخدام الشاشات التفاعلية والنماذج ثلاثية الأبعاد والأدلة الرقمية.

From my point of view, it shows a blend of tradition and technology. It shows the wonder of a single civilization.

من وجهة نظري، يُظهر ذلك مزيجاً من التقاليد والتكنولوجيا. إنه يُظهر روعة حضارة واحدة.

I agree because it shows the greatest civilization in the world.

أوافق على ذلك لأنه يعرض أعظم حضارة في التاريخ

I disagree with you.

لا أتفق معك.

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

- A piece of art or tool made by humans long ago is a/an
a. artifact b. experiment c. outfit d. bridge
- is the people's way of life, culture, and achievements.
a. Decoration b. Collection c. Civilization d. Pollution
- A/An is a public display of objects or artworks.
a. celebration b. exhibition c. organization d. competition
- A/An is a picture or sign that shows something.
a. treasure b. museum c. statue d. symbol
- means extremely beautiful.
a. Magnificent b. Common c. Tiny d. Ancient

Synonyms and antonyms

- The synonym of the word "blend" is ".....".
a. division b. separation c. mix d. symbol
- The antonym of the word "modern" is ".....".
a. ancient b. great c. recent d. new
- The word "magnificent" has the same meaning as ".....".
a. insignificant b. ordinary c. unimportant d. impressive
- The word "normal" is the opposite of ".....".
a. common b. unique c. modern d. tiny

Prefixes and Suffixes

- We add the suffix "....." to form the adjective from the word "promise".
a. -ion b. -ful c. -ing d. -ian
- The suffix "-ical" changes the noun 'archaeology' into a/an
a. adjective b. verb c. adverb d. noun
- The suffix turns the noun "digit" into an adjective.
a. -ly b. -al c. -or d. -ive
- The prefix "....." means between or among.
a. dis- b. in- c. un- d. inter-

Collocations & Guessing meaning

- Egypt's future is, as we are building many great projects.
a. promising b. damaged c. ancient d. lost
- The museum is a perfect of tradition and technology.
a. blend b. glass c. bridge d. road

16. Modern like robots and computers helps us in our daily life.
 a. pride b. technology c. treasure d. history
17. I like displays because I can touch the screens and learn.
 a. interactive b. boring c. old d. slow
18. Experts fix and clean broken artifacts in the center.
 a. conservation b. shopping c. sports d. cinema
19. The Pyramids are monuments; there is nothing exactly like them.
 a. common b. unique c. cheap d. simple
20. The Pyramid is a national pride for all Egyptians.
 a. symbol of b. root of c. blend of d. way of

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

exhibition - pride - artifacts - magnificent - symbol

The Egyptian civilization is one of the most ① in history. It is famous for its great kings and queens. Today, museums house many ② like gold jewelry and statues that show how people lived long ago. The Pyramids are a ③ of our national pride and strength. You can see a wonderful ④ of these treasures in the Grand Egyptian Museum.

3 Complete the following dialog:

Ahmed and Sami are talking about the Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM).

Ahmed : What do you think of the Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM)?

Sami : In my ①, it is the most magnificent project in Egypt.

Ahmed : I ② with you. It is located in a great place near the Pyramids.

Sami : I think the 3D ③ and digital guides are very helpful for visitors.

Ahmed : That's true. Do you believe it is better than old museums?

Sami : I'm not sure about that. I think old museums have a special feeling, but the GEM is more modern.

Ahmed : You're right. It is a ④ of national pride.

4 Write a text of NIENTY (90) words on:

"The Grand Egyptian Museum "

(مجاوب عنه في آخر الوحدة)



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

really (adv)	حقاً	masterpiece (n)	تحفة فنية
It was breathtaking	كان مذهلاً	guide (n)	مرشد
Wow	رائع!	wisdom (n)	حكمة
Of course (n)	بالتأكيد	book (ed)	يحبز
historian (n)	مؤرخ		

Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

excited (adj)	متحمس	advice (n)	نصيحة
opening (n)	افتتاح	everyone (pronoun)	الجميع
whole (adj)	كامل	classmate (n)	زميل الفصل
message (n)	رسالة	rubbish (n)	قمامة
pharaoh (n)	فرعون	materials (n)	أدوات / مواد
police (n)	الشرطة	finally (adv)	في النهاية
architect (n)	مهندس معماري	simple (adj)	بسيط
artist (n)	فنان / رسام	friendly (adj)	ودودة / لطيفة
online (adv)	عبر الانترنت	plan (v. ned)	يخطط
tips (n)	نصائح	wait (v. ed)	ينتظر
suggestion (n)	اقتراح	disturb (v. ed)	يزعج
line (n)	طابور	shout (v. ed)	يصيح
quietly (adv)	بهدوء	create (v. d)	ينشئ / يخلق
everywhere (adv)	في كل مكان	behave (v.d)	يتصرف
lined (adj)	مكتظ / مزدحم / ملئ بـ		

Expressions & Prepositions

look excited	يبدو متحمس	wait in long lines	ينتظر في طوابير طويلة
on TV	في التلفزيون	learn about	يتعلم عن
look like	يشبه	filled with pride	ممتلئ بالفخر
from all over the world	من جميع انحاء العالم	respectful to	محترم لـ
a day of national pride	يوم فخر وطني		



Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد
breathtaking	مذهل	beautiful / awesome	ugly / boring قبيح / ممل
excited	متحمس	eager / passionate	unexcited/uninspired غير متحمس
quietly	بهدهوء	silently	loudly بصوت عالي
simple	بسيط	clear / easy	difficult / hard صعب
online	على الانترنت	on the internet	offline بدون انترنت

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ly	تحول الصفة الى حال	really
-ed	تحول الاسم او الفعل الى صفة	excited
-ian	تشير الى شخص ماهر في شئ او يدرس موضوع ما	historian
-ful	تحول الاسم او الفعل الى صفة	helpful
-ion	تحول الفعل الى اسم	suggestion
-ation	تحول الفعل الى اسم	information
-dom	تحول الصفة الى اسم	wisdom

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
read يقرأ	read	read
send يرسل	sent	sent
hear يسمع	heard	heard
speak يتحدث	spoke	spoken
learn يتعلم	learnt/learned	learnt/learned
grow يكبر/ينمو	grew	grown
keep يحافظ على	kept	kept

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

① keep + صفة + مفعول + inf.

Ex. Students **must** keep the school **clean**.

② make + مصدر الفعل + مفعول + inf.

Ex. You should help new students and **make** them **feel** welcome.

3 as = because

Ex. You mustn't shout in the corridors, **as** this makes the school too noisy.

4 everyone + verb + s/es/ies

• يأتي بعد **everyone** فعل مفرد أي يضاف اليه (ies/es/s) ولكن يعود عليه ضمير جمع

Ex. **Everyone** brings **their** books.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Students must keep the classroom at all times.
a. tidying b. tidies c. tidy d. to tidy
- You should sleep early this helps you stay healthy.
a. so b. as c. but d. or
- Everyone should bring own materials.
a. their b. his c. her d. its

Reading

SB Page (22)



استمع إلى النصوص

SB Page (22)

Read the following dialog between Bassem and Leen

Leen : Hi Bassem! You look excited today. What happened?

Bassem : Hi Leen ! I watched the opening of the Grand Egyptian Museum on TV yesterday.

Leen : Really? How was it ?

Bassem : It was breathtaking. The whole event looked like a masterpiece.

Leen : Wow! What made it so special?

Bassem : People from all over the world witnessed the opening live on TV.

Leen : Did Egypt send a message to the world through this event?

Bassem : Of course! Egypt showed the world how great the Pharaohs were and how rich our history is.

Leen : I heard many teams worked on the event. Is that true?

Bassem : Yes. Police, architects, artists, and historians worked together. It was a day of national pride.



SB Page (23)

Read the dialog about Rahma and Dima

Rahma & Dima are planning their visit to the Grand Egyptian Museum.

Dima : Hi Rahma ! I heard we are visiting the Grand Egyptian Museum next Tuesday.

Rahma : Yes ! I'm sure we will see many amazing ① **artifacts** inside.

Dima : Great! I want to ② **witness** the beauty of Egypt with my own eyes.

Rahma : The building itself is a ③ **masterpiece**. It looks so modern and powerful.

Dima : What should we do before we go?

Rahma : We should ④ **book** our tickets so we don't wait in long lines.

Dima : Who works inside the museum?

Rahma : Many teams, like ⑤ **historians** and ⑥ **guides** , help visitors learn about history.



Writing Skills

"مدونة النصائح" (Advice Blog Post) هي مقالة تُنشر على الإنترنت بهدف مساعدة الناس وحل مشكلاتهم بطريقة بسيطة. يمكنك تخيلها كرسالة من صديق خبير يوجهك لفعل شيء ما بشكل أفضل.

Tip

What is an advice blog post?

An advice blog is a short online text where a writer gives helpful tips, rules, or suggestions to readers. People write advice blogs to tell others how to behave, how to act in places, or how to do things in a safe and respectful way. Writers often use modals like must, mustn't, should, have to, and don't have to give clear advice.

Advice Blog:

Visiting the Grand Egyptian Museum

Visiting the Grand Egyptian Museum is a breathtaking experience that fills every Egyptian with pride. When you go, you must follow the rules to help preserve our heritage. You must respect the royal mummies and other monuments. You mustn't touch anything, and you should speak quietly. You have to book your ticket, but you don't have to bring a guide because information is everywhere. You shouldn't block the halls, which are often lined with visitors. A good visit shows the wisdom of our ancestors and keeps their history alive.

My School Advice Blog

School is a place where we learn, grow, and work together. To make our school a better place for everyone, you **should** always be respectful to your teachers and classmates. You **must** arrive on time because being late disturbs the class. Students **have to** keep the school clean and put rubbish in the bins. You **mustn't** shout in the corridors, as this makes the school too noisy. Everyone **has to** bring their books and materials every day. Finally, you **should** help new students and make them feel welcome. Following these simple rules helps create a safe and friendly school for all.



Speaking skills

A dialog between a tourist and a tour guide: حوار بين سائح ومرشد سياحي :

Question

1. Can you tell me about this artifact?

هل يمكنك إخباري عن هذه القطعة الأثرية؟

2. Why is it important ?

ما أهميتها؟

3. When was it made?

متى صنعت؟

4. Who used it?

من استخدمها؟

5. What is special about the Pharaohs?

ما الذي يُميز الفراعنة؟

6. When did the museum open?

متى افتتح المتحف؟

7. What can we do inside the museum?

ماذا يمكننا أن نفعل داخل المتحف؟

8. How should visitors behave inside?

كيف ينبغي للزوار التصرف داخل المتحف؟

Answer

- This is the Khufu Solar Boat.

هذه هي مركب خوفو الشمسية.

- It shows how clever the ancient Egyptians were.

إنها تُظهر مدى براعة المصريين القدماء.

- It was made five thousand years ago

صُنعت قبل خمسة آلاف عام.

- The Egyptians believed King Khufu would use it in the afterlife

اعتقد المصريون أن الملك خوفو سيستخدمها في الحياة الآخرة.

- They were the kings of Egypt. They built the Pyramids

كانوا ملوك مصر، بنوا الأهرامات.

- in 2025.

في عام 2025.

- You can see over 100,000 artifacts!

يمكنكم مشاهدة أكثر من 100 ألف قطعة أثرية!

- They mustn't touch any statues. They should speak quietly.

لا يجب أن يلمسوا أي تماثيل. يجب التحدث بهدوء

Exercises on Lessons 5&6**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:****Synonyms & Antonyms**

- The word "awesome" has the same meaning as "_____".
a. insignificant b. breathtaking c. ugly d. boring
- The synonym of the word "quietly" is "_____".
a. loudly b. noisily c. silently d. fast
- The antonym of the word "simple" is "_____".
a. hard b. easy c. clear d. obvious
- The word "offline" is the opposite of "_____".
a. lined b. line c. online d. a line

Prefixes and Suffixes

- We add the suffix "_____" to form the adverb from the word "real".
a. -ly b. -ful c. -ing d. -ion
- The suffix "_____" changes the verb "help" into an adjective.
a. -ing b. -ful c. -ed d. -ly
- The suffix _____ turns the verb "suggest" into a noun.
a. -ive b. -al c. -ion d. -ily
- The suffix "_____" turns the verb "inform" into a noun.
a. -ation b. -ing c. -ive d. -ed

Collocations & Guessing meaning

- The view from the top of the mountain was _____. It was so beautiful!
a. disturbing b. lined c. breathtaking d. friendly
- The _____ designed the new museum building.
a. pharaoh b. historian c. architect d. guide
- Please, be _____ to your teachers and listen to them.
a. respectful b. disturbing c. disrespectful d. noisy
- A/An _____ studies and writes about things that happened in the past.
a. historian b. architect c. pharaoh d. guide
- This painting is a _____! It is the best work by this artist.
a. wisdom b. book c. opening d. masterpiece
- The old man has a lot of _____ because he lived for many years.
a. age b. stress c. wisdom d. experiment

15. Don't shout in the library; you shouldn't people who are reading.
 a. shout b. disturb c. look d. fight
16. The street was with beautiful trees on both sides.
 a. amazed b. interested c. opened d. lined
17. The baby his father. They have the same eyes!
 a. looks like b. disturbs c. looks to d. looks for
18. A: Can I borrow your pen? B:, here you are!
 a. I disagree b. No c. Of course d. Don't

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

quietly - block - artifacts - follow - symbol

Visiting a museum is a breathtaking experience that allows us to admire history with pride. When visiting the museum, you must ① the rules. You mustn't touch any monuments or ② You should speak ③ to respect others. Finally, you shouldn't ④ the halls, which are often lined with visitors. These simple steps ensure that everyone enjoys their time exploring the past.

3 Complete the following dialog:

A tourist and a guide is talking about the golden statue of King Tutankhamun.

Tourist : What is this?

Guide : This is the golden ① of King Tutankhamun.

Tourist : Why is it ② ?

Guide : Because it shows the great power and skills of ancient Egyptians.

Tourist : ③ was it made?

Guide : It was made over 3,000 years ago.

Tourist : What is special about the Pharaohs?

Guide : They were the ④ of Egypt.

4 Write a text of NIENTY (90) words on:

SB

(مجاوب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"What people should do to serve and help their local community. "

.....

.....

.....

Review on Unit 7

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

parade (n)	موكب	historian (n)	مؤرخ
golden (adj)	ذهبي	costumes (n)	ازياء
pharaoh (n)	فرعون	ceremonies (n)	مراسم/طقوس/احتفالات
royal mummies	مومياوات ملكية	witness (ed)	يشهد (حفل او حدث)
heritage (n)	تراث	preserve (d)	يحفظ/يصون
grand (adj)	عظيم/كبير/مهيب	revive (d)	يُحيي (إعادة الحياة لشيء قديم أو مفقود)
(be) lined (adj)	يصطف على جانبيه/يكتظ/يمتلئ	bury (ied)	يدفن
vehicle (n)	مركبة (وسيلة نقل)	restore (d)	يُحيي/يستحضر/يرمم
magnificent (adj)	رائع/خلاب/مبهر	artifacts (n)	قطع أثرية
exhibition (n)	عرض/معرض	symbol (n)	رمز
civilization (n)	حضارة	masterpiece (n)	تحفة فنية
really (adv)	حقاً	guide (n)	مرشد
It was breathtaking	كان مذهلاً	wisdom (n)	حكمة
Wow	رائع!	book (ed)	يحجز
Of course (n)	بالتأكيد		



Language

قواعد لغوية

Using Modal Verbs for Necessity, Advice Unnecessity & Prohibition

- تستخدم الافعال الناقصة للتعبير عن الضرورة والنصيحة وعدم الضرورة والمنع او التحريم كما يلي:

1 Necessity and Obligation الضرورة والالزام

1 Must يجب ان

- نستخدم (must) للتعبير عن شيء واجب فعله او ضروري ولا يوجد خيار آخر.

- نستخدم (must) للضرورة النابعة من دافع داخلي (مشاعر، وعود، أو قواعد عامة يضعها الشخص لنفسه)

Ex. I must study hard to get high marks. (دافع شخصي).

1 Form: التكوين

مصدر الفعل + must + inf. فاعل Subject

Ex. You must follow the teacher's instructions.

2 Question: السؤال

? مصدر الفعل + inf. فاعل Must + subject

Ex. Must he follow the rules?

Ex. Yes, he must. اجابة مثبتة No, he mustn't. اجابة منفية

2 Have/has to يجب أن

- تستخدم للضرورة المفروضة من جهة خارجية (قوانين، قواعد عمل، أو ظروف خارجة عن إرادتك)

Ex. Students **have to** wear a uniform at school. (قانون مدرسي).

Form: التكوين

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع + **have to** + inf. مصدر الفعل.

He / She / It / اسم مفرد + **has to** + inf. مصدر الفعل.

Ex. We **have to** wear our school uniform every day.

- She **has to** go to school.

- لاحظ لا نستخدم **must** للتعبير عن الالتزام في الماضي وبدلاً من ذلك نستخدم **had**

Ex. I **had to** pay 500 pounds to renew my passport last week.

- بدائل **must/ have to/has to** : ادرس الاتي سيساعدك في حل سؤال **Rewrite**

Modal verb	Equal Phrases & Structures	Example
Must / Have / Has to	It's necessary (for someone) to... من الضروري أن	It's necessary to have a passport.
	It's essential /important to... من المهم أن	It's essential to drink water.
	It's a rule to... انه قانون او قاعدة أن	It's a rule to wear a uniform.
	Be obliged to... يكون مجبر ان	You are obliged to pay taxes.

2 Prohibition

المنع أو التحريم

1 Mustn't لا يجب أن

نستخدمها عندما يكون الشيء ممنوعاً أو غير مسموح به (**forbidden**) بموجب قوانين أو قواعد.

1 Form: التكوين

Subject فاعل + **mustn't** + inf. مصدر الفعل

Ex. You **mustn't** park here; it's forbidden.

- لاحظ: فعل الشيء هنا سيؤدي إلى مشكلة أو عقوبة.

- تستخدم في اللافتات والإشعارات العامة التي تُبلغ الناس بالقواعد والقوانين.

Ex. You **mustn't** smoke here.

- بدائل **mustn't** : ادرس الاتي سيساعدك في حل سؤال **Rewrite**

Modal verb	Equal Phrases & Structures	Example
Mustn't	It's forbidden to... من المحظور أن...	It's forbidden to park here.
	It's prohibited to... من الممنوع أن...	It's prohibited to enter this room.
	It's not allowed to... غير مسموح بـ...	You aren't allowed to shout.
	It's against the law to... مخالف للقانون أن...	It's against the law to steal.
	Be banned from (+ -ing) ممنوع من	You are banned from smoking here.

3 Advice النصيحة

Should/shouldn't

نستخدمها لإعطاء رأي حول ما هو جيد أو «مستحسن» فعله. (Advisable).

Should / Shouldn't: تعني «يجب» أو «نبغي» / أو لا يجب (بمعنى النصيحة وليس الإلزام).

1 Form: التكوين

مصدر الفعل + **should/shouldn't** + فاعل **Subject**

Ex. You **should** see a doctor; you look tired.

Ex. You **shouldn't** eat too much sugar.

2 Question: السؤال

مصدر الفعل + **inf.** + فاعل **Should/Shouldn't + Subject**؟

Ex. **Should** I listen to the teacher?

Ex. Yes, you **should**.

- بدائل **should/shouldn't**: ادرس الاتي سيساعدك في حل سؤال **Rewrite**

Modal verb	Equal Phrases & Structures	Example
Should	It's a good idea to... إنها فكرة جيدة أن	It's a good idea to sleep early.
	I advise you to... It's advisable انصحك أن من المنصوح به/يستحسن	I advise you to study.
	If I were you, I would... إذا كنت مكانك	If I were you, I'd go to the doctor.
	You'd better... يفضل أن	You'd better start now.
Shouldn't	It's a bad idea to... إنها فكرة سيئة أن	It's a bad idea to smoke.
	I advise you not to... It is not advisable to... انصحك أن لا... لا ينصح أن	I advise you not to be late.
	If I were you, I wouldn't... إذا كنت مكانك لن	If I were you, I wouldn't buy that.

4 Unnecessity

عدم الضرورة

Subject فاعل + don't / doesn't have to + inf. مصدر الفعل.

- نستخدمها عندما يكون الشيء ليس ضرورياً؛ أي أنك مخير بفعله أو تركه (لست مضطراً).

1 Form: التكوين

I/We/You/They/ اسم جمع + don't have to inf. مصدر الفعل.

He/She/It/ اسم مفرد + doesn't have to + inf. مصدر الفعل.

Ex. We **don't have to** wear our school uniform on Fun DAY.

Ex. Tomorrow is a holiday, so he **doesn't have to** wake up early.

- بدائل **Don't / Doesn't have to**: ادرس الآتي سيساعدك في حل سؤال **Rewrite**

Modal verb	Equal Phrases & Structures	Example
Don't/ Doesn't have to	It's not necessary to... ليس من الضروري أن	It's not necessary to bring a gift.
	There is no need to... لا يوجد حاجة لـ	There is no need to run; we are early.
	Needn't (+ verb)	You needn't come tomorrow.

Speaking

Asking and giving opinion/Agreeing and disagreeing:

• طلب وإبداء الرأي/الموافقة والرفض:

Giving opinion

In my opinion / في رأيي / From my point of view... (من وجهة نظري...)

I believe that... (أعتقد أن...)

Agreeing and Disagreeing

Agreeing

I agree with you. (أنا أتفق معك.)

You're right. (أنت محق.)

That's a good point. (هذه نقطة جيدة.)

I totally agree. (أتفق تماماً.)

Exactly! (بالضبط!)

Disagreeing

I don't agree with you (أنا لا أتفق معك...)

I'm not sure about that.
(لست متأكداً من ذلك.)

I think you're wrong. (أعتقد أنك مخطئ...)

I completely disagree. (أنا أعارض تماماً.)

I don't think so. (لا أظن ذلك.)

Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات إنشائية ورسائل بريد إلكتروني عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة

Lessons 1 & 2

The Royal Mummies Parade was a glorious event that took place in Cairo. It was a grand celebration to move twenty-two ancient mummies to the National Museum of Egyptian Civilization. Huge crowds watched the live broadcast with great pride. The streets were lined with lights, and the mummies were carried in special vehicles designed to look like ancient boats. People wore beautiful traditional outfits during the ceremonies. This parade was a symbol of Egypt's great history. It helped preserve our roots and inspire the whole world to learn about our ancient kings and queens.

Lesson 3

The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM) is a magnificent cultural project in Cairo. It is located near the Giza Pyramids. The museum is a bridge between Egypt's great past and its promising future. It houses more than 100,000 artifacts from a single civilization. Visitors can explore history in a new way using interactive displays. It is a symbol of national pride and shows Egypt's unique heritage to the world.

Lessons 5 & 6

Helping your local community is important for everyone. First, you must be kind and respectful to all your neighbors. To keep the area beautiful, you should help keep the streets clean and never throw litter on the ground. You have to follow local rules to protect our environment, like planting trees or caring for parks. You mustn't forget about elderly neighbors; they often need help with shopping. You don't have to spend money to make a difference; giving your time is enough. Small actions really help create a better home for everyone.

Al-Azhar Test

A school is a place where we learn. To make our school a better place for everyone, you must always be respectful to your teachers and classmates. You must arrive on time. You should keep the school clean.

Test on Unit 7

Egypt is a wonderful place for a holiday. You must start your trip in Cairo to see the Great Pyramids and the Sphinx. They are very famous and beautiful. After that, you should travel to Luxor to visit ancient temples and tombs. If you like the sea, you have to go to Hurghada or Sharm El Sheikh for swimming and diving. You mustn't forget to try traditional Egyptian food like koshary. You don't have to worry about the weather because it is usually sunny and warm.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. What did Fatma see?

2. When did she visit the museum?

2 Complete the following dialog:

Karma is telling Adham about her visit to Al Azhar Park.

Adham : Where did you go yesterday?

Karma : ①

Adham : ②?

Karma : I went with my friends.

Adham : ③?

Karma : We saw trees and flowers.

3 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. The match will be broadcast on TV tonight.

- a. live b. alive c. living d. life

2. She wore a beautiful traditional for the party.

- a. monument b. outfit c. symbol d. parade

3. You read about Egypt's museums. It's advisable.

- a. should b. shouldn't
c. doesn't have to d. mustn't

4. Archaeologists protect ancient artifacts carefully.

- a. mustn't b. shouldn't c. have to d. has to

4 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. Tour guides shouldn't give tourists correct information. (.....)
2. Students mustn't listen to the teacher. (.....)
3. I have to go to school tomorrow. It's a holiday. (.....)
4. People must smoke in hospitals. (.....)

5 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

The ancient Egyptians were very powerful. They built tombs to be buried in. They thought that the king was a god. They didn't wear many clothes. Most men wore a kind of short skirt, but women used to wear long dresses. Women didn't go out to work. They stayed at home. Most men were farmers. Their children did the same jobs as their parents. Girls stayed at home with their mothers. They learned to look after their families. Boys worked with their fathers. They only went to school if they wanted to learn to do new jobs. Children used to run, jump and play games. Their toys were made of wood.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the passage?

2. Where were the Kings of Ancient Egypt buried?

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b ,c or d:

3. Most _____ in ancient Egypt wore skirts.

a. women b. boys c. girls d. men

4. The ancient Egyptians thought that their king was a _____.

a. queen b. good c. god d. prince

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Your school"

Test on Unit 7

1 A. Write True (T) or False (F):



1. The Valley of the Kings is in Cairo.

T	F
☐	☐

2. Tourists like to visit The Valley of the Kings.

☐	☐
--------------------------	--------------------------

2 B: Listen again and complete the following questions:

3. In the is the best time to go there.

4. Tourists photos there.

5. Tour help tourists.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. is important history, culture, and traditions passed from one generation to another.

a. Heritage b. Ceremony c. Performance d. Parade

2. The words "grand " and " unimportant" are ".....".

a. synonyms b. antonyms c. nouns d. adverbs

3. We can add the suffix "....." to the verb "decorate" to get the adjective.

a. -ed b. -ly c. -ive d. -ion

4. Egypt has a/an history that makes us proud.

a. damaged b. glorious c. unknown d. modern

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

restore - heritage - artifacts - fronts - museums

The Grand Egyptian Museum, or GEM, is a magnificent place near the Giza Pyramids. It is one of the largest ① in the world. Inside, you can see thousands of ancient ②, including the famous treasures of King Tutankhamun. The building has a beautiful modern design with glass ③ It is a great place to learn about Egypt's amazing history and ④

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Egypt is a very beautiful country. Many tourists come to visit Egypt all year round. Egypt has very nice weather. In summer, tourists can go to Alexandria. There, they can see the lighthouse and enjoy the sea. In winter, they can go to Aswan. They enjoy the warm weather there. There are many interesting things which tourists can see in Egypt. They can see the pyramids, the zoo and many museums in Cairo. Last Friday, my pen-friend Robert came from England to visit Egypt. He went to Aswan by train. He stayed at a nice hotel. He saw many temples and beautiful places.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Tourists visit Egypt
 a. in spring b. in summer c. all year round d. in winter
- Robert is
 a. Japanese b. French c. Egyptian d. English

B. Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the text?

.....

- What did Robert see in Aswan?

.....

- Why do you think tourists like to visit Egypt?

.....

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. The eldest brother was kind to the old man.	☐	☐
2. The middle brother's axe broke after he was rude.	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

- Why did the eldest brother get injured while cutting wood?

.....

- Why do you think both of the older brothers faced bad luck after refusing to help the old man?

.....

6 Rewrite the sentences using the words between brackets:

1. It is advisable to check the weather before you go. (should)

2. There is no need for him to wait for me. (doesn't have to)

3. You are not allowed to take photos here. (mustn't)

4. It is against the law to drive fast. (mustn't)

7 Complete the following dialog:

A tourist is talking to a tour guide

Guide : Is this your first visit to Egypt?

Tourist : ① It is the second time.

Guide : What is the most amazing place in Egypt?

Tourist : ② my opinion, it's the Pyramids of Giza.

Guide : ③ do you think so?

Tourist : Because they are amazing and huge monuments.

Guide : I think Luxor and Aswan are great places too.

Tourist : I ④ with you.

8 Write a text of NIENTY (90) words on:

[مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة]

"A holiday in Egypt "

.....

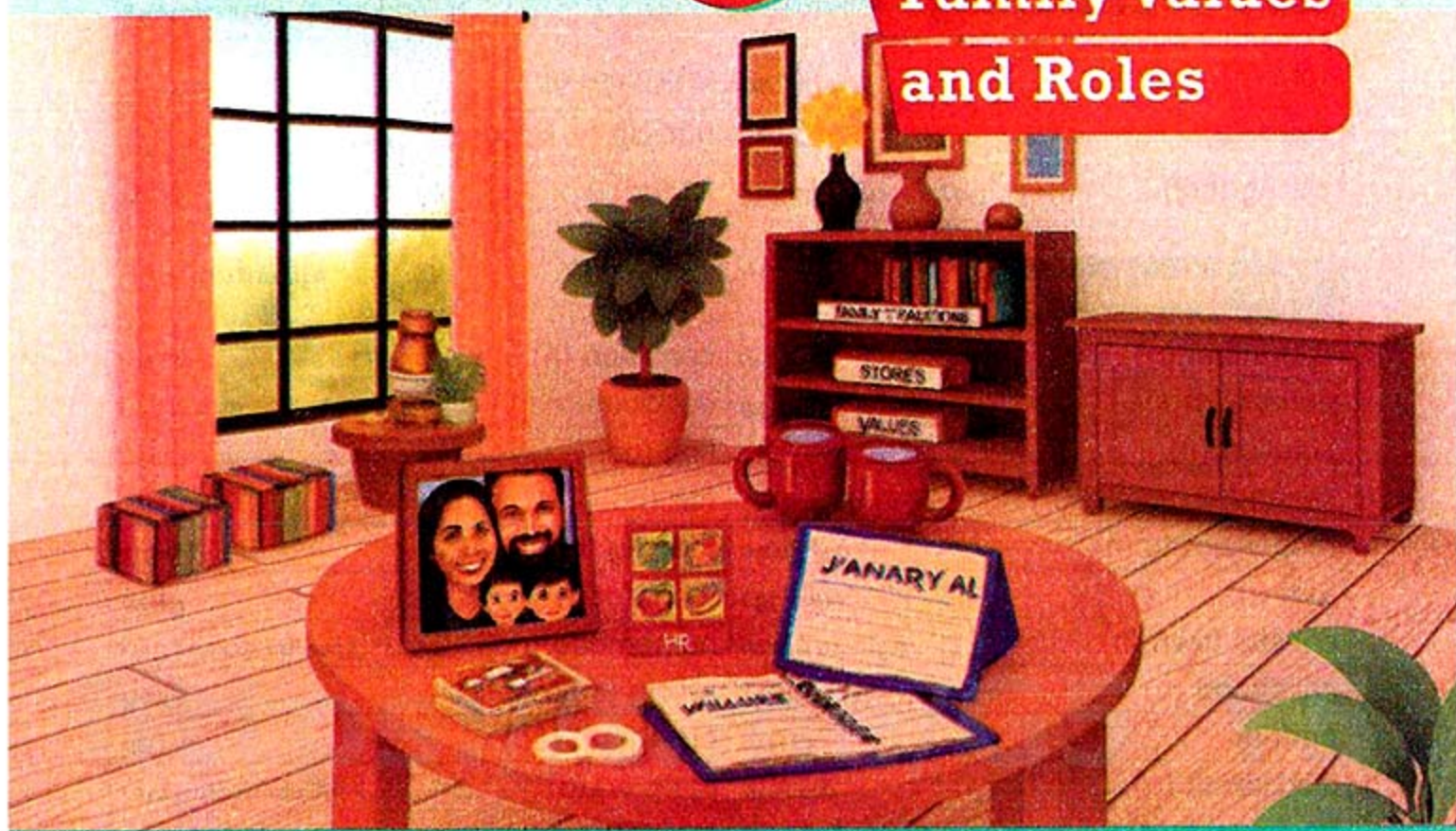
.....

.....

.....

.....

Family Values and Roles



Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

- Identify main ideas and supporting details in short informational texts.
- Skim and scan for specific information.

Listening:

- Listen for gist and details in short recordings about house chores.
- Identify specific information such as time, steps, or reasons.

Speaking:

- Participate in short discussions and role-plays.

- Describe how things work using sequence words.
- Express opinions and give short reasons.

Language:

- Use possessive pronouns and possessive adjectives correctly.

Writing:

- Write short paragraphs describing people or processes.
- Use linking words to show sequence and logic.



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

role (n)	دور / وظيفة	take care of	يعتني بـ
twins (n)	توائم	babysit (v. babysat)	يجالس أو يعتني بالأطفال
caring (adj)	مهتم بالآخرين / حنون	fix (ed)	يصلح

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

apartment (n)	شقة	condition (n)	شرط
patient (n)	مريض	delicious (adj)	لذيذ الطعم
solution (n)	حل	tidy (adj)	مرتب
secondary school (n)	مدرسة ثانوية	fair (adj)	عادل
responsibility (n)	مسؤولية	friendly (adj)	ودود
turn (n)	دور / نوبة	local (adj)	محلي
coastal town (n)	مدينة ساحلية	homemade (adj)	بيتي / مصنوع بالمنزل
childhood (n)	الطفولة	safely (adv)	بأمان
partner (n)	شريك	accept (v) (ed)	يقبل
discussion (n)	مناقشة	taste (v) (d)	يعطي طعماً / مذاقاً
housework (n)	الأعمال المنزلية	reply (v) (ied)	يجيب / يرد
schoolwork (n)	الواجبات المدرسية	insist (v) (ed)	يصر / يصمم
problem (n)	مشكلة	prepare (v) (d)	يحضر / يجهز
dish (n)	أكلة / صنف طعام	argue (v) (d)	يجادل
history (n)	تاريخ	promise (v) (d)	يعد
the eldest (adj)	الأكبر سناً		



Definitions

roles (n)	أدوار	the jobs or parts people have in a family, group, or play
twins (n)	توائم	two babies born to the same mother at the same time
caring (adj)	مهتم بالآخرين	kind and helpful to others
take care of	يعتني بـ	look after someone or something
babysit (v.)	يرعى أطفال	to look after children for a short time when parents are away
fix (ed)	يصلح	to repair or make something work again

Expressions & Prepositions

have a role	له دور	help with	يساعد في
take turns	يتناوب الأدوار	wash / do the dishes	يغسل الأطباق
argue with	يتجادل مع	without conditions	بدون شروط
argue about	يتجادل حول	take out	يُخرج
prepare for	يجهز لـ	belong to	يخص / ينتمي لـ
on/at weekends	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	share with	يشارك مع
agree on	يتفق على	in my opinion	في رأيي



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
caring	مهتم بالآخرين	kind / friendly		unfriendly/uncaring	غير ودود / غير مهتم
take care of	يعتني بـ	look after / care for		ignore	يتجاهل
fix	يصلح	repair / mend		break / damage	يدمر / يتلف
tidy	منظم	organized / neat		messy	فوضوي
roles	أدوار	jobs / tasks		-	
apartment	شقة	flat		-	
patient	مريض	sick/ill		well/ healthy	بصحة جيدة
fair	عادل	objective/reasonable		unfair	غير عادل

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ly	تحول الصفة إلى ظرف	safely
-ian	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	Egyptian
-ing	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	caring
-ing	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	teaching
-er	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	teacher
-ion	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	discussion
-ity	تحول الصفة إلى اسم	responsibility

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present

break	يتحطم/يتعطل
drive	يقود
keep	يحافظ على
spend	يقضي
feed	يطعم/يغذي
find	يجد

Past simple

broke
drove
kept
spent
fed
found

Past Participle

broken
driven
kept
spent
fed
found

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 The Hassan family / Hassan's family

• The Hassan family

• إذا جاءت كلمة (the) متبوعة باسم غلم ثم كلمة (family)، فإن هذا الاسم الغلم يشير إلى لقب العائلة:

Ex. The Hassan family lives in Cairo
- المقصود هنا هو العائلة التي تحمل لقب (حسن)

• Hassan's family

• أما إذا جاء اسم الغلم غير مسبوق بكلمة (the)، فالمقصود هو الأسرة التي تخص اسم الغلم أو التي ينتمي لها اسم الغلم:

Ex. Hassan's family is coming over for dinner tonight.

المقصود هنا هو أسرة شخص اسمه حسن

• لاحظ ان كلمة (family) يمكن ان يليها فعل مفرد او فعل جمع. الشكليين صحيحين:

Ex. My family lives / live in Tanta.

2 role / turn

• role (n):

• دور : (بمعنى وظيفة أو مسؤولية)

Ex. She plays an important role in the company.

Ex. Parents have a major role in a child's education.

• turn (n):

• دور : (بمعنى التناوب أو الدور في الترتيب)

Ex. It's your turn to speak now.

Ex. She is waiting for her turn to jump.

3 every day / everyday

• every day (adv):

• كل يوم / يوميا : وهي ظرف - وتأتي على شكل كلمتين منفصلتين، وتساوي الظرف (daily) من حيث المعنى:

Ex. I go to school on foot every day.

• everyday (adj):

• يومي / يحدث يوميا : وهي صفة - وتأتي على شكل كلمة واحدة متصلة ويتبعها اسم

Ex. Stress is part of everyday life.

4 drive + شخص + to + مكان

• يستخدم هذا التعبير بمعنى (يؤصل شخصاً بالسيارة إلى مكان):

Ex. My father drives me to school every day.

5 insist on + v -ing أو اسم / insist that + جملة

• يأتي الفعل (insist) بمعنى (يصرّ)، وإذا جاء بعده حرف الجر (on)، فإنه يليه صيغة (v -ing). أما إذا جاءت بعده كلمة (that)، فإنه يليها جملة كاملة:

Ex. She insisted on sharing her sandwich with me.

Ex. She insisted that I do my homework before going out.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The children took riding the bike.
a. roles b. turns c. jobs d. tasks
- She walks to school because she lives nearby.
a. everyday a. daily c. every day d. b & c
- He insisted on for the dinner we had at the restaurant.
a. pay b. paying c. to pay d. paid
- She insisted she was right.
a. than b. on c. with d. that

Reading

SB Page (28)

SB Page (28)



استمع إلى النصوص

The Hassan family lives in an apartment⁽¹⁾ in Cairo. There are five people in their family. Mom, Dad, and three children. Everyone has important roles⁽²⁾ in their home.

Mom works as a doctor at a hospital. She takes care of patients⁽³⁾ every day. At home, she prepares delicious⁽⁴⁾ Egyptian dishes⁽⁵⁾ for her family and helps her children with their schoolwork⁽⁶⁾.

١. شقة
٢. أدوار
٣. تعتنى بالمرضى
٤. لذيذ
٥. أطباق
٦. واجبات مدرسية



She is very **caring**⁽⁷⁾ and always listens to everyone's problems.

Dad is a history teacher at a **secondary school**⁽⁸⁾. He loves teaching about Egypt's past. At home, he **fixes**⁽⁹⁾ things when they break and drives the children to school **safely**⁽¹⁰⁾ every morning.

Mona is sixteen years old. She is the **eldest**⁽¹¹⁾ child, so she helps to take care of her younger brothers. She **babysits**⁽¹²⁾ them when her parents go out and helps them prepare for bed.

The two boys, Ahmed and Omar, are **a**⁽¹³⁾. They are twelve years old. Their job is to keep their room **tidy**⁽¹⁴⁾ and **feed**⁽¹⁵⁾ their cats. They also help Dad wash the family car on weekends.

Every person in the Hassan family has a special role, and this makes their home a happy place.

٧. مهتم بالآخرين
٨. مدرسة ثانوية
٩. يصلح
١٠. بأمان
١١. أكبر
١٢. يجالس/يرعى
١٣. توائم
١٤. مرتب
١٥. يطعم

Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

1. What does Dad do at home?
2. What does Mona do when her parents go out?
3. What do Ahmed and Omar do on weekends?

3. They help Dad wash the family car.
2. She babysits her brothers.
1. He fixes things when they break.

Answers:



Audio Script SB Page (30)

Ramy and Sameh were **arguing about**⁽¹⁾ their house roles. Ramy said it was

Sameh's **turn**⁽²⁾ to wash the dishes, but Sameh **insisted**⁽³⁾ that

Ramy only fed his cat and didn't do anything else. Ramy

replied⁽⁴⁾ that he also **took out**⁽⁵⁾ the rubbish, so the dishes

should be Sameh's job, not his. They couldn't agree, so they

wanted their mom to **decide**⁽⁶⁾ who was **right**⁽⁷⁾.

After a short **discussion**⁽⁸⁾, a **fair solution**⁽⁹⁾ was found: the

responsibility⁽¹⁰⁾ of washing the dishes would be Ramy's

tomorrow. He **accepted**⁽¹¹⁾ it **without any conditions**⁽¹²⁾, and

Sameh **promised**⁽¹³⁾ to help with his brother's roles next time.

١. يتجادل حول
٢. دور
٣. أصر
٤. أجاب
٥. أخرج
٦. يقرر
٧. على حق
٨. مناقشة
٩. حل عادل
١٠. مسؤولية
١١. قبل
١٢. بدون شروط
١٣. وعد



SB Page (31)

- Complete the following text with the correct possessive adjectives/pronouns.

Last weekend, my family visited a small coastal town for **our** short holiday. My parents wanted to show us **their** favorite beach, where they spent their childhood summers. My sister brought **her** camera, and my brother carried **his** football. We met a friendly local family; **their** children shared their kites with us, and **theirs** flew the highest. Later, we had lunch with them, and my mother said **their** homemade food tasted better than ours.

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

- are the jobs or parts people have in a family, group, or play.
a. Names b. Roles c. Titles d. Turns
- are two babies born to the same mother at the same time.
a. Aunts b. Cousins c. Uncles d. Twins
- Someone who is is kind and helpful to others.
a. caring b. cold c. cruel d. weak
- To look after someone or something is to of them.
a. make sure b. make fun c. take care d. ignore
- To is to look after children for a short time when parents are away.
a. feed b. drive c. prepare d. babysit
- To repair or make something work again is to these things.
a. fix b. mind c. break d. damage

Synonyms & Antonyms

- You have an important **role** in the plan. The word "role" means
a. turn b. task c. apartment d. family
- She is a very **caring** person. The opposite of "caring" is
a. careful b. kind c. helpful d. uncaring
- She **takes care of** her younger brother. The underlined words mean
a. thinks about b. hears from c. looks after d. gives up
- The mechanic will **fix** my car tomorrow. "Fix" is an antonym for
a. repair b. break c. mend d. feed

11. They live in a small **apartment**. The word "apartment" means
 a. flat b. park c. school d. cinema
12. Her room is always **tidy**. The opposite of "tidy" is
 a. organized b. clean c. messy d. high

Prefixes and Suffixes

13. To change the adjective "safe" into an adverb, we add the suffix ".....".
 a. -or b. -ly c. -ing d. -ed
14. To get the adjective from the noun "Egypt", we add the suffix ".....".
 a. -ion b. -ial c. -ed d. -ian
15. To get the noun from the verb "teach", we add the suffix ".....".
 a. -er b. -al c. -ive d. -ion
16. To get the noun from the verb "discuss", we add the suffix ".....".
 a. -ion b. -ian c. -ied d. -ice

Guess the meaning & collocations

17. My family lives in a big It has three bedrooms.
 a. garden b. school c. apartment d. park
18. The doctor is busy helping a in the hospital right now.
 a. student b. patient c. teacher d. driver
19. It is not my to play the game yet; I have to wait for you.
 a. idea b. home c. place d. turn
20. It is not that you have ten cookies and I have only one.
 a. far b. fair c. fast d. busy
21. We had a long about the school trip.
 a. station b. party c. lesson d. discussion
22. I don't like to do, like cleaning and cooking.
 a. network b. homework c. housework d. schoolwork
23. I have a lot of to do. I need to prepare for tomorrow's test.
 a. housework b. schoolwork c. woodwork d. firework
24. After dinner, I always the dishes.
 a. make b. cook c. wash d. eat
25. My brother and I turns riding the bike, so we are both happy.
 a. made b. took c. did d. brought
26. She often argues her brother about small things.
 a. with b. about c. to d. out
27. Don't forget to take the rubbish to the bin outside tonight.
 a. up b. in c. of d. out

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

turn - babysit - role - fix - caring

My name is Ahmed. My ¹ in my family is simple. I am a ² person. I ³ my little sister after school. If something is broken, I try to ⁴ it. Helping others makes me happy. I talk kindly and help my family every day with love and patience.



Language

قواعد لغوية

1 Possessive Adjectives

- صفات الملكية هي كلمات تستخدم للدلالة على ملكية شخص أو شيء لشيء آخر. وهي تختلف باختلاف الفاعل. ولابد وأن يأتي بعدها الإسم المملوك. ادرس جيدا الجدول التالي:

Subject الفاعل	Possessive Adjectives صفات الملكية	Example
I أنا	my	My father is a teacher.
He هو (أو اسم مفرد مذكر)	his	This is his house.
She هي (أو اسم مفرد مؤنث)	her	Her name is Mona.
It هو/هي لغير العاقل (أو اسم مفرد غير عاقل)	its	Its tail is long.
We نحن	our	Our teacher is very kind.
You أنت/انتم	your	Your book is over there.
They هم (أو اسم جمع)	their	Their house is very big.

2 Possessive Pronouns

- ضمائر الملكية هي كلمات تستخدم للدلالة على ملكية شخص لشيء. وهي تختلف باختلاف الفاعل. ولا يأتي بعدها أبدا الإسم المملوك. ادرس جيدا الجدول التالي:

Subject الفاعل	Possessive Adjective صفات الملكية	Example
I	mine	This book is mine.
He (أو اسم مفرد مذكر)	his	That cat is his.
She (أو اسم مفرد مؤنث)	hers	This pencil is hers.
It (أو اسم مفرد غير عاقل)	—	—
We	ours	This farm is ours.
You	yours	This car is yours.
They (أو اسم جمع)	theirs	This house is theirs.

3 Apostrophe ('S) الملكية

الشئ المملوك + 'S + المالك

Ex. It's Sameh's turn.



- هناك كلمات وتعبيرات أخرى تستخدم للدلالة على الملكية، ويمكن استخدامها كبداية لصفات وضمائر الملكية في سؤال مثل (Rewrite):

ملك 's / يَخْصُ belong to / يمتلك own / يمتلك have / يملك possess

Ex. I have this book. = This is my book. = This book is mine.

Ex. She owns this car. = This is her car. = This car is hers.

Ex. This farm belongs to them. = This is their farm. = This farm is theirs.

Ex. This is Hala's phone. = This is her phone. = This phone is hers.

- ويمكن أيضا استخدام of للتعبير عن الملكية.

Ex. The feathers of the goose were golden.

Ex. He is a friend of mine.

Exercises on Language

1 Rewrite the sentences using the words between brackets:

Set Book Exercises

- This pencil belongs to her. (hers)
.....
- The blue jacket is Ahmed's. (his)
.....
- These shoes belong to us. (our)
.....
- That house belongs to them. (theirs)
.....
- This laptop is mine. (my)
.....

Bit by Bit Exercises

- This bag belongs to me. (mine)
.....
- That car belongs to him. (his)
.....
- This is her book. (hers)
.....

9. These shoes belong to me. (my)
10. That house is ours. (our)
11. This phone belongs to you. (yours)
12. That classroom is theirs. (their)
13. This is her suitcase. (hers)
14. These are our balls. (ours)
15. The eldest brother injured his hand.  (The hand of...)
16. This room is mine. (my)
17. That bike belongs to her. (hers)
18. Those are your seats. (yours)
19. This dog belongs to them. (theirs)
20. I have this red umbrella. (mine)
21. Those are her books. (hers)
22. This apartment belongs to us.  (own)
23. That toy is yours. (your)
24. Our kite flew high, but their kite flew the highest. (theirs)
25. Ahmed has the blue book.  (Ahmed's)
26. Ali is my friend.  (of)
27. Fatma's car is expensive. (has)

Ask and Answer about tasks that can be done at home.

Use expressions of frequency:

always, often, sometimes, never.

Use polite expressions:

I think...../In my opinion...../I prefer

- اسأل واجب عن المهام التي يمكن القيام بها بالمنزل.
- استخدم ظروف التكرار في الإجابة

Question

1- What tasks do you usually do at home?

ما هي المهام التي عادة ما تقوم بها بالمنزل؟

2- Which task do you like the most? Why?

ما هي المهمة التي تفضلها أكثر؟ ولماذا؟

3- Who helps you with the housework?

من يساعدك في أعمال المنزل؟

4- How often do you do these tasks?

- كم مرة تقوم بهذه المهام؟

5 - Do you think children should help at home?

- هل تعتقد أن الأطفال يجب أن يساعدوا في المنزل؟

Answer

- I usually clean my room, and help in the kitchen.

عادة ما أنظف غرفتي وأساعد في المطبخ.

- I prefer cleaning my room because I feel happy when it is clean and tidy.

أفضل تنظيف غرفتي لأنني أشعر بالسعادة عندما تكون نظيفة ومرتبّة.

- My mother and my brother often help me.

غالبًا ما تقوم أمي وأخي بمساعدتي.

- I always do these tasks every day after school.

دائمًا أقوم بهذه المهام كل يوم بعد المدرسة.

- Yes, in my opinion it teaches them responsibility.

نعم، في رأيي هذا يعلمهم المسؤولية.

General Exercises

on Lessons 1 & 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The mother's in the family is very important.

- a. turn b. role c. road d. roof

2. Maria and Sofia look the same because they are

- a. friends b. teachers c. students d. twins

3. She is a very person; she always helps her sick grandmother.

- a. caring b. angry c. noisy d. tired

4. Please, take my cat while I am on vacation for three days.

- a. part in b. turns c. care of d. out

5. My mother asked me to my younger sister while she is at work.
a. insist b. mix c. tidy d. babysit
6. My bicycle is broken, so my father will it for me today.
a. wash b. fix c. taste d. argue
7. Cleaning the garden every morning is my in this house.
a. childhood b. schoolwork c. responsibility d. apartment
8. It's your to do the shopping today because I did it last week.
a. turn b. rule c. twin d. luck
9. He spent his in a small village before moving to the city.
a. housework b. childhood c. schoolwork d. apartment
10. Cleaning the windows and washing the dishes are examples of
a. teamwork b. schoolwork c. artwork d. housework
11. You must finish all your before you go to bed.
a. schoolwork b. teamwork c. apartment d. childhood
12. Her bedroom is always very; all her clothes are in the right place.
a. messy b. hungry c. tidy d. heavy
13. It's not if only one person does all the work.
a. dark b. fair c. funny d. important
14. I don't like to buy pizza; I prefer the pizza made by my mother.
a. expensive b. difficult c. faraway d. homemade
15. My parents that I wear a helmet when I ride my bike.
a. insist b. fix c. taste d. accept

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

solution - babysit - apartment - dishes - housework

My name is Ahmed. I live in a small ① with my family. Every day, we do the ② together. I clean my room, and my sister helps in the kitchen. After dinner, I wash the ③ Sometimes we have a problem, but we talk and find a ④ Working together makes our home clean, happy, and calm for everyone.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

1. This is my bag. (mine)
.....
2. That garden belongs to them. (their)
.....

3. These books are hers. (her)
4. He owns this bike. (his)
5. That bag belongs to me. (mine)
6. These are our clothes. (ours)
7. This phone belongs to him. (his)
8. That is her notebook. (hers)
9. These pens are mine. (my)
10. That apartment belongs to them. (theirs)

4 Complete the following dialog:

Mona and Asma are doing the housework

Mona : What are you doing?

Asma : I'm washing the dishes. Would you please ① _____ the trash?

Mona : I already took out the trash.

Asma : Would you help me with the dishes?

Mona : Sorry, I'm ② _____ the rooms.

Asma : Okay, you tidy the rooms and I'll do the dishes.

Mona : Okay. That's ③ _____

Asma : The cat looks hungry. ④ _____ you feed it?

Mona : Okay, I'll feed it when I finish.

5 Write a paragraph of 90 (NINETY) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"The housework you do every day"



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

traditions (n)	تقاليد	backyard (n)	الفناء الخلفي
customs (n)	عادات	surprise party (n)	حفلة مفاجئة
memories (n)	ذكريات	exchange (d)	يتبادل

المفردات الإضافية

Vocabulary

bakery (n)	مخبز	fortieth (adj)	الرابعون
apple pie (n)	فطيرة التفاح	close (adj)	قريب / حميم
Christmas (n)	عيد الميلاد	handmade (adj)	مصنوع يدويا
surprise (n / adj / v. d)	مفاجأة / مفاجئ / يفاجئ	huge (adj)	ضخم
gift (n)	هدية	colorful (adj)	كثير / زاهي الالوان
chicken (n)	لحم الدجاج	famous (adj)	مشهور
moments (n)	لحظات	special (adj)	خاص / مخصص
own (adj)	خاصة	behind (prep / adv)	خلف / بالخلف
fresh (adj)	طازج	celebrate (v) (d)	يحتفل بـ
whenever (conj.)	في أي وقت	organize (v) (d)	ينظم / يرتب
balloon (n)	بالونة	gather (v) (ed)	يتجمع
funny (adj)	مضحك	happen (v) (ed)	يحدث
celebration (n)	احتفال	create (v) (d)	يخلق / يصنع

Definitions

traditions (n)	تقاليد	ways of doing things that are passed ⁽¹⁾ from one generation ⁽²⁾ to another
customs (n)	عادات	things people usually do in their culture ⁽³⁾ or country
memories (n)	ذكريات	things you remember ⁽⁴⁾ from the past
backyard (n)	فناء خلفي	the space or garden behind ⁽⁵⁾ a house
surprise party (n)	حفلة مفاجئة	a special celebration ⁽⁶⁾ planned secretly for someone
exchange (d)	يتبادل	to give something and receive something in return ⁽⁷⁾

١. تنتقل
٢. جيل
٣. ثقافة
٤. يتذكر
٥. خلف
٦. احتفال
٧. في المقابل

Expressions & Prepositions

I hope you're doing well	أتمنى أن تكون بخير	hear about	يسمع عن
(be) no different	لا يختلف	in return	في المقابل
come home	يأتي للمنزل	(be) passed from ... to..	ينتقل من .. إلى ...
laugh at	يضحك على	a bit	قليلا



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
exchange (v)	يتبادل	trade		keep	يحتفظ بـ
huge (adj)	ضخم	giant		tiny	ضئيل
organize (adj)	يرتب/ينظم	arrange		mess up	يفسد
gather (v)	يتجمع	meet		leave	يغادر
famous	مشهور	well known		unknown	مجهول
funny	مضحك	amusing		serious	جاد
colorful	زاهي الالوان	bright		colorless	

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ery	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	bakery
-ful	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	colorful / beautiful
-y	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	funny
-er	تحول الصفة العادية إلى صفة في صيغة المقارنة	younger
-est	تحول الصفة العادية إلى صفة في صيغة التفضيل	biggest
-ion	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	celebration

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
tell	يخبر	told	told
hide	يخفي/ يختفي	hid	hidden
come	يأتي	came	come
put up	يعلق/ يرفع	put up	put up

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1) love / like + v -ing / to - infinitive:

- بعد الأفعال (love / like) يمكن استخدام فعل منتهي بـ (ing) أو فعل في المصدر مسبقاً بـ (to).
الشكلين صحيحين:

Ex. I like talking / to talk in public.

Ex. I love going / to go out with friends.

- لكن لاحظ أن التعبيرين (would like / would love) - أو في شكلهما المختصر ('d like / 'd love) - يأتي بعدهما مصدر مسبقاً بـ (to) فقط:

Ex. I'd love to know where you are going.

(NOT: I'd love knowing)

Ex. I'd like to see that film.

(NOT: I'd like seeing)

2) lunch / a lunch

- دائماً تأتي أسماء الوجبات (breakfast / lunch / dinner) بدون أداة النكرة (a/an) قبلها عند الحديث عن الوجبات بشكل عام، ولكن إذا جاء اسم الوجبة مسبقاً بصفة، لابد وأن نستخدم أداة النكرة (a/an) قبل الصفة:

Ex. I had my breakfast before going to school.

(NOT: my a breakfast / a my breakfast)

Ex. The family gathered for a big lunch.

(NOT: for big lunch)

3) during + noun

- دائماً تأتي كلمة (during) متبوعة باسم، وليس (v-ing):

Ex. She fell asleep during the film.

(NOT: during watching the film)

4) chicken / a chicken

- تستخدم كلمة (chicken) كإسم غير معدود بمعنى (لحم الدجاج)، وتستخدم عند الحديث عن الوجبات والمطاعم:

Ex. I'll have chicken and salad.

(NOT: a chicken).

- بينما تستخدم كلمة (a chicken) كإسم معدود وجمعها (chickens) لتشير إلى الطائر نفسه (الدجاج):

Ex. We keep chickens for meat and eggs.

(NOT: chicken)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I love weekends at home.
a. to spend b. spent c. spending d. a&c
- I had with my family last night.
a. chickens b. the chickens c. chicken d. two chickens
- I fell down during
a. watching the match b. the match
c. riding the bike d. riding

Reading

SB Page (32)



SB Page (32)

استمع إلى النصوص



To : ali-magdy@ com

From : popgarcia@ com

Subject : Special Moments with the Garcia Family

Hi All,

I hope **you're doing well** ⁽¹⁾! I want to tell you a bit about my family and some of the special **traditions** ⁽²⁾ we have.

Every family has its own stories and **customs** ⁽³⁾, and ours are no different. The Garcia family from San Antonio, Texas, loves spending time together and creating beautiful **memories** ⁽⁴⁾. Our favorite tradition happens every Sunday when the whole family **gathers** ⁽⁵⁾ at Grandma's house for a big lunch. Grandma cooks her famous chicken and rice, and everyone brings something special. Uncle Carlos brings fresh bread from his **bakery** ⁽⁶⁾, and Aunt Maria makes her delicious apple pie. After eating, the children always play games in the **backyard** ⁽⁷⁾-it's so much fun!

We also love **celebrating** ⁽⁸⁾ birthdays. Whenever someone has a birthday, we **organize** ⁽⁹⁾ a **surprise party** ⁽¹⁰⁾ with colorful balloons and a homemade cake. Just last month, we all celebrated Dad's **fortieth** ⁽¹¹⁾ birthday. Everyone hid **behind** ⁽¹²⁾ the couch, and when Dad came home from work we all jumped out and shouted, "Surprise!" He was so happy.

١. بصحة جيدة
٢. تقاليد
٣. عادات
٤. ذكريات
٥. يتجمع
٦. مخبز
٧. الفناء الخلفي
٨. الاحتفال بـ
٩. يرتب
١٠. حفلة مفاجئة
١١. الأربعون
١٢. خلف

١٣. احتفال

١٤. يتبادل

١٥. مصنوع يدويا

١٦. متقارب

Christmas is our biggest **celebration**⁽¹³⁾ of the year. We put up a huge Christmas tree, **exchange**⁽¹⁴⁾ **handmade**⁽¹⁵⁾ gifts, and laugh at Grandpa's funny stories about his younger days.

These traditions make our family very **close**⁽¹⁶⁾ and happy. I'd love to hear about your family's traditions too.

Best wishes,

Pop Garcia

Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

Read the email again and write (T) True or (F) False.

- | | |
|---|---------|
| 1. The Garcia family meets every Saturday. | (-----) |
| 2. Uncle Carlos owns a bakery. | (-----) |
| 3. They celebrated Mom's birthday last month. | (-----) |
| 4. Grandpa tells stories during Christmas. | (-----) |

Answers:

3. X

1. ✓

4. ✓

2. ✓

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Definitions

- are ways of doing things that are passed from one generation to another.
a. Conditions b. Opinions c. Traditions d. Positions
- are things people usually do in their culture or country.
a. Customs b. Birthdays c. Surprises d. Stories
- Things you remember from the past are your
a. families b. bakeries c. chickens d. memories
- The is the space or garden behind a house.
a. station b. backyard c. playground d. club
- A party is a special celebration planned secretly for someone.
a. surprise b. wedding c. success d. guest
- To is to give something and receive something in return.
a. babysit b. organize c. exchange d. prepare

Synonyms & Antonyms

7. Can I **exchange** this blue shirt for a red one? "Exchange" means
 a. keep b. save c. ask d. trade
8. Mahmoud is famous. "famous" is a synonym for
 a. distant b. unfriendly c. well known d. clever
9. The flowers are colorful. "colorful" is an antonym for
 a. bright b. colorless c. careless d. careful
10. We saw a **huge** elephant in the zoo. "Huge" is opposite in meaning to
 a. big b. large c. enormous d. tiny
11. We **organized** a birthday party for my father. "Organized" means
 a. took b. brought c. arranged d. decided
12. The family **gathers** for dinner every night. "Gathers" means
 a. meets b. remains c. turns d. goes

Prefixes and Suffixes

13. To change the noun "fun" into an adjective, we add the suffix "....."
 a. -or b. -ny c. -ing d. -ed
14. To get the noun from the verb "bake", we add the suffix "....."
 a. -al b. -or c. -ed d. -ry
15. To change the noun "color" into an adjective, we add the suffix "....."
 a. -ion b. -ry c. -ful d. -al
16. To get the noun from the verb "celebrate", we add the suffix ".....".
 a. -est b. -ger c. -ion d. -ous
17. To get the superlative form of the adjective "young", we add the suffix ".....".
 a. -er b. -ian c. -ous d. -est

Guess the meaning & collocations

18. My mom went to the to buy a beautiful cake for my birthday party.
 a. bakery b. library c. cinema d. park
19. Close your eyes! I have a gift for you.
 a. question b. backyard c. tradition d. surprise
20. My friend Ali lives near my school. I love going out with him.
 a. close b. unfriendly c. bad d. far

21. My grandma made this sweater with her hands for me, so it is
 a. factory-made b. machine-made c. handmade d. robot-made
22. We will my mother's birthday next Monday.
 a. repair b. gather c. celebrate d. surprise
23. I usually home from school at 4:00 PM and start my homework.
 a. take b. give c. have d. come
24. I gave her a birthday present, and she thanked me in
 a. return b. role c. fight d. smile

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

backyard - discussion - customs - memories - exchanged

My family has special traditions for birthdays. One of our favorite ① is a surprise party. Last year, we had it in our ② All our friends came, and we ③ small gifts. We laughed a lot. These events are important because they help us make happy ④ together. I love my family celebrations.

3 Complete the following dialog:

Mariam and Hagar are talking about a birthday party.

Mariam: Hi, Hagar. What did you do yesterday?

Hagar: It was my ① yesterday so we had a party.

Mariam: Happy birthday. Where did you have the party?

Hagar: In the ② of our house.

Mariam: What did you like most about the party?

Hagar: The colorful balloons and the ③ I got.

Mariam: ④ was the gift?

Hagar: It was a new bike.

4 Write an email of NINETY (90):

(مجاوب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

To your friend about your birthday party. Your name is Hani and your email address is hani78@yahoo.com. Your friend is Ali and his email address is ali88@gmail.com

New Message

To : Cc Bcc

From :

Subject :

.....,

.....

.....

.....

Send

• يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات بكتابة التسميع والواجب المنزلي



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

Sure!	بالتأكيد	traditions (n)	تقاليد
What about?	ماذا عن	Great!	شيء عظيم
Good teamwork!	عمل جماعي جيد	That's a good idea!	إنها لفكرة جيدة
It's only fair	هذا هو العدل أو الصواب	Exactly!	بالضبط

Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

chores (n)	الأعمال المنزلية	lucky (adj)	محظوظ
shelves (n)	أرفف	specific (adj)	محدد
secrets (n)	أسرار	descriptive (adj)	وصفي
mystery books (n)	كتب الغموض (الألغاز)	loyal (adj)	مخلص
description (n)	وصف	honest (adj)	أمين
impression (n)	انطباع	hardworking (adj)	يعمل بجد
personality (n)	شخصية	helpful (adj)	متعاون
background (n)	خلفية	smart (adj)	ذكي
conclusion (n)	خاتمة	water (v) (ed)	يسقي
physical appearance (n)	المظهر الخارجي	dust (v) (ed)	ينفض الغبار
build (n)	البناء الجسماني	celebrate (v) (d)	يحتفل بـ
height (n)	الطول / الارتفاع	describe (v) (d)	يصف
friendship (n)	صداقة	decorate (v) (d)	يزين

Expressions & Prepositions

make my bed	ارتب فراشي	set the table	يجهز طاولة الطعام
water the plants	يسقي النباتات	hang the lights	يعلق الأضواء
Don't worry	لا تقلق	tidy the room	يرتب الغرفة
I'll take care of it	سأعتني بذلك	my closest friend	صديقي المقرب
the same age as	في نفس عمر	cheer up	يُسعد
trust with my secrets	أثق فيه لمعرفة أسراري	(be) there for ...	موجود لمساعدة ...
to sum up	باختصار		



Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
assist	يساعد	help		damage/hurt	يؤذي
specific	محدد	definite		general	عام
honest	أمين	fair		dishonest	غير أمين
smart	ذكي	clever		foolish	أحمق
lucky	محظوظ	fortunate		unlucky	غير محظوظ

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ful	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	helpful
-ance	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	appearance
-ity	تحول الصفة إلى اسم	personality
-tion	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	description

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
hang	يعلق	hung	hung
set	يعدّ / تغرب / يضبط	set	set
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
make	يرتب (السريّر)	made	made
think	يعتقد	thought	thought



Reading



SB Page (36)



استمع إلى النصوص

SB Page (36)

Mom : Good morning, everyone! It's Friday - our family cleaning day. Let's plan⁽¹⁾ our chores⁽²⁾.

Adel : Sure⁽³⁾, Mom. I'll clean my room and make my bed⁽⁴⁾.

Salwa : I'll water the plants and dust⁽⁵⁾ the shelves⁽⁶⁾ in the living room.

Adel : What about⁽⁷⁾ the dishes, Mom? Are they mine or Salwa's today?

Salwa : They're yours, Adel. Yesterday they were mine. It's only fair⁽⁸⁾!

١. يخطط
٢. الأعمال المنزلية
٣. بالتأكيد
٤. أرتب سريرى
٥. يزيل الغبار
٦. الأرفف
٧. ماذا عن
٨. هذا عدل / صواب

Mom : Good teamwork⁽⁹⁾! After that, I'll cook lunch, and you can both help me set the table⁽¹⁰⁾.

Salwa : I'll bring my favorite dishes. They match⁽¹¹⁾ our cups!

Mom : Great⁽¹²⁾! When we finish, we can all sit together and talk about our weekend plans.

Adel : That's a good idea⁽¹³⁾! Family time⁽¹⁴⁾ is always the best.

Salwa : Yes, Mom always says, "Helping at home shows love."

Mom : Exactly⁽¹⁵⁾! This home is ours, so let's keep it clean and happy!

٩. عمل جماعي جيد
١٠. يعد طاولة الطعام
١١. يلائم
١٢. هذا عظيم
١٣. إنها فكرة جيدة
١٤. الوقت المخصص للأسرة
١٥. بالضبط



SB Page (37)

Complete the following dialog:

Amira : Our family loves celebrating⁽¹⁾ holidays together.

Hassan : Really? ① What do you usually do at home on special days?

Amira : We always cook together and decorate⁽²⁾ the house.

Hassan : ② That sounds like a lovely / nice tradition⁽³⁾!

Amira : Thanks! On Fridays, we also visit our grandparents.

Hassan : ③ Do you help them when they prepare food?

Amira : Yes, of course! I help with the cake, and my brother hangs⁽⁴⁾ the lights.

Hassan : ④ That's a wonderful/such a nice way to spend time.

١. الاحتفال بـ
٢. يزين
٣. تقليد
٤. يعلق



SB Page (38)

My best friend is Sarah Hassan, and she's been my closest friend⁽¹⁾ for three years. She's fifteen, the same age as me⁽²⁾, and lives near my house. Sarah has long brown hair and bright eyes. She's funny and always cheers me up⁽³⁾. She's also loyal⁽⁴⁾ and honest⁽⁵⁾, so I can trust her with my secrets⁽⁶⁾. Sarah has two brothers and a sister, and her parents are teachers. We both love mystery books⁽⁷⁾ and tennis, and sometimes our families go out together. Sarah is always there for me⁽⁸⁾, and I feel lucky⁽⁹⁾ to have her friendship⁽¹⁰⁾.

١. أقرب صديق
٢. نفس عمري
٣. تسعدني
٤. وفي
٥. أمين
٦. أثق بها ل معرفة
٧. أسراري
٨. مستعدة لمساعدتي
٩. محظوظ
١٠. صداقة

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Synonyms & Antonyms

- The nurse **assisted** the doctor. The word "assisted" can be replaced with
 a. stopped b. wrote c. helped d. carried
- The teacher gave **specific** instructions about the exam. "Specific" means
 a. definite b. general c. private d. secret
- She is an **honest** person. You can trust her. "Honest" is an antonym for
 a. incorrect b. faithful c. stupid d. dishonest
- He is a **smart** boy. The word "smart" is opposite in meaning to
 a. clever b. foolish c. cheerful d. careful

Prefixes and Suffixes

- To get the adjective from the verb "help", we add the suffix ".....".
 a. -ful b. -den c. -ion d. -ian
- To get the noun from the verb "appear", we add the suffix ".....".
 a. -sion b. -tion c. -ance d. -ence
- To get the noun from the verb "describe", we add the suffix ".....".
 a. -ian b. -tion c. -sion d. -cian
- To get the noun from the adjective "personal", we add the suffix ".....".
 a. -ion b. -ton c. -ing d. -ity

Collocations & Guessing the meaning

- A: Can you help me carry this bag? - B: ".....! I am happy to help you."
 a. Never! b. Sure! c. Sorry! d. Maybe!
- A: playing hide and seek?" B: "That sounds fun!"
 a. What about b. How far c. Why not d. Who is
- A: I passed all my exams with high marks! - B: ".....! I am proud of you."
 a. Greedy! b. Quiet! c. Great! d. Sorry
- You take a piece of cake and your sister takes the other piece. It's
 a. quite dark b. too late c. very far d. only fair

13. A: It is hot today. Let's go swimming. - B: That's a! The pool will be nice.
a. good idea! b. bad story! c. new house! d. long way!
14. A: So, the meeting starts at 5:00 PM, right? - B:! Please do not be late.
a. Empty! b. Exactly! c. Extra! d. Early!
15. In my house, we all do, like washing the dishes and cleaning the floor.
a. charts b. chairs c. cheers d. chores
16. I put all my favorite books on the wooden in my bedroom.
a. sleeves b. shelves c. shoes d. ships
17. Ali is my closest friend. I trust him with my
a. secrets b. snacks c. socks d. seats
18. books are exciting and full of surprises.
a. Cookery b. History c. Mystery d. Phone
19. The girl gave a clear of the man who stole the bicycle.
a. decision b. description c. decoration d. dictionary
20. On my first day at the new school, I wanted to make a good
a. problem b. mystery c. height d. impression
21. The athlete has a strong because he exercises every day.
a. smile b. voice c. build d. laugh
22. When the students finished the project together, the teacher said, "....."
a. Good teamwork! b. Happy birthday!
c. Bad luck! d. Good morning!

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

sum - make - chores - memories - set

Every day, I do some chores at home. In the morning, I ① my bed and tidy the room. In the afternoon, I water the plants. Before dinner, I ② the table for my family. These ③ help my parents a lot. To ④ up, doing chores makes our home clean and happy.



Writing Skills

Writing a Descriptive Paragraph

كتابة فقرة تصف فيها شخصا ما، اتبع الخطوات التالية:

١- ابدأ بالمعلومات الأساسية حول هذا الشخص، مثل الاسم، والسن، والوظيفة، وتوقيت وكيفية معرفتك به.

name / age / job / how and when you knew them

٢. صف المظهر الجسماني الخارجي لهذا الشخص من حيث الطول، والبناء الجسدي، والشعر، والعينين. - ثم تكتب عن شخصيته، مستخدما صفات مثل:

kind / friendly / helpful / funny / smart / shy / hard-working / honest

٣. ثم اكتب عن اهتماماته، مستخدما كلمات مثل:

sports / music / reading / gaming

٤. ثم اختتم الفقرة بجملة تستخدم فيها التعبير "To sum up" تتحدث فيها عن أهمية علاقتك بهذا الشخص.

A Model Descriptive Paragraph

نموذج لفقرة وصفية

My best friend's name is Omar. He is 15 years old. I have known him since primary school, and we became friends five years ago. Omar is of medium height and he is fit. He has short black hair and brown eyes. He is kind, friendly, and very helpful. He is also hard-working and honest. In his free time, he likes playing football and listening to music. To sum up, Omar is a great friend, and this friendship is important to me because he always supports me and makes me feel happy.

General Exercises



on Lesson 5&6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Please be What exact time will you arrive?
a. noisy b. specific c. heavy d. angry
- If the shirt is too small, you can it for a larger size at the store.
a. exchange b. assist c. celebrate d. build
- Mom asked me to my sister with her homework.
a. build b. exchange c. assist d. babysit
- A good friend is always and tells you the truth.
a. shy b. honest c. funny d. noisy

5. Our team won the football match, so we will _____ tonight!
a. celebrate b. practice c. sleep d. complain
6. I can trust my sister with my _____ because she never tells anyone.
a. backyards b. secrets c. buildings d. lessons
7. I can't find my keys! - Don't _____, I will help you look for them.
a. worry b. stay c. help d. work
8. For tonight's party, we need to _____ the lights on the tree and outside the window.
a. count b. turn c. hang d. break

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

hung - personality - dusted - impression - decorated

Last Friday, we had a party to celebrate my brother's birthday. Before the party, we
① _____ the furniture. We ② _____ the house with flowers and balloons. We
③ _____ the lights on the walls. The party made a good ④ _____ on everyone,
and we all felt happy.

3 Complete the following dialog:

Mona is asking Lina about the preparations for a party.

Mona : Hi Lina! I heard you are having a party today.

Lina : Yes, it's my little sister's birthday.

Mona : ① _____ do you do at home for the party?

Lina : We decorate the house and ② _____ the lights.

Mona : ③ _____ What do you do after that?

Lina : We ④ _____ the tables for food.

Mona : Everything will look great.

Lina : I hope everyone will enjoy the party.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Last weekend, Sara helped her family prepare for a small party at home. In the morning, she cleaned the living room and dusted the shelves. Her brother set the table and helped decorate the house with lights. In the afternoon, their mother

cooked food while Sara assisted her in the kitchen. Everyone worked together and felt happy. When the guests arrived, the house looked clean and welcoming. Sara was tired, but she felt proud because teamwork made the day special.

A. Choose the correct answer:

1. In the morning, Sara cleaned the living room and the shelves.

- a. cooked b. dusted c. painted d. broke

2. Sara felt proud because made the day special.

- a. the food b. the guests c. teamwork d. the lights

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Who did Sara help in the kitchen?

.....

4. What did Sara's brother do?

.....

5. How did Sara feel at the end of the day?

.....

5 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

SB

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Describing your teacher of English, whom you like so much"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review on Unit 8

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

role (n)	دور / وظيفة	babysit (v. babysat)	يجالس أو يعتنى بالأطفال
twins (n)	توائم	exchange (d)	يتبادل
traditions (n)	تقاليد	fix (ed)	يصلح
customs (n)	عادات	Sure!	بالتأكيد
memories (n)	ذكريات	What about?	ماذا عن
backyard (n)	الفناء الخلفي	Good teamwork!	عمل جماعي جيد
surprise party (n)	حفلة مفاجئة	It's only fair	هذا هو العدل أو الصواب
traditions (n)	تقاليد	Great!	شيء عظيم
caring (adj)	مهتم بالآخرين / حنون	That's a good idea!	إنها لفكرة جيدة
take care of	يعتني بـ	Exactly!	بالضبط



Language

قواعد لغوية

1 Possessive Adjectives

- صفات الملكية هي كلمات تستخدم للدلالة على ملكية شخص أو شيء لشيء آخر. وهي تختلف باختلاف الفاعل. ولابد وأن يأتي بعدها الإسم المملوك. ادرس جيدا الجدول التالي:

Subject الفاعل	Possessive Adjectives صفات الملكية	Example
I أنا	my	My father is a teacher.
He هو (أو اسم مفرد مذكر)	his	This is his house.
She هي (أو اسم مفرد مؤنث)	her	Her name is Mona.
It هو/هي لغير العاقل (أو اسم مفرد غير عاقل)	its	Its tail is long.
We نحن	our	Our teacher is very kind.
You أنت/انتم	your	Your book is over there.
They هم (أو اسم جمع)	their	Their house is very big.

2 Possessive Pronouns

- ضمائر الملكية هي كلمات تستخدم للدلالة على ملكية شخص لشيء. وهي تختلف باختلاف الفاعل. ولا يأتي بعدها أبدا الإسم المملوك. ادرس جيدا الجدول التالي:

Subject الفاعل	Possessive Adjective صفات الملكية	Example
I أنا	mine	This book is mine.
He هو (أو اسم مفرد مذكر)	his	That cat is his.
She هي (أو اسم مفرد مؤنث)	hers	This pencil is hers.
It هو (أو اسم مفرد غير عاقل)	—	—

We	ours	This farm is ours .
You	yours	This car is yours .
They (أو اسم جمع)	theirs	This house is theirs .

3 Apostrophe ('S) الملكية

الشيء المملوك + 'S + المالك

Ex. It's Sameh's turn.

Notes

- هناك كلمات وتعبيرات أخرى تستخدم للدلالة على الملكية، ويمكن استخدامها كبداية لصفات وضمائر الملكية في سؤال مثل (Rewrite):

ملك 's / يَخْصُ belong to / يمتلك own / يمتلك have / يملك possess

Ex. I have this book. = This is my book. = This book is mine.

Ex. She owns this car. = This is her car. = This car is hers.

Ex. This farm belongs to them. = This is their farm. = This farm is theirs.

Ex. This is Hala's phone. = This is her phone. = This phone is hers.

- ويمكن أيضا استخدام of للتعبير عن الملكية.

Ex. The feathers of the goose were golden. Ex. He is a friend of mine.

Ask and Answer about tasks that can be done at home.

- اسأل واجب عن المهام التي يمكن القيام بها بالمنزل.

Question

1- What tasks do you usually do at home?

ما هي المهام التي عادة ما تقوم بها بالمنزل؟

2- Which task do you like the most? Why?

ما هي المهمة التي تفضلها أكثر؟ ولماذا؟

3- Who helps you with the housework?

من يساعدك في أعمال المنزل؟

4- How often do you do these tasks?

- كم مرة تقوم بهذه المهام؟

5 - Do you think children should help at home?

- هل تعتقد أن الأطفال يجب أن يساعدوا في المنزل؟

Answer

- I usually clean my room, and help in the kitchen.

عادة ما أنظف غرفتي وأساعد في المطبخ.

- I prefer cleaning my room because I feel happy when it is clean and tidy.

أفضل تنظيف غرفتي لأنني أشعر بالسعادة عندما تكون نظيفة ومرتبّة.

- My mother and my brother often help me.

غالبًا ما تقوم أمي وأخي بمساعدتي.

- I always do these tasks every day after school.

دائمًا أقوم بهذه المهام كل يوم بعد المدرسة.

- Yes, in my opinion it teaches them responsibility.

نعم، في رأيي هذا يعلمهم المسؤولية.

Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات إنشائية ورسائل بريد إلكتروني عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة

Lessons 1 & 2

I do some of the housework every day at home. Before going to school, I make my bed and clean my room. In the afternoon, I help my mother in the kitchen and take out the rubbish. I help my brother with his schoolwork. In the evening, I tidy the living room. Doing housework makes our home clean and happy. We work together every day, and this teaches me responsibility, teamwork, and respect for my family.

Lesson 3


New Message

To : ali88@gmail.com Cc Bcc

From : hani78@yahoo.com

Subject : My Birthday Party!

Dear Ali,

How are you? I hope you are doing well. I am writing to tell you about my birthday party which I had last weekend.

We had a wonderful celebration in our backyard. My parents decorated the place with colorful balloons and lights. I invited all our close friends, and we had a great time together. We played many games and exchanged some lovely gifts. My mother prepared some delicious Egyptian dishes, and the cake tasted amazing!

These celebrations are important because they help us make happy memories together. I really missed you there and I hope you can join us next time.

Best wishes, Hani

Send
🔗
📎
📷
🔍
😊
🗑️
⌵

Lessons 5 & 6

My English teacher is Mrs. Lina, and I like her very much. She is kind, patient, and always helpful in class. I have known her for two years at school. She is tall, with short brown hair and friendly eyes. She explains lessons clearly and makes learning fun with games and stories. She listens to students and encourages us to speak English. To sum up, she inspires me and makes me love English every day. Her homework is useful, fair, and helps me practice reading, writing, and speaking skills well.

Al-Azhar Test

Hani is my closest friend. He is very kind and honest. We met at school three years ago and became friends quickly. He always helps me when I have a problem and listens to me. I trust him a lot, and I am happy to have him in my life.

Test on Unit 8

There are some chores I don't like to do at home. I don't enjoy washing the dishes because it takes a long time and my hands get wet. I also dislike cleaning the bathroom because it is dirty and smelly. Sometimes I have to dust the shelves, but it is boring. My least favorite chore is ironing clothes because it is slow and tiring. I try to finish these chores quickly. Even though I don't like them, I do them to help my family and keep the house clean.

A. Listening

1 Answer the following questions:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Where did the writer go last weekend?

.....

2. What did the writer learn on the farm?

.....

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Sara and Lina are talking on the phone .

Sara : Hi, Lina! How are you today?

Lina : ① And you?

Sara : I'm good. ② ?

Lina : I'm writing an email to my pen friend Jane,

Sara : That's great. ③ ?

Lina : She is from Canada.

Sara : Nice! Have a nice time.

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. Best friends can tell each other their because they trust each other.

a. secrets b. names c. hobbies d. lunches

2. Ali found a mobile phone on the bus and gave it to the driver. He is a very boy.

a. strong b. funny c. honest d. fast

3. What's name? - I'm Sami Foad.

a. her b. your c. his d. my

4. This pencil is, it's not yours.

a. my b. her c. our d. mine

4 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. This blue car is our. (.....)

2. Is this yours pen? (.....)

3. Do you help your sister with hers homework?

(.....)

4. The children are doing theirs homework.

(.....)

C: Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

My name is Sami. Yesterday was my 12th birthday, and my family organized a surprise party for me. When I came home from school, I saw all my friends in the backyard. They shouted, "Surprise!" loudly. My closest friend, Ahmed, was there with a big smile. We played fun games like hide-and-seek and ate a huge chocolate cake. My mom made it, and it was so delicious. For my gift, Ahmed gave me a new video game. I felt very happy and loved. It was a perfect day.

A. Answer the following questions?

1. Who organized the surprise party for Sami?

.....

2. What gift did Sami receive from Ahmed?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer:

3. When Sami came home from his, he saw all his friends in the backyard.

a. party

b. school

c. store

d. club

4. Sami's mom made a huge chocolate cake, and it was so

a. salty

b. healthy

c. big

d. delicious

6 Write a short paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences on:

(مجاوب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"My closest friend"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test on Unit 8

A. Listening

1 A: Write True (T) or False (F):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. The family went to the zoo on a sunny day.	☐	☐
2. The lions were playing and running around.	☐	☐

B: Listen and complete:

- The were very funny and ate bananas.
- The big lions were sleeping a tree.
- The family had a lunch near the bird cages.

B. Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- "Fix" and "break" are
a. suffixes b. antonyms c. synonyms d. prefixes
- Happy or sad things you remember from the past are your
a. families b. teachers c. friends d. memories
- Ahmed gave her a birthday present, and I thanked him in
a. return b. role c. fight d. smile
- To get the noun from the verb "discuss", we add the suffix ".....".
a. -ied b. -ian c. -ion d. -ice

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

care - traditions - roles - exchange - sum

Every family has special traditions on holidays. We ① gifts and share food with love. Spending time together helps us feel happy. We learn to help and ② for each other. To ③ up, ④ make family life warm and full of good memories for children and adults every day at home.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Learning a new hobby can make life more enjoyable and active. Many people choose hobbies like painting, cooking, or gardening to relax after a long day. A hobby helps you use your time in a positive way and learn new skills. For example, cooking at home can improve your health and save money. Gardening teaches patience and care, as plants need regular attention. When people share hobbies with friends or family, they feel more connected and confident. In short, having a hobby is not a waste of time; it supports personal growth and happiness in everyday life.

A. Choose the correct answer:

- Many people choose hobbies to after a long day.
a. worry b. relax c. hurry d. argue
- Gardening teaches patience because plants need attention.
a. noisy b. careless c. quick d. regular

B. Answer the following questions:

- Why is it useful to have a hobby?

.....

- What can cooking at home help with?

.....

- How do hobbies help people feel connected?

.....

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

- The hotel owner had three children.

T	F
☐	☐
☐	☐

- Dumpling stayed at a big house in a quiet place.

B. Answer the following questions:

- Why did the old man decide to reward Dumpling?

.....

- What did Dumpling find inside the tree?

.....

C. Writing

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the words between brackets:

1. This phone belongs to Mona. (hers)

2. These toys belong to me. (my)

3. That car is ours. (our)

4. This book belongs to you. (yours)

7 Complete the following dialog:

Ahmed and Salem are discussing what to do on the weekend

Ahmed : Hi Salem! What are you doing on Saturday?

Salem : I have no plans. Why?

Ahmed : Do you want to go to the ① _____ ?

There's a new movie I want to see.

Salem : ② _____ ! What movie is it?

Ahmed : It's a funny cartoon about a talking dog.

Salem : I love cartoons! ③ _____ should we meet?

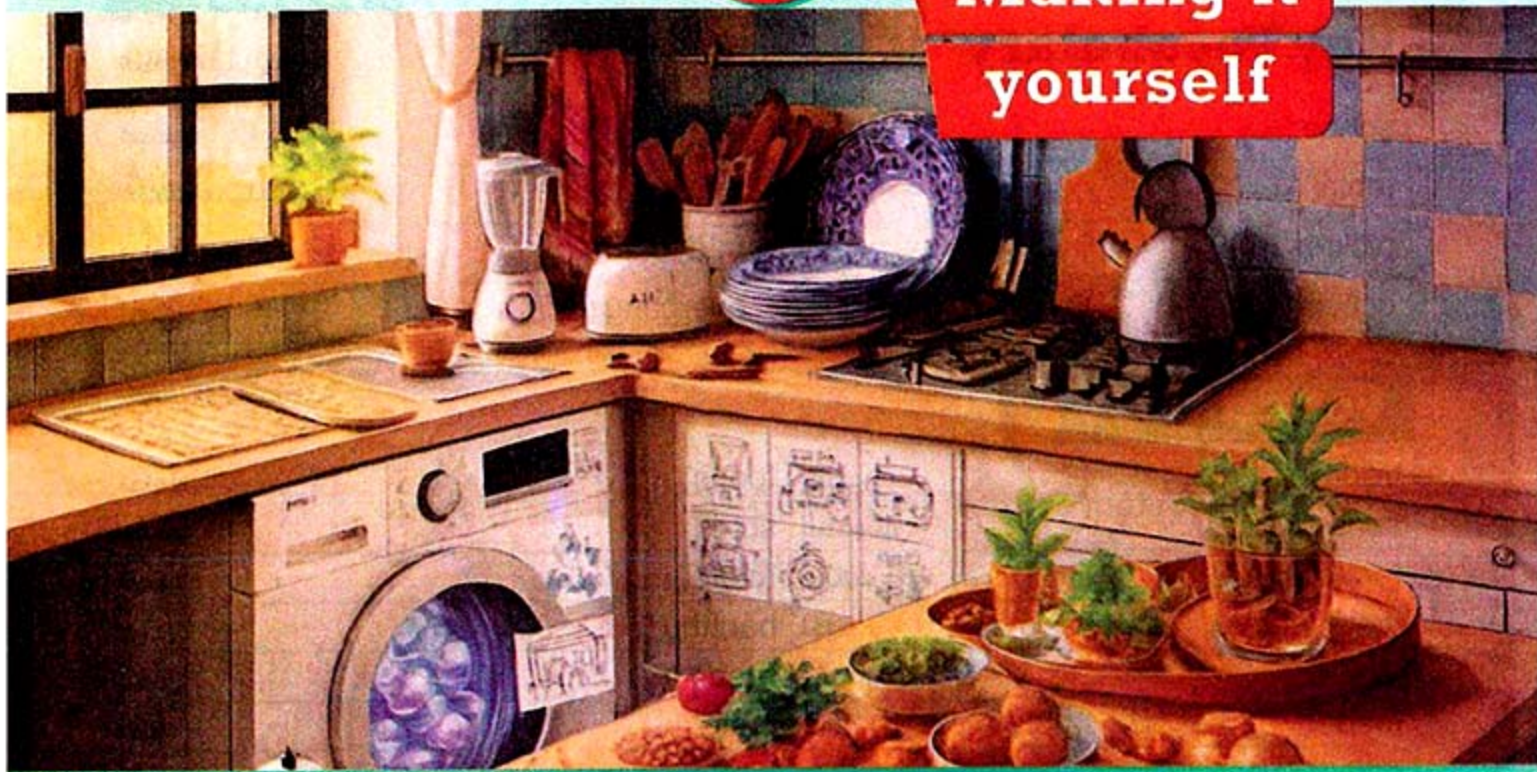
Ahmed : How about 3 o'clock? We can ④ _____ at the bus stop.

8 Write a text of NIENTY (90) words on ...

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Chores you don't like to do at home"

Making it yourself



Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

- Read short texts about daily routines and Egyptian life to find main ideas and details,
- Understand simple instructions and processes (e.g. making food, using machines)

Listening:

- listen for specific information and sequence in short talks about routines or tasks
- Identify key details in everyday conversations

Language:

- Use possessive " 's, s', and of " forms accurately

- Apply sequence words (first, next, then, finally) in writing and speaking

Writing:

- Write short instructional or descriptive paragraphs (e.g. recipes, daily routines)
- Use linking and sequence words to organize ideas clearly

Speaking:

- Describe routines, home activities, and how things work using clear steps
- Take part in role-plays, pair discussions, and short project presentations

• يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات بكتابة التسميع والواجب المنزلي



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

sauce (n.)	صلصة	chopped (adj.)	مقطع
tahini (n.)	طحينة	spoonful (n.)	ملعقة ممتلئة
pickles (n.)	مخللات	fold (v.ed.)	يطوي- يلف
activities (n.)	أنشطة	everyday (adj.)	يومي

Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

traditional (adj.)	تقليدي	foods (n.)	الطعام
sandwich (n.)	سندوتش	salad (n.)	سلطة
families (n.)	عائلات	falafel (n.)	طعمية
tasty (adj.)	لذيذ	healthy (adj.)	صحي
loaf (n.)	رغيف	bread (n.)	عيش
fried (adj.)	مقلي	plate (n.)	طبق
add (v.ed)	يضيف	tomatoes (n.)	طماطم
cucumbers (n.)	خيار	lettuce (n.)	خس
pour (ed.)	يصب	parts (n.)	أجزاء
energy (n.)	طاقة	cheese (n.)	جبنة
ingredients (n.)	مكونات	process (n.)	عملية
chores (n.)	أعمال منزلية	housework (n.)	عمل منزلي
tidy (adj.)	مرتب	kitchen (n.)	المطبخ
songs (n.)	أغاني	routine (n.)	نظام يومي

Definitions

spoonful (n.)	ملعقة	the amount ⁽¹⁾ that fits in a spoon
sauce (n.)	صلصة	a thick liquid ⁽²⁾ served with food for flavor
tahini (n.)	طحينة	a sauce made from sesame seeds ⁽³⁾
fold (v.)	يطوي- يلف	to bend something over itself
pickles (n.)	مخللات	vegetables kept in salty or vinegar ⁽⁴⁾ water
chopped (adj.)	مقطع	cut into small pieces ⁽⁵⁾

١. كمية
٢. سائل
٣. بذور السمسم
٤. خل
٥. قطع

Expressions & Prepositions

make a falafel sandwich	يعمل ساندوتش طعمية	fried falafel	فلافل مقلية
at the gym	في الجيم	a good breakfast	وجبة افطار جيدة
ready for school	جاهز للمدرسة	daily routine	الروتين اليومي
turn on	تشغل	while doing the dishes	بينما تغسل الاطباق
stay organised	تبقى منظمة	make a list	يعمل قائمة
love eating falafel for breakfast	يحبوا اكل الفلافل للافطار	spend 30 m. doing her exercises	تقضي ثلاثون دقيقة في عمل التمارين



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
clean	نظيف	neat - spotless		dirty	قذر
carefully	بحرص	cautiously		carelessly	بلا مبالاة
right	صحيح	correct		wrong	خطأ
tidy	مرتب	neat-organised		untidy / messy	فوضوي
healthy	صحي	fit - good		unhealthy	غير صحي
traditional	تقليدي	classic - customary		modern	حديث
organised	منظم	tidy-systematic		disorganised	غير منظم

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ful	تحول الاسم الى اسم اخر	spoonful
-ped	تحول الفعل الى صفة	chopped
-al	تحول الاسم الى صفة	traditional
-y	تحول الاسم الى صفة	tasty - healthy
-ly	تحول الصفة الى حال	carefully

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
shine	تشرق	shone	shone
buy	يشترى	bought	bought
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
give	يعطي	gave	given
put	يضع	put	put
become	يصبح	became	become
say	يقول	said	said

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 make / do

• **make** تأتي مع بعض الكلمات مثل

Ex. **make** your bed - coffee / tea - a sandwich - friends / mistakes - decision

• **do** تأتي مع بعض الكلمات مثل

Ex. **do** exercises - the ironing - a job - well - work - cleaning - the shopping - homework - housework.

2 tasty / tasteful

• **tasty**

• لذيذ / طعمه حلو

Ex. The pizza is very **tasty**.

• **tasteful**

• ذو ذوق راقٍ / أنيق

• تستخدم مع الملابس / الديكور / التصرفات / الموسيقى

Ex. She wore a **tasteful** dress.

3 everyday / every day

• **everyday**(adj)

• يومي / معتاد

Ex. My mother goes shopping to buy our **everyday** needs.

• **every day** (adv)

• كل يوم

Ex. I study English **every day**.

4 ceremonies / events

• **ceremonies**

• حفلات / مراسم

(تستخدم للمناسبات الرسمية أو الدينية أو الاجتماعية.)

Ex. We attended two wedding **ceremonies**.

• **events**

• أحداث / مناسبات (حدث رياضي، تاريخي)

Ex. The World Cup is one of the biggest sports **events**.

5 Using adjectives to describe food

tasty, crunchy, spicy, sweet

Ex. The soup was **tasty**.

Ex. The falafel was **spicy**.

• استخدم الصفات لوصف الطعام:
لذيذ، مقرمش، حار، حلو.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- You should think well before important decisions.
a. doing b. making c. telling d. speaking
- I my homework before sleeping.
a. do b. make c. tell d. give
- Historical change the world.
a. films b. foods c. accidents d. events
- Stress is part of life.
a. usually b. often c. everyday d. every day

Reading

SB Page (41)

SB Page (41)

استمع إلى النصوص



Making a **tasty**⁽¹⁾, and healthy falafel sandwich is quick. First, you need a loaf of **bread**⁽²⁾, some **fried falafel**⁽³⁾, salad, and tahini **sauce**⁽⁴⁾.

Put the bread on a clean plate. Then, open it carefully and place three or four pieces of falafel inside. Add some chopped **tomatoes**⁽⁵⁾, **cucumbers**⁽⁶⁾, and **lettuce**⁽⁷⁾. Next, pour a little tahini sauce and a **spoonful**⁽⁸⁾ of pickles.

Finally, fold the bread and enjoy your sandwich! Many Egyptians love eating falafel for breakfast. Small shops sell it early in the morning in many parts of Egypt. Some families make it at home every weekend.

It gives **energy**⁽⁹⁾ for school or work. My favorite breakfast is falafel with tea and **cheese**⁽¹⁰⁾. My mom always says, "A good breakfast helps you start the day right!"



- لذيذ
- رغيف عيش
- فلافل مقرمشة
- صلصة الطحينة
- كطماطم مقطعة
- خيار
- خبز
- ملعقة
- الطاقة
- جبنة

Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

1. What ingredients do you need to make a falafel sandwich?
2. When do Egyptians usually eat falafel?
3. What do you add after the salad?

- Answers:
1. You need a loaf of bread, some fried falafel, salad, tahini sauce, tomatoes, cucumbers, lettuce, and pickles.
 2. Egyptians usually eat falafel for breakfast.
 3. You add tahini sauce and pickles after the salad.



Audio Script SB Page (43)

Marwa is talking about her **daily routine**⁽¹⁾ and her **family's chores**⁽²⁾. Every morning, she **makes her bed**⁽³⁾ at 7:00 a.m. and then gets ready for school. After classes, she comes home at 3:30 p.m. and helps with some of her family's housework so that the home stays **tidy**⁽⁴⁾. Marwa says it is Nader's Job to wash the dishes, and his help makes the kitchen **shine**⁽⁵⁾. Sometimes they **turn on**⁽⁶⁾ their favorite songs and listen to music while doing the dishes which makes the chore more fun for both of them. Marwa always finishes her homework before 4:00 p.m. because she likes to stay **organized**⁽⁷⁾. Later, she spends thirty minutes doing her exercises to stay **healthy**⁽⁸⁾ and strong, and this routine has become hers over time.

١. نظام يومي
٢. اعمال منزلية
٣. يرتب السرير
٤. مرتب
٥. تشرق
٦. يشغل
٧. منظم
٨. بصحة جيدة

Exercises on Vocabulary

- 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. A is the amount that fits in a spoon.
a. sauce b. spoonful c. tahini d. chopped
2. is a thick liquid served with food for flavor.
a. Pickles b. Fold c. Sauce d. Spoonful
3. is a sauce made from sesame seeds.
a. Tahini b. Pickles c. Falafel d. Sauce
4. To something means to bend it over itself.
a. chop b. fold c. cut d. fry

Synonyms & Antonyms

5. Our house is clean . The synonym of "clean" is
 a. dirty b. neat c. messy d. untidy
6. We should climb the ladder carefully .The antonym of "carefully" is
 a. beautifully b. cautiously c. carelessly d. rightly
7. Your answer is right. The synonym of "right" is
 a. correct b. wrong c. false d. messy
8. My room is tidy. The antonym of "tidy" is
 a. neat b. messy c. fit d. clean
9. The synonym of "healthy" is
 a. fit b. unhealthy c. wrong d. untidy
10. The antonym of "traditional" is
 a. modern b. classic c. fit d. neat

Prefixes and Suffixes

11. To form a noun from the adjective curious, we add the suffix
 a. -ful b. -ness c. -ity d. -ion
12. We can form a noun from the verb generate by adding the suffix
 a. -ly b. -en c. -ful d. -ion
13. We add "-ful" to the word "spoon" to form a (an)
 a. verb b. noun c. adjective d. adverb
14. We add "-al" to the word "tradition" to form a (an)
 a. verb b. noun c. adjective d. adverb
15. We add "-ly" to the word "careful" to form a (an)
 a. noun b. adjective c. verb d. adverb
16. We add "-y" to the word "health" to form a (an)
 a. adjective b. verb c. noun d. adverb

Collocations & Guessing the meaning

17. We need a of ingredients to prepare the recipe.
 a. loaf b. list c. falafel d. plate
18. She added a of sugar to her tea.
 a. spoonful b. sauce c. salad d. sandwich
19. He wants to off the lights before going to bed.
 a. fold b. turn c. spend d. add
20. The chef made a sandwich for lunch.
 a. falafel b. health c. tradition d. soup
21. She her vegetables before putting them in the salad.
 a. folds b. chops c. spends d. stays
22. My mother our clothes after washing them.
 a. stays b. folds c. spends d. adds

Unit 9 Making it yourself

23. This is full of fresh salad and pickles.
a. plate b. stone c. light d. spoon
24. It's important to eat foods every day.
a. healthy b. raw c. dirty d. tidy
25. families usually prepare meals together at home.
a. Everyday b. Traditional c. Tasty d. Weak

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

breakfast - activities - chores - fetta - spoonful

Every morning, I help in the kitchen as part of my daily ① I start the process of preparing ②, measuring a ③ of each ingredient carefully. While I fold the dough, I enjoy listening to music. Cooking is one of my favorite ④, because I love trying different foods. It makes the morning fun and helps me learn new skills.



Language

قواعد لغوية

أداة الملكية ('s) - (s')

- تُستخدم لإظهار الانتماء أو الملكية.
- تستخدم مع:

1 ('s)

1 People

الأشخاص

Tom's sandwich	ساندويتش توم	Ahmed's bag	حقيبة أحمد
my teacher's car	سيارة معلمي	Lisa's book	كتاب ليزا
Sarah's mother	أم سارة		

2 Animals

الحيوانات

the dog's tail	ذيل الكلب	the rabbit's ears	أذنا الأرنب
my cat's food	طعام قطتي	the bird's nest	عش الطائر

3 Time

الزمن / الوقت

yesterday's homework	واجب الأمس	tomorrow's meeting	اجتماع الغد
today's lesson	درس اليوم	last week's exam	امتحان الأسبوع الماضي

4 Places

الاماكن (أحيانا)

London's museums	متاحف لندن	Egypt's pyramids	أهرامات مصر
America's president	رئيس أمريكا	Paris's streets	شوارع باريس

2 (s')

- إذا كان الاسم جمعاً ينتهي بـ **s**، نضع فقط ' بدون **s** إضافية:

The students' books. كتب الطلاب.	The cats' toys are on the floor. ألعاب القطط على الأرض.
The boys' clothes are clean. ملابس الأولاد نظيفة.	The students' books are on the desk. كتب الطلاب على المكتب.
The teachers' room is big. غرفة المعلمين كبيرة.	

Quick rule: قاعدة سريعة

's مفرد Ali's bag

' جمع The boys' bag

ملحوظة: إذا كان الاسم جمع شاذ لا ينتهي بـ **s** نضيف له (**'s**)

- men- women - children

- The **children's** room is tidy.

3 Possessive (of)

الملكية باستخدام "of"

- نستخدم لإظهار الملكية أو الانتماء للأشياء، الأفكار المجردة، أو العبارات الطويلة، خاصة عندما يكون من الصعب استخدام **s**.

1 Things

الأشياء

the door of the house باب المنزل	the handle of the bag مقبض الحقيبة
the color of the car لون السيارة	the roof of the building سقف المبنى

2 Abstract ideas

الأفكار المجردة

the importance of education أهمية التعليم	the value of honesty قيمة الصدق
the beauty of nature جمال الطبيعة	the power of love قوة الحب

3 Long phrases

العبارات الطويلة

the book of the student in my class كتاب الطالب في صفي	the opinion of the people in the meeting رأي الناس في الاجتماع
the homework of the students in the first grade واجب طلاب الصف الأول	

Quick rule: قاعدة سريعة

الأشياء والأفكار المجردة أو العبارات الطويلة (نستخدم **of**)
الأشخاص والحيوانات (نستخدم **'s** أو **s'**)

Exercises on Language

Rewrite the sentences correctly using the words between brackets.

Bit by Bit Exercises

1. Sarah's bag is new. (of)
2. The boys' clothes are dirty. (The clothes)
3. Tom's father is a doctor. (of)
4. The toy of the cat is on the floor. (The cat)
5. The car of my teacher is black. (My)
6. The students' books are on the desk. (The books)
7. The room of the girls is tidy. (The girls..)
8. Education's importance is clear. (The importance)
9. Ali's bag is big. (of)
10. Sarah's mother is kind. (of)
11. The desk of the teacher is neat. (The teacher)
12. The house of my friends is beautiful. (My friends)
13. The dog's tail is long. (of)
14. The colors of the cars are various. (The cars)
15. The beauty of nature is amazing. (Nature)
16. The book of the student in my class is interesting. (The student)
17. The boys' toys are on the floor. (The toys)
18. The teachers' room is big. (of)
19. The cat's eyes are green. (of)
20. The importance of honesty is clear. (with 's)

Speaking

Your favorite sandwich.

- الساندوتش المفضل.

Question

1. What's your favorite sandwich?

ما هو الساندوتش المفضل لديك؟

2. What ingredients does it have?

ما المكونات الموجودة فيه؟

3. Who usually makes it?

من عادة ما يحضره؟

4. When do you eat it?

متى تأكله؟

5. Why do you like it?

لماذا تحبه؟

Answer

1. My favorite sandwich is a chicken and cheese sandwich.

ساندوتشي المفضل هو ساندوتش الدجاج مع الجبن

2. It has grilled chicken, cheese, lettuce, tomatoes, and mayonnaise.

يحتوي على دجاج مشوي، وجبن، وخس، وطماطم، ومايونيز

3. My mother usually makes it for me.

عادة ما تصنعه لي أمي

4. I usually eat it for lunch or as a snack in the afternoon.

عادة ما أتناوله على الغداء أو كوجبة خفيفة في فترة بعد الظهر

5. I like it because it is tasty, filling, and easy to eat.

أحبه لأنه لذيذ، مشبع، وسهل الأكل

Your daily routine.

- الروتين المفضل.

Question

1. What do you do every day?

ماذا تفعل كل يوم؟

2. What time do you do your homework?

في أي وقت تؤدي واجبك المدرسي؟

3. Who makes breakfast in your family?

من يحضر الإفطار في عائلتك؟

4. Do you make your bed every morning?

هل ترتب سريرك كل صباح؟

Answer

1. I wake up, brush my teeth, take a shower, and go to school.

أستيقظ، أفرش أسناني، أستحم، وأذهب إلى المدرسة.

2. I usually do my homework at 5 p.m. after I come home from school.

عادة ما أقوم بواجباتي المدرسية الساعة الخامسة مساءً بعد العودة من المدرسة.

3. My mother usually makes breakfast for us.

عادة ما تصنع أمي الإفطار لنا.

4. Yes, I make my bed every morning before leaving for school.

نعم، أرتب سريرتي كل صباح قبل الذهاب إلى المدرسة.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- are vegetables kept in salty or vinegar water.
a. Pickles b. Tahini c. Chopped d. Sauce
- The living room is organised. The synonym of "organised" is
a. tidy b. disorganised c. messy d. unhealthy
- We add the suffix to the noun wood to form an adjective.
a. -ness b. -ful c. -ly d. -en
- The chef prepared foods for the big family dinner.
a. traditional b. foggy c. interested d. sunny
- means cut into small pieces.
a. Fold b. Chopped c. Spoonful d. Sauce
- The streets are clean. The antonym of "clean" is
a. spotless b. neat c. dirty d. healthy
- We add "-ed" to the word "chop" to form a (an)
a. noun b. verb c. adjective d. adverb
- You should always the tomatoes into small pieces before adding them to the salad.
a. fold b. chop c. spend d. turn on
- My desk is tidy. The synonym of "tidy" is
a. untidy b. messy c. organised d. dirty
- We add "-ly" to the word "happy" to form a (an)
a. noun b. adjective c. adverb d. verb
- A of bread is enough for one person.
a. loaf b. plate c. spoonful d. glass
- She added to make her falafel sandwich more delicious.
a. sauce b. loaf c. plate d. chop
- He used the traditional way of cooking. The synonym of "traditional" is
a. classic b. modern c. untidy d. messy
- Families often eat meals together during holidays.
a. every day b. healthy c. tradition d. short
- I want to a list of groceries for the week.
a. make b. fold c. spend d. add

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

traditional - fade - healthy - tasty - energy

Every day, my morning routine starts with preparing breakfast. I like to eat **1** foods that give me **2** for school. Sometimes, I enjoy **3** meals from my family, like a falafel sandwich with tahini sauce. The meals are always **4** and full of flavor.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

- The dogs' legs are long. (of)
- The hair of my sister is long. (My sister)
- The teacher's advice is useful. (of)
- Honesty's importance is clear. (The importance)

4 Complete the following dialog:

Nada is talking to her mother about healthy food for breakfast.

Nada : Mom, I want to eat something healthy today.

Mother : **1**

Nada : Maybe a salad or some fruits?

Mother : That's a good **2**

Nada : **3** I also have some juice?

Mother : Yes, but make sure it is natural.

Nada : Okay, I will choose **4** oranges.

5 Write a text of NINETY (90) words on:

(مجاوب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"The food you like most"

.....
.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- What is the food you like most?
- Why do you like this food?
- How do you feel when you eat it?

- جمل تساعدك في كتابة الفقرة:

- The food I like most is
- It is very
- I like it because it has.....



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

occasion (n.)	مناسبة	cousin (n.)	ابن / ابنة العم
birthday (n.)	عيد ميلاد	special (adj.)	مميز - خاص
banner (n.)	لافتة	list (n.)	قائمة
clean-up (n.)	تنظيف	surprised (adj.)	مندهش

Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

graduation (n.)	تخرج	party (n.)	حفلة
members (n.)	اعضاء	snacks (n.)	وجبات خفيفة
decorations (n.)	زينة	cake (n.)	كعكة
juice (n.)	عصير	colorful (adj.)	ملون
living room (n.)	حجرة المعيشة	guests (n.)	الضيوف
lights (n.)	لمبات - انوار	celebration (n.)	احتفال
birthday (n.)	عيد ميلاد	activities (n.)	أنشطة
Ramadan (n.)	شهر رمضان	celebrate (v.d)	يحتفل
unforgettable (adj.)	لا يمكن نسيانه	shout (v.ed)	يصيح

Expressions & Prepositions

prepare for	يعد من أجل	at celebrations	في الاحتفالات
make a plan	يعد خطة	do the shopping	تقوم بالتسوق
put up	يعلق / يرفع	turn off	يغلق
make sandwiches	يعد ساندوتشات	made a big birthday banner	صنع لافتة كبيرة لعيد الميلاد
at the end of the day	في نهاية اليوم		



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
special (adj.)	مميز - خاص	unusual - unique		ordinary	عادي
surprised (adj.)	مندهش	amazed - astonished		unsurprised, calm	هادئ
shout (v.ed)	يصيح	scream - cry out		whisper	يهمس
celebrate (v.ed.)	يحتفل	enjoy - mark		ignore	يتجاهل

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
un-	تحول المعنى الى العكس	unforgettable
-able	تحول الفعل الى صفة	forgettable
-ion	تحول الفعل الى اسم	celebration
-d	تحول الاسم الى صفة	surprised
-ful	تحول الاسم الى صفة	colorful

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
write	يكتب	wrote	written
stick	يلصق	stuck	stuck
make	يصنع	made	made
take	ياخذ	took	taken
say	يقول	said	said
eat	ياكل	ate	eaten

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 special / private

• **special** مميز - غير عادي

Ex. My father's birthday is a **special** day.

• **private** خاص - شخصي

Ex. This is my **private** house.

2 members / organs

• **members (n.)**

• أعضاء في مجموعة أو فريق أو نادي

Ex. There are 30 **members** in the club.

• **organs (n.)**

• أعضاء الجسم الداخلية أو نادي

Ex. The heart is the most important **organ** in the body.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Family love each other.

a. babies

b. stones

c. organs

d. members.

2. She is a friend.

a. reward

b. magical

c. special

d. private

Reading

SB Page (45)

SB Page (45)

استمع إلى النصوص



Last Friday, our family prepared a birthday party for my **cousin**⁽¹⁾, Omar. Everyone worked together to make the day **special**⁽²⁾. In the morning, my mother and aunt made a plan and wrote a **list**⁽³⁾ of what we needed: **decorations**⁽⁴⁾, snacks, **juice**⁽⁵⁾, and a birthday cake. My sister and I helped our father do the shopping from the supermarket. At home, we started **decorating**⁽⁶⁾ the living room. First, we put up **colorful**⁽⁷⁾ balloons and lights. Then, we made a big birthday **banner**⁽⁸⁾ and **stuck**⁽⁹⁾ it on the wall. After



that, my aunt made sandwiches while my mother prepared the cake. We also did a quick **clean-up**⁽¹⁰⁾ to make the house look nice before the guests arrived. When Omar arrived, we turned off the lights and shouted, "Happy Birthday!" He was so **surprised**⁽¹¹⁾ and happy. We played games, took photos, and enjoyed the food together. At the end of the day, my grandmother said, "When a family works together, every **celebration**⁽¹²⁾ becomes **unforgettable**." ⁽¹³⁾

١. ابن العم
٢. مميز
٣. قائمة
٤. زينة
٥. عصير
٦. تزيين
٧. ملون
٨. لافتة
٩. لصق
١٠. تنظيف
١١. مندهش
١٢. احتفال
١٣. لا يمكن نسيانه

Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

Answer the following questions:

1. What did the family put on the wall during decoration?
2. Who prepared the sandwiches?
3. What did the writer and his sister help their father do?
4. Why did the family clean the house before the guests arrived?
5. What did the grandmother say at the end of the day?

5- She said, "When a family works together, every celebration becomes unforgettable."

4- They cleaned it to make the house look nice for the guests.

3- They helped him do the shopping at the supermarket.

2- The writer's aunt prepared the sandwiches.

1- They put up a big birthday banner.

Answers:



Speaking

Questions and answers about preparing for the birthdays or special occasions

أسئلة وأجوبة حول التحضير لأعياد الميلاد أو المناسبات الخاصة:

Student A

1. What does your family usually do to prepare for birthdays or special occasions?

ماذا يفعل أسرتك عادة للتحضير لأعياد الميلاد أو المناسبات الخاصة؟

2. Who makes the food in your family celebrations?

من يقوم بإعداد الطعام في احتفالات أسرتك؟

3. What games or activities do you enjoy during family occasions?

ما الألعاب أو الأنشطة التي تستمتع بها خلال مناسبات الأسرة؟

4. How can children help make the event better?

كيف يمكن للأطفال المساعدة لجعل الحدث أفضل؟

5. Do you enjoy your family celebrations? Why?

هل تستمتع بمناسبات أسرتك؟ ولماذا؟

Student B

My family usually cleans the house, decorates it with balloons and lights, and prepares a list of guests.

عادة ما تنظيف أسرتي المنزل، وتزينه بالبالونات والأنوار، وتعد قائمة بالضيوف.

Usually my mother and grandmother make the food, including cakes and traditional dishes.

عادة ما تقوم أمي وجدتي بإعداد الطعام، بما في ذلك الكعك والأطباق التقليدية.

I enjoy playing board games, dancing, and sometimes we organize small competitions for fun.

أستمتع بلعب ألعاب الطاولة، والرقص، وأحياناً ننظم مسابقات صغيرة للمتعة.

Children can help by setting the table, arranging decorations, or serving snacks to the guests.

يمكن للأطفال المساعدة عن طريق ترتيب الطاولة، وتنظيم الزينة، أو تقديم الوجبات الخفيفة للضيوف..

Yes, I enjoy them because we spend time together, eat delicious food, and have a lot of fun.

نعم، أستمتع بها لأننا نقضي وقتاً معاً، ونتناول طعاماً لذيذاً، ونستمتع كثيراً.

Exercises on Lesson 3
1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
Synonyms & Antonyms

- The antonym of "special" is
 a. unique b. unusual c. ordinary d. different
- The synonym of "surprised" is
 a. angry b. amazed c. bored d. tired
- The antonym of "shout" is
 a. whisper b. scream c. call d. cry out
- The synonym of "celebrate" is
 a. forget b. lose c. mark d. ignore

Prefixes & Suffixes

- We add the prefix to form the opposite of "happy".
 a. re b. un c. mis d. in
- We add the suffix to the verb "forget" to form an adjective.
 a. -er b. -able c. -ion d. -ful
- We can form a noun from the verb "teach" by adding the suffix
 a. -er b. -ion c. -ed d. -ful
- We add the suffix to the noun "color" to form an adjective.
 a. -ed b. -ion c. -ful d. -able
- To form an adjective from "use", we add the suffix
 a. -ion b. -ment c. -ful d. -er

Collocations & Guessing the meaning

- We made a before starting the preparations. SB
 a. test b. list c. collapse d. birth
- My sister helped me the living room with balloons. SB
 a. decorate b. destroy c. build d. hit
- We hung a big birthday on the wall. SB
 a. surprise b. meal c. exam d. banner
- Everyone worked together to do a quick SB
 a. meet-up b. clean-up c. get up d. give up

14. Omar was when we shouted "Happy Birthday".
 a. surprised b. sad c. bored d. exciting
15. Families come together to special moments.
 a. annoy b. destroy c. celebrate d. decorate
16. We had a special for my cousin's birthday.
 a. occasion b. shout c. juice d. surprise
17. All the enjoyed the party.
 a. guests b. members c. cake d. lights
18. The chocolate was delicious.
 a. celebration b. cake c. list d. banner
19. The made the room bright and cheerful.
 a. decorations b. snacks c. shout d. members
20. We drank orange with our snacks.
 a. juice b. cake c. list d. party
21. The children with joy when the game started.
 a. shouted b. slept c. cleaned-up d. decorated
22. The birthday lasted until evening.
 a. cake b. party c. snack d. list
23. We cut the chocolate after singing happy birthday.
 a. cake b. banner c. decorations d. juice
24. We put up bright around the room for the party.
 a. lights b. members c. snacks d. shout
25. My cousin came to my yesterday.
 a. birthday b. clean-up c. shout d. juice

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

list - clean up - surprised - birthday - task

Last week we had a special occasion, my brother's ① We prepared a ② of things we needed: balloons, a colorful banner, cake, and music. Everyone helped in the ③ before decorating the room. When he arrived, he was really ④ to see his friends waiting and his name on the big birthday banner. We enjoyed games, laughter, and photos, and the occasion became a special memory for all of us.

3 Complete the following dialog:

Mother and Nada are speaking about Nada's birthday.

Mother : Nada, your ① party is tomorrow. Have you started the preparations?

Nada : ② , I made a list of everything we need.

Mother : Good. Don't forget to ③ -up the living room.

Nada : I will, and I will also make a delicious ④

Mother : Happy birthday!

4 Write a text of NIENTY (90) words on:

SB

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Your father's birthday party. "

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

1. When is your father's birthday?
- 2- What will you do to celebrate this occasion?
- 3- What will your mother make?
- 4- Who will you invite ?
- 5- What will you do in the party?



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات

Vocabulary

homemade (adj)	صناعة منزلية	toppings (n)	إضافات
sure (n)	بالتأكيد	edge (n)	الحافة
salt (n)	ملح	recipe (n)	وصفة اكل
layer (n)	طبقة	oil (n)	زيت
olives (n)	زيتون	honey (n)	عسل نحل
until (prep.)	حتى	choice (n)	اختيار
mixture (n)	خليط	fork (n)	شوكة
pan (n)	اناء	oven (n)	الفرن
strawberries (n)	فراولة	fluffy (adj)	هش / ناعم
chef (n)	رئيس الطهاة	great (adj)	عظيم
instructions (n)	تعليمات	golden (adj)	ذهبي
scrambled	مخفوق / مخلوط / متشابك	taste (d)	يتذوق
bowl (n)	سلطانية	mix (v.ed)	يخلط
tablespoons (n)	ملاعق كبيرة	add (v.ed)	يضيف
heat (n)	الحرارة	pour (v.ed)	يصب
restaurant (n)	مطعم	bake (v.d)	يخبز
dough (n)	عجينة	rush (v.ed)	يسرع / يندفع
flour (n)	دقيق	stir (v. red)	يحرك
yeast (n)	خميرة		



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
thin (adj)	رقيق - نحيف	slim - skinny		thick - fat	سميك
fresh (adj)	طازج	new - recent		stale - old	بايت
smooth (adj)	ناعم	soft - silky		rough - coarse	خشن
rush (v)	يندفع	race - run		delay - wait	يؤجل
homemade (adj)	صناعة منزلية	home - cooked, hand - made, self - made		ready-made	جاهز

Expressions & Prepositions

What should I do	ماذا يجب ان افعل؟	Can I add	هل يمكن ان اضيف؟
I can't wait to	لا استطيع الانتظار	put on a pizza	يضع البيتزا في الفرن
ready for school	مستعد للمدرسة	start by mixing	ابدا بخلط
make pancakes at home	يصنع الكيك في البيت	turn over	يقلب

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ed	تحول الفعل الي صفة	scrambled
-ture	تحول الفعل الي اسم	mixture
-er	تحول الفعل الي اسم	layer
-en	تحول الاسم الي صفة	golden
-ing	تحول الاسم الي اسم اخر	toppings
-ion	تحول الفعل الي اسم	instruction

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
spread	ينشر	spread	spread
become	يصبح	became	become
put	يضع	put	put
break	يكسر	broke	broken

Reading

SB Page (49)

SB Page (49)

استمع إلى النص

Read the following dialog. Guess when we use the expressions in bold.

Boy : Mom, can we make pizza at home today?

Mom : **Sure!** First, we need **dough**⁽¹⁾, tomato sauce, and cheese.

Boy : **What should I do** first?

Mom : Mix the **flour**⁽²⁾, salt, and **yeast**⁽³⁾ to make the dough, then spread it.

Boy : **Can I** add the sauce and **toppings**⁽⁴⁾?

Mom : Yes, spread a thin **layer**⁽⁵⁾ of sauce and add any toppings you like.

Boy : **Great!** I'll put olives and cheese. What's next?

Mom : We bake it for 10-15 minutes until the **edges**⁽⁶⁾ turn golden .

Boy : **I can't wait to** taste it!

Mom : **Homemade**⁽⁷⁾ pizza is always the best.

١. عجينة
٢. دقيق
٣. خميرة
٤. اضافات
٥. طبقة
٦. الحواف
٧. صناعة منزلية



SB Page (49)

Basim : Mom, can we make pancakes at home today?

Mom : Of course, Basim! First, we need the **ingredients**⁽¹⁾ for the recipe.

Basim : Okay, what should I do now?

Mom : Start by mixing the flour, milk, and eggs. Make sure you mix **well**⁽²⁾ so the mixture becomes smooth.

Basim : I think it looks good.

Mom : After that, put some oil in a pan. Then **pour**⁽³⁾ it.

Basim : When do I turn it over?

Mom : You need to **flip**⁽⁴⁾ it after 1-2 minutes.

Basim : Can I add toppings at the end?

Mom : Yes, you can add chocolate, honey, or **fresh fruit**⁽⁵⁾.

Basim : I'll add strawberries-they're my favorite.

Mom : Great choice!

١. المكونات
٢. يخلط جيدا
٣. يصب
٤. يقلب
٥. فاكهة طازجة



Speaking

A dialog between a chef and Hind

Question

Hind: What are you cooking today?

ماذا تطبخ اليوم؟

Hind: What are the main ingredients?

ما هي المكونات الرئيسية؟

Hind: Why do people like this dish?

لماذا يحب الناس هذا الطبق؟

Hind: When did you learn to make it?

متى تعلمت صنعه؟

Hind: Who taught you this recipe?

من علمك هذه الوصفة؟

Answer

Chef: Today, I am cooking a delicious chicken curry.

اليوم أطبخ كاري دجاج لذيذ.

Chef: The main ingredients are chicken, onions, garlic, tomatoes, and spices.

المكونات الرئيسية هي الدجاج، البصل، الثوم، الطماطم، والتوابل.

Chef: People like it because it is tasty, spicy, and full of flavor.

يحب الناس هذا الطبق لأنه لذيذ، حار، ومليء بالنكهة.

Chef: I learned to make it when I was ten years old.

تعلمت صنعه عندما كنت في العاشرة من عمري.

Chef: My grandmother taught me this recipe.

جدتي علمتني هذه الوصفة.

Exercises on Vocabulary
1 Choose the correct answer:
Synonyms & Antonyms

- The synonym of "thin" is
 a. fat b. slim c. thick d. coarse
- The antonym of "fresh" is
 a. new b. recent c. stale d. soft
- The synonym of "smooth" is
 a. rough b. soft c. coarse d. thick
- The antonym of "rush" is
 a. run b. wait c. race d. dash
- The synonym of "homemade" is
 a. processed b. hand-made c. fast-food d. frozen

Prefixes and Suffixes

- To form the adjective of the verb "scramble," we add the suffix
 a. -r b. -d c. -en d. -ing
- To form a noun from the verb "mix," we add the suffix
 a. -er b. -tion c. -ture d. -ing
- To form a noun from the verb "lay," we add the suffix
 a. -er b. -ed c. -en d. -ion
- To form an adjective from the noun "gold," we add the suffix
 a. -ed b. -en c. -ful d. -ing
- To form a noun from the verb "top," we add the suffix
 a. -er b. -ion c. -ing d. -ture
- To form the adverb of the word "polite," we add the suffix
 a. -ly b. -ful c. -ous d. -ing

Collocations & Guessing the meaning

- A delicious cake is made at home.
 a. stored b. homemade c. fast-food d. frozen
- Always taste your food before serving to check the
 a. smell b. taste c. color d. shape

14. Follow the _____ carefully to make the dish perfect.
a. pan b. recipe c. dough d. toppings
15. Don't forget to put some _____ on the pizza.
a. olives b. stones c. dust d. balls
16. Bake the cake _____ it turns golden.
a. until b. after c. before d. because
17. The bread will be _____ when it is ready.
a. golden b. raw c. frozen d. black
18. Stir the _____ until smooth.
a. flour b. dough c. mixture d. oil
19. Use a big _____ to bake the cake.
a. pan b. plate c. bowl d. spoon
20. You can add different _____ on top of the pizza.
a. toppings b. flour c. mixtures d. edges
21. The cake tastes _____ and sweet.
a. bad b. great c. sour d. raw
22. The _____ prepared the meal for the restaurant.
a. chef b. oven c. bowl d. fork
23. Follow the _____ carefully to cook the dish correctly.
a. instructions b. heat c. rush d. tablespoons
24. Use a _____ to eat your salad.
a. fork b. bowl c. oven d. heat
25. Beat the eggs until they are _____.
a. scrambled b. fluffy c. golden d. heated
26. Add three _____ of sugar to the cake mixture.
a. tablespoons b. bowls c. forks d. ovens

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

chef - layer - homemade - face - mix

Yesterday, I visited a restaurant that serves ① _____ pizza. First, the ② _____ prepared the dough and began to ③ _____ flour, salt, and yeast carefully. Then, he asked me to add the cheese and other toppings. We spread each ④ _____ equally, and I was sure it would taste great.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Tasty food is not only delicious but also important for a healthy life. Many people enjoy cooking homemade meals because they are fresh and safe. A simple pizza can be made by preparing the dough with flour, salt, and yeast, then mixing the ingredients carefully. After baking, you can add toppings like cheese, vegetables, or meat. Restaurants also serve many tasty dishes, but homemade food is often healthier. Eating a layered cake or a warm loaf of bread can make everyone happy. I am always sure that meals made with care taste great.

A. Choose the correct answers:

- What is the main idea of the text?
 - Restaurants serve unhealthy food.
 - Homemade food is delicious and healthy.
 - Pizza is the most popular food in the world.
 - Cooking takes too much time.
- Which ingredients are used to make dough?
 - Cheese, sugar, and eggs
 - Flour, salt, and yeast
 - Meat, vegetables, and oil
 - Toppings, layer, and cake

B. Answer the following

- What makes homemade food different from restaurant food?

- What does the word "toppings" refer to in the text?

- Why is eating tasty food important according to the text?

4 Write a text of NIENTY (90) words on:

SB

[مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة]

"How to Make Pizza"



Writing Skills

Useful Language

1. How to describe a process:

كيف تصف عملية

➡ When you write about a process, explain the steps in clear order so your reader can follow easily.

عندما تكتب عن عملية، اشرح الخطوات بترتيب واضح حتى يتمكن القارئ من متابعتها بسهولة.

1. Use sequence words to show order: -First, Next. Then, After that, Finally

استخدم كلمات التتابع لإظهار الترتيب: أولاً، بعد ذلك، ثم، بعد ذلك، وأخيراً.

2. Use action verbs to describe what happens: mix, cut, roll, bake, add, wash, pour, cook

استخدم أفعال الحركة لوصف ما يحدث: اخلط، اقطع، افرد، اخبز، أضف، اغسل، صب، اطبخ

3. Use the imperative form of the verbs or the present simple tense.

استخدم صيغة الأمر للأفعال أو زمن المضارع البسيط.

4. Keep sentences short and clear. First, mix the ingredients. Then bake the pizza for 15 minutes.

اجعل الجمل قصيرة وواضحة: أولاً، اخلط المكونات. ثم اخبز البيتزا لمدة 15 دقيقة.

5. Useful phrases.

عبارات مفيدة:

❖ (You need...)

أنت بحاجة إلى

❖ (Make sure you...)

تأكد من

❖ (Don't forget to...)

لا تنس أن

❖ (Be careful when...)

كن حذراً عند

For example

Read the following text. "How to Make a Mixed Cheese Pizza"

Making a mixed cheese pizza is easy and fun.

- Making a mixed cheese pizza is easy and fun .

- اعداد بيتزا الجبن المختلط سهل وممتع.

- First, prepare the dough and let it rise for thirty minutes.

- أولاً، حضّر العجينة واتركها لتتخمر لمدة ثلاثين دقيقة.

- Next, roll it out in a round shape and spread tomato sauce on top.

- بعد ذلك، افردّها على شكل دائري ووزع صلصة الطماطم على الوجه.

- Then, add mozzarella, cheddar, and feta cheese to make it creamy and rich.

- ثم، أضف جبن الموتزاريلا، الشيدر، والفيتا لجعلها كريمية وغنية.

- After that, put a few spices for extra flavor.

- بعد ذلك، ضع بعض التوابل لإضافة نكهة إضافية.

- Finally, bake the pizza in a hot oven for fifteen minutes.

- أخيراً، اخبز البيتزا في فرن ساخن لمدة خمس عشرة دقيقة.

- Enjoy your tasty homemade pizza with your family!

- استمتع ببيتزا صناعة منزلية لذيذة مع عائلتك!

Review on Unit 9

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

sauce (n.)	صلصة	flour (n)	دقيق
tahini (n.)	طحينة	yeast (n)	خميرة
pickles (n.)	مخللات	toppings (n)	إضافات
activities (n.)	أنشطة	edge (n)	الحافة
spoonful (n.)	ملعقة ممتلئة	recipe (n)	وصفة اكل
occasion (n.)	مناسبة	oil (n)	زيت
birthday (n.)	عيد ميلاد	honey (n)	عسل نحل
banner (n.)	لافتة	choice (n)	اختيار
clean-up (n.)	تنظيف	fork (n)	شوكة
cousin (n.)	ابن / ابنة العم	oven (n)	الفرن
list (n.)	قائمة	fluffy (adj)	هش / ناعم
sure (n)	بالتأكيد	great (adj)	عظيم
salt (n)	ملح	golden (adj)	ذهبي
layer (n)	طبقة	chopped (adj.)	مقطع
olives (n)	زيتون	everyday (adj.)	يومي
until (prep.)	حتى	special (adj.)	مميز - خاص
mixture (n)	خليط	surprised (adj.)	مدهش
pan (n)	إناء	homemade (adj)	صناعة منزلية
strawberries (n)	فراولة	taste (d)	يتذوق
chef (n)	رئيس الطهاة	mix (v.ed)	يخلط
instructions (n)	تعليمات	add (v.ed)	يضيف
scrambled (adj)	مخفوق / مخلوط / متشابك	pour (v.ed)	يصب
bowl (n)	سلطانية	bake (v.d)	يخبز
tablespoons (n)	ملاعق كبيرة	rush (v.ed)	يسرع / يندفع
heat (n)	الحرارة	stir (v. red)	يحرك
restaurant (n)	مطعم	fold (v.ed.)	يطوي - يلف
dough (n)	عجينة		



Language

قواعد لغوية

أداة الملكية (s) - (s)

- تُستخدم لإظهار الانتماء أو الملكية.

- تستخدم مع:

1 ('s)

1 People

الأشخاص

Tom's sandwich	ساندويتش توم	Ahmed's bag	حقيبة أحمد
my teacher's car	سيارة معلمي	Lisa's book	كتاب ليزا
Sarah's mother	أم سارة		

2 Animals

الحيوانات

the dog's tail	ذيل الكلب	the rabbit's ears	أذنا الأرنب
my cat's food	طعام قطتي	the bird's nest	عش الطائر

3 Time

الزمن / الوقت

yesterday's homework	واجب الأمس	tomorrow's meeting	اجتماع الغد
today's lesson	درس اليوم	last week's exam	امتحان الأسبوع الماضي

4 Places

الأمكن (أحياناً)

London's museums	متاحف لندن	Egypt's pyramids	أهرامات مصر
America's president	رئيس أمريكا	Paris's streets	شوارع باريس

2 (s)

- إذا كان الاسم جمعاً ينتهي بـ s، نضع فقط ' بدون s إضافية:

The students' books.	كتب الطلاب.	The cats' toys are on the floor.	العباب القطط على الأرض.
The boys' clothes are clean.	ملابس الأولاد نظيفة.	The students' books are on the desk.	كتب الطلاب على المكتب.
The teachers' room is big.	غرفة المعلمين كبيرة.		

Quick rule: قاعدة سريعة

's مفرد Ali's bag

' جمع The boys' bag

ملحوظة: إذا كان الاسم جمع شاذ لا ينتهي بـ s نضيف له (s)

- men- women - children

- The children's room is tidy.

3 Possessive (of)

الملكية باستخدام "of"

- نستخدم لإظهار الملكية أو الانتماء للأشياء، الأفكار المجردة، أو العبارات الطويلة، خاصة عندما يكون من الصعب استخدام 's.

1 Things الأشياء

the door of the house	باب المنزل	the handle of the bag	مقبض الحقيبة
the color of the car	لون السيارة	the roof of the building	سقف المبنى

2 Abstract ideas الأفكار المجردة

the importance of education	أهمية التعليم	the value of honesty	قيمة الصدق
the beauty of nature	جمال الطبيعة	the power of love	قوة الحب

3 Long phrases العبارات الطويلة

the book of the student in my class	كتاب الطالب في صفي	the opinion of the people in the meeting	رأي الناس في الاجتماع
the homework of the students in the first grade	واجب طلاب الصف الأول		

Quick rule: قاعدة سريعة

الأشياء والأفكار المجردة أو العبارات الطويلة (نستخدم of)
الأشخاص والحيوانات (نستخدم 's- s')

Speaking

1 Your favorite sandwich.

- الساندوتش المفضل.

Question

- What's your favorite sandwich?
ما هو الساندوتش المفضل لديك؟
- What ingredients does it have?
ما المكونات الموجودة فيه؟
- Who usually makes it?
من عادة ما يحضره؟
- When do you eat it?
متى تأكله؟
- Why do you like it?
لماذا تحبه؟

Answer

- My favorite sandwich is
ساندوتشي المفضل
- It has
يحتوي على
- usually makes it for me.
عادة ما تصنعه لي
- I usually eat
عادة ما أتناوله
- I like it because it
أحبه لأنه

2

Questions and answers about preparing for the birthdays or special occasions

أسئلة وأجوبة حول التحضير لأعياد الميلاد أو المناسبات الخاصة:

Student A

1. What does your family usually do to prepare for birthdays or special occasions?

ماذا يفعل أسرتك عادة للتحضير لأعياد الميلاد أو المناسبات الخاصة؟

2. Who makes the food in your family celebrations?

من يقوم بإعداد الطعام في احتفالات أسرتك؟

3. What games or activities do you enjoy during family occasions?

ما الألعاب أو الأنشطة التي تستمتع بها خلال مناسبات الأسرة؟

4. How can children help make the event better?

كيف يمكن للأطفال المساعدة لجعل الحدث أفضل؟

5. Do you enjoy your family celebrations? Why?

هل تستمتع بمناسبات أسرتك؟ ولماذا؟

Student B

My family usually

أسرتي عادةً

Usually

عادةً

I enjoy

أستمتع بلعب

Children can help by

يمكن للأطفال المساعدة عن طريق

Yes, I

نعم،

3

A dialog between a chef and Hind

Question

Hind: What are you cooking today?

ماذا تطبخ اليوم؟

Hind: What are the main

ingredients? ما هي المكونات الرئيسية؟

Hind: Why do people like this dish?

لماذا يحب الناس هذا الطبق؟

Hind: When did you learn to make it?

متى تعلمت صنعه؟

Hind: Who taught you this recipe?

من علمك هذه الوصفة؟

Answer

Chef: Today, I am cooking

اليوم أطبخ

Chef: The main ingredients are

المكونات الرئيسية هي

Chef: People like it because

يحب الناس هذا الطبق لأنه

Chef: I learned to make it

تعلمت صنعه

Chef: taught me this

recipe. علمتني هذه الوصفة.

Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات إنشائية ورسائل بريد إلكتروني عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة

Lessons 1 & 2

My favorite food is pizza. I love it because it is tasty and easy to eat. I usually eat pizza with cheese, tomato sauce, and vegetables. Sometimes I add chicken or pepperoni for extra flavor. My mother usually makes homemade pizza, and I help her mix the dough and spread the toppings. I enjoy eating it with my family during lunch or dinner. Pizza is also fun because we can add different flavors and ingredients every time. I always feel happy when I eat pizza. It is definitely my favorite food!

Lesson 3

Last week, we celebrated my father's birthday at home. It was a special occasion, and everyone was excited. We cleaned and decorated the living room with balloons and lights. My mother made his favorite dishes, including a delicious cake. I helped by preparing snacks and arranging the table. My father was surprised when he saw the decorations and the gifts. We sang and played games together, and everyone laughed a lot. It was a fun and happy day. I felt proud to celebrate my father's birthday with all our family and friends.

Lessons 5 & 6

Making pizza is easy and fun. First, prepare the dough by mixing flour, yeast, water, and a little salt. Let it rise for thirty minutes. Next, roll out the dough into a round shape and spread tomato sauce on top. Then, add cheese, vegetables, or your favorite meat as toppings. You can also add a few spices for extra flavor. Finally, bake the pizza in a hot oven for 15 minutes until it is golden and delicious. Serve it hot and enjoy your homemade pizza with family or friends!

Al-Azhar Test

Last week, I attended my friend's birthday party. The living room was decorated with balloons and colorful lights. We played fun games and listened to music. My friend's mother made a delicious cake and snacks for everyone. At the end, we sang "Happy Birthday" and gave gifts, and everyone had a great time.

Test on Unit 9

My favorite food to make is pizza. I enjoy preparing it because it is fun and creative. First, I mix the dough and let it rise. Then, I spread tomato sauce and add cheese, vegetables, and sometimes chicken. I like to arrange the toppings carefully so it looks colorful. Baking it in the oven is exciting because the smell fills the kitchen. I usually make pizza for my family, and everyone enjoys eating it together. Making pizza makes me happy, and I love trying new ingredients to make it even tastier.

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Where did you go with your family?

2. What did you enjoy there?

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Two friends are speaking together.

Mona : Have you eaten pizza before ?

Farida : ①

Mona : ②?

Farida : I ate it in a famous restaurant.

Mona : Did you enjoy it?

Farida : ③

Mona : Thank you.

3 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. She always tries to eat foods to stay fit.

- a. healthy b. fried c. tasty d. traditional

2. The baker baked a fresh of bread.

- a. loaf b. plate c. spoonful d. falafel

3. The school uniforms are blue.

- a. boy's b. boys c. boy d. boys'

4. The rooms are upstairs.

- a. child's b. children c. children's d. child

4 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

- The cats's bed is soft. (.....)
- The student chairs are broken. (.....)
- My friends bags are in the class. (.....)
- The father's of the girls is kind. (.....)

C: Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

I'm Aya. I'm a student and this is a typical day for me. I go to school from Sunday to Thursday. On school days, I get up at half past six. I usually have breakfast with my family. My school is far away, so I never walk. It always takes a long time because the roads are busy. My school starts at 8:00 a.m. and finishes at 2:00 p.m. I have four lessons before the break and two lessons after it. The break is half an hour. During it, I usually talk with my friends, but sometimes I go to the library to read books. After school, I go home, have dinner, do my homework and watch TV with my brother. I usually go to bed at 9:00 p.m. I have a busy day.

A. Answer the following questions:

- What is the school day like?

.....

- How many lessons does Aya have a day?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

- Aya goes to school days a week.

a. four b. five c. six d. seven

- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the

a. school b. class c. break d. library

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences on:

"A birthday party"

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

.....

.....

.....

Test on Unit 9

A. Listening

1 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. You need three eggs to make scrambled eggs.

T	F
☐	☐
☐	☐

2. The eggs should be cooked on very high heat.

2 B: Listen again and complete the following questions:

3. First, break the eggs into a

4. Mix well with a

5. After about two minutes, the eggs become

B. Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We made a before starting the preparations.

- a. test b. list c. collapse d. birth

2. I like to eat salad with my sandwich.

- a. falafel b. healthy c. chop d. tasteful

3. We add "-r" to the word "bake" to form a (an)

- a. adjective b. noun c. verb d. adverb

4. The synonym of "carefully" is

- a. carelessly b. cautiously c. hastily d. wrongly

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

polite - decorated - surprised - unforgettable - special

Yesterday we celebrated a ① occasion, my mother's birthday. I made a list of all the things we needed for the party. We made a bright banner and ② the house with balloons. Everyone joined the clean-up after arranging the tables and chairs. When my mother entered the room, she was very ③ to see the decorations and all her friends waiting. It was a happy and ④ celebration.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Eating healthy food is very important for a strong body and mind. Fresh fruits, vegetables, and whole grains provide vitamins and energy. Many people like to prepare homemade meals because they are safe and nutritious. You can mix different ingredients to make salads, soups, or smoothies. Avoid too much salt or fried food, and choose baked or boiled dishes instead. Drinking water and natural juice is better than sugary drinks. Healthy food keeps us active and prevents illnesses. Everyone should try to eat balanced meals every day to feel great and stay fit.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- What is the main idea of the text
 a. Healthy food is boring.
 b. Eating healthy food is important for a strong body.
 c. Fried food is better than baked food. d. Juice is unhealthy.
- Which food should we avoid according to the text
 a. Fruits and vegetables b. Salads and soups
 c. Fried food and too much salt d. Baked dishes

B. Answer the following questions:

- Why do people prepare homemade meals?

- What does the word "mix" mean in the text?

- How does healthy food help us according to the text?

Story
5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. People ignored the strange sight on the road.	☐	☐
2. Dummling was puzzled but continued walking.	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

- What did Dummling do with the goose?

4. Why did people stare and laugh at Dummling and the children?

.....

C.Writing

6 Rewrite the sentences using the words between brackets:

1. The boys' school uniforms are blue. (of)

.....

2. The advice of my father is unforgettable. (My father.....)

.....

3. The cats' eyes are beautiful. (The eyes.....)

.....

4. The students' bags are heavy. (of)

.....

7 Complete the following dialog:

Mother and Yumna prepare for a birthday party.

Mother : Who are you inviting to the ①

Yumna : All my friends and family members, and I wrote their names in a

②

Mother : That's great. What about ③ and drinks?

Yumna : I will prepare juice, snacks, and a chocolate ④ for everyone.

8 Write a text of NIENTY (90) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"The food you like making "

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review (3)

Vocabulary



المفردات

the Grand Egyptian Museum	المتحف المصري الكبير	statues	تماثيل
unforgettable	لا تنسى	pharaohs	الفراعنة
experience	تجربة	treasures	كنوز
stunning	مدهش	Tutankhamun's tomb	مقبرة توت عنخ امون
displayed	المعرض	interactive screens	شاشات تفاعلية
artifacts	تحف	appreciate	يقدر/ يستحسن



Audioscript



SB Page (54)



Audio Script

SB Page (54)

استمع إلى النص



Las! weekend. I visited the **Grand Egyptian Museum**⁽¹⁾, and it was an unforgettable **experience**⁽²⁾. The building itself is modern and **stunning**⁽³⁾, with wide open spaces full of natural light. I saw **beautifully**⁽⁴⁾ displayed **artifacts**⁽⁵⁾, including statues of **pharaohs**⁽⁶⁾ and **treasures**⁽⁷⁾ from King **Tutankhamun's tomb**⁽⁸⁾. The interactive **screens**⁽⁹⁾ made history easy to understand. The visit helped me **appreciate**⁽¹⁰⁾ Egypt's rich past and made me want to **return**⁽¹¹⁾ soon.

١. المتحف المصري الكبير
٢. تجربة
٣. مدهش
٤. بشكل جميل
٥. تحف
٦. الفراعنة
٧. كنوز
٨. مقبرة توت عنخ امون
٩. شاشات تفاعلية
١٠. أقدر/ استحسن
١١. أعود

Lesson 1



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Last weekend, I visited the Grand Egyptian Museum, and it was a/an experience.
a. ordinary b. unforgettable c. boring d. confusing

2. The museum building is described as modern and
 a. crowded b. narrow c. stunning d. dark
3. I saw treasures from tomb.
 a. Ramses II's b. Cleopatra's
 c. King Tutankhamun's d. Akhenaten's
4. The interactive screens helped me the history.
 a. forget b. understand c. ignore d. rewrite

2 Complete the following dialog:

Aya : Hey Sara, did you hear? Mr. Kamal gave our class a warning today.

Sara : ① ?

Aya : Some students keep breaking the school rules.

Sara : ② ?

Aya : They always arrive late and don't keep the classroom clean.

Sara : ③

Aya : Plus, following rules shows responsibility. It prepares us for real life.

Sara : ④

3 Fill in the spaces with words from the box

caring - exchange - magnificent - artifact - celebrate

- The statue was a truly piece, attracting everyone's attention.
- We plan to our team's success this weekend.
- The museum displayed an ancient discovered in the desert.
- It was a friendly of ideas during the group discussion.
- Her attitude made everyone feel supported and valued.

4 Write a paragraph of (80–100) words about

"The importance of following rules in public places"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lesson 2

1 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Last Saturday, I had one of the funniest days ever with my friends. We went to the park to have a small picnic, but nothing went as planned. First, Ahmed slipped on the grass while carrying the juice, and it flew everywhere. We couldn't stop laughing. Then, we tried to take a group photo, but the camera kept falling over, so every picture looked silly. Later, we played volleyball, but the ball kept landing in the lake, and we had to rescue it each time. Even though everything went wrong, it made the day unforgettable. We spent the whole afternoon laughing, joking, and enjoying each other's company. It reminded me how fun and relaxing time with friends can be.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Ahmed slipped on the grass while carrying the
a. sandwiches b. juice c. camera d. ball
- The ball kept landing in the during the volleyball game.
a. lake b. sand c. tree d. playground

B. Answer the following questions:

- Why did the group find the day so funny and unforgettable?
.....

- What problems did they face while trying to take a group photo?
.....

- How did the friends feel by the end of the day, and why?
.....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- All students are encouraged to part in the school sports day activities.
a. take b. look c. give d. get
- The school held a special to honor the students' achievements.
a. celebration b. ceremony c. meeting d. festival
- The kids played football in the until it got dark.
a. hallway b. backyard c. kitchen d. rooftop
- In our group project, everyone had different to make the work easier.
a. goals b. rolls c. rules d. roles
- To apply for this job, you need the right skills and
a. qualifications b. hobbies c. friends d. clothes
- You finish your homework tonight. It's due tomorrow.
a. don't have to b. should c. must d. mustn't
- You talk during the exam. It's against the rules.
a. must b. should c. don't have to d. mustn't

8. You bring your own lunch, there's food at school.
 a. must b. mustn't c. don't have to d. should
9. That's Sara's bag, not
 a. me b. mine c. my d. I
10. This is my brother bike was stolen last week.
 a. His b. He's c. Whose d. Who's

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets to give the same meaning.

1. You are not allowed to use your phone during class. (mustn't)

2. It is a good idea to eat healthy food every day. (should)

3. This bag belongs to my sister. (my sister's)

The Story

4 A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why did the eldest and middle brothers fail in the forest?

2. How did Dummling help the old man?

3. What reward did Dummling receive for his kindness?

B. Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. Dummling was often laughed at but had a kind heart.	☐	☐
2. The middle son shared his food and drink with the old man.	☐	☐
3. Dummling found a goose with feathers made of pure gold.	☐	☐

5 Write a descriptive paragraph of about (80–100) words on

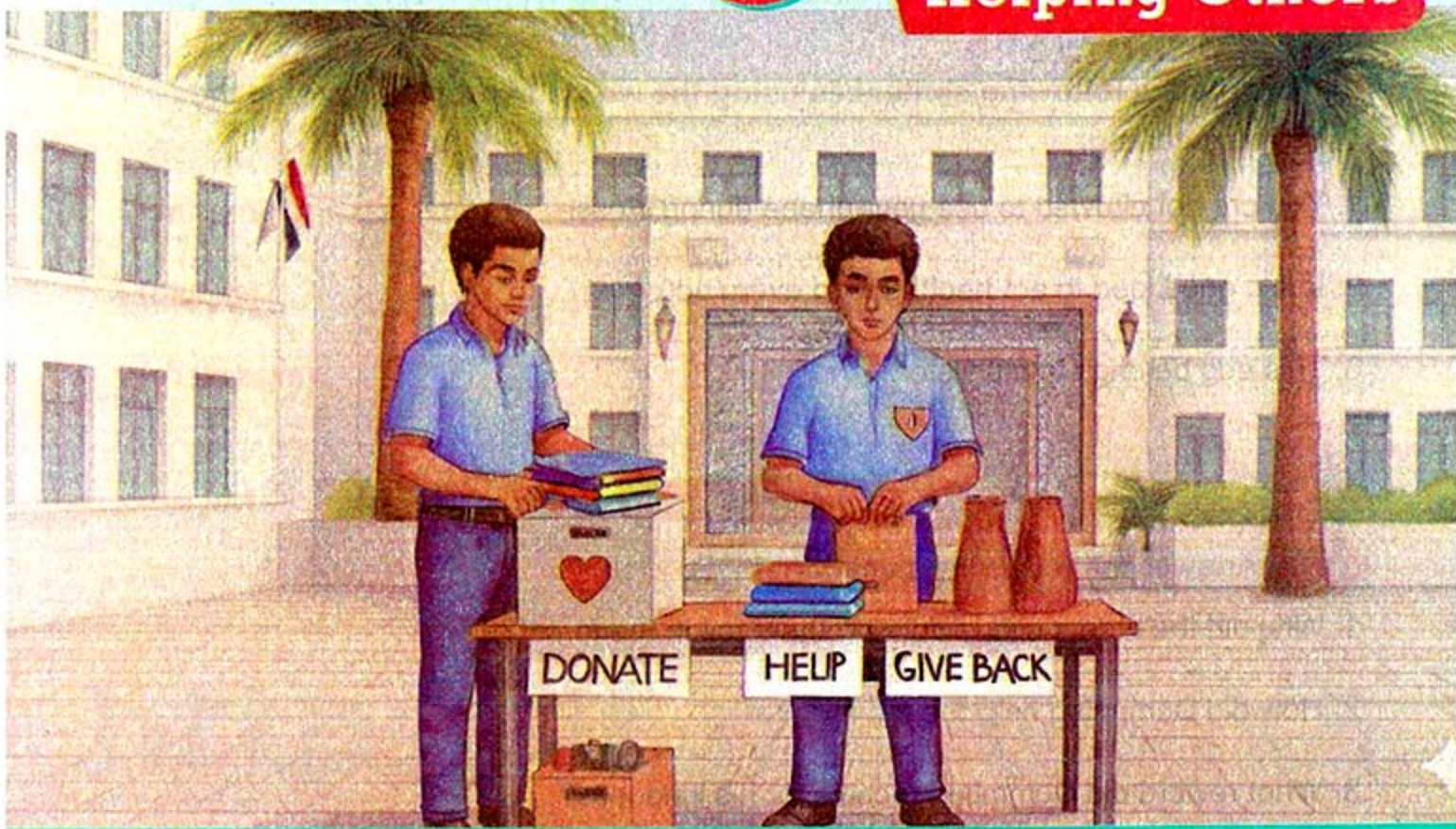
"Your favorite teacher"

.....

.....

.....

.....



Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

- Identify the main ideas and details in charity and volunteer stories.
- Recognize values of kindness, teamwork, and responsibility in texts.

Listening:

- Listen for specific details in short interviews about volunteer work.
- Identify who is speaking, where they are volunteering, and what they do.

Speaking:

- Role-play charity and volunteer stories.

Language:

- Use the future simple tense correctly.

Writing:

- Write a short text about a volunteer activity.
- Write simple, clear sentences with correct grammar and spelling.

• يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات بكتابة التسميع والواجب المنزلي



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

community (n)	مجتمع	warmly (adv)	بود / بحفاوة (ترحيباً حاراً)
kindness (n)	لطف/ عطف	attention (n)	اهتمام
meaningful (adj)	هادف/ له معنى	interview (n)	مقابلة
flyer (n)	منشور	volunteer (n/v) (ed)	متطوع/ يتطوع
neighborhood (n)	حي سكني	experience (n/ v) (d)	تجربة حياتية/ يجرب

المفردات الإضافية

Vocabulary

the elderly (n)	كبار السن	proudly (adv)	بفخر
visit (n)	زيارة	rewarding (adj)	مجز (معنوياً) / مكافئ
neighbor (n)	جار	local (adj)	محلي
effort (n)	جهد / مجهود	notice (v) (d)	يلاحظ
comfort (n)	راحة	create (v) (d)	ينشئ/ يصنع
happiness (n)	سعادة	greet (v) (ed)	يحيي
bench (n)	مقعد خشبي طويل	chat (v) (ted)	يحدث
cage (n)	قفص	realize (v) (ed)	يدرك
confidence (n)	ثقة	prove (v) (d)	يثبت
voluntary work (n)	عمل تطوعي	improve (v) (d)	يحسن
animal shelter (n)	مأوى حيوانات	invite (v) (d)	يدعو
responsibility (n)	مسؤولية	remind (v) (ed)	يذكر
teamwork (n)	عمل جماعي	plan (v) (ned)	يخطط
chosen (adj)	مختار	organize (v) (d)	ينظم
homemade (adj)	مصنوع منزلياً	explain (v) (ed)	يشرح
deeply (adv)	بشدة/ بقوة		

Definitions

neighborhood (n)	حي سكني	the area or place where people live near each other
flyers (n)	منشورات	small pieces of paper with information ⁽¹⁾ or announcements ⁽²⁾ that are given to many people.
warmly (adv)	بحرارة	in a kind and friendly ⁽³⁾ way.
meaningful (adj)	هادف	having a special or important purpose ⁽⁴⁾ ; full of value ⁽⁵⁾
attention (n)	اهتمام	giving your time and care to people.

١. معلومات
٢. إعلانات
٣. ودود
٤. هادف/ غرض
٥. قيمة

Expressions & Prepositions

in need	محتاج/بحاجة إلى	full of	مليء بـ
far away	بعيد جداً	show kindness	يظهر اللطف
think about	يفكر في	share experience	يشارك تجربة حياتية (خبرة)
discuss ... with	يناقش ... مع	collect trash	يجمع القمامة
knock on	يطرق على	build confidence	يبنى ثقة
give attention/ care	يعطي اهتماماً/رعاية	agree about	يتفق على
make a difference	يحدث فرقاً	reduce pollution	يقلل التلوث



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
meaningful	هادف	important		meaningless/ unimportant	بلا معنى / غير مهم
lonely	وحيد	isolated		sociable	اجتماعي
carefully	بعناية	cautiously		carelessly	باهمال
colorful	ملون	bright		dull/ colorless	باهت / عديم اللون
kind	لطيف	gentle		unkind/ cruel	قاسٍ / شرير
friendly	ودود	sociable		unfriendly	غير ودود

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ness	تحول الصفة إلى اسم	kindness/ happiness
-ful	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	meaningful/ colorful
-ly	تحول الصفة/الاسم إلى حال	lonely / carefully / warmly / deeply / simply
-hood	تحول الاسم الملموس إلى اسم مجرد / تشير إلى مجموعة	neighborhood
-ce	تحول الصفة إلى اسم	difference
-ment	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	announcement
un-	تعطى عكس المعنى	unkind/ unfriendly
-less	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	meaningless/ colorless/ careless
-ity	تحول الصفة إلى اسم	responsibility

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present

feel	يشعر
think	يفكر
choose	يختار
mean	يعني
give	يعطي
spend	يقضي

Past simple

felt
thought
chose
meant
gave
spent

Past Participle

felt
thought
chosen
meant
given
spent



Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 a fourteen-year-old student

• تستخدم الصيغة السابقة كصفة حيث نستخدم شرطة كفاصل بين الكلام.

Ex. He is a **fourteen-year-old student** = He is **fourteen years old**.

2 spend + V.ing

• يقضي (وقتاً)

Ex. They **spent** time **chatting**, **listening** to stories, and even **playing** board games.

3 neighbor / neighborhood

• neighbor

• جار

Ex. My **neighbor** is very friendly.

• neighborhood

• حي/منطقة سكنية

Ex. Ex. I live in a quiet **neighborhood**.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It was a to the park.

a. ten-minute walk

b. ten-minutes walk

c. ten- minute walks

d. ten minutes walks

2. I have a very kind, he always helps me with my shopping.

a. neighborhood

b. neighbor

c. neighborhoods

d. neighborly

3. I spend two hours English every day.

a. study

b. studies

c. studied

d. studying

Reading

SB Page (58)



استمع إلى النصوص

SB Page (58)

Last year, Amal, a fourteen-year-old student, wanted to do something **meaningful**⁽¹⁾ for her community. She **noticed**⁽²⁾ that many **elderly neighbors**⁽³⁾ often **felt lonely**⁽⁴⁾ because their families lived **far away**⁽⁵⁾. Amal thought carefully about how she could help. She discussed her idea with her parents and friends, and together they planned a "visiting day."



Amal created colorful **flyers**⁽⁶⁾ and shared them around the **neighborhood**⁽⁷⁾, inviting people to join. On the **chosen**⁽⁸⁾ day, she and her **classmates**⁽⁹⁾ brought flowers, small **homemade**⁽¹⁰⁾ cards, and fruit baskets. They **knocked on**⁽¹¹⁾ doors, **greeted**⁽¹²⁾ the elderly **warmly**⁽¹³⁾ and spent time **chatting**⁽¹⁴⁾ listening to stories, and even playing board games.

The neighbors were deeply touched. Some said it was the happiest day they had **experienced**⁽¹⁵⁾ for a long time. Amal realized that **kindness**⁽¹⁶⁾ does not always mean giving money or gifts. Sometimes, it simply means giving time, **attention**⁽¹⁷⁾ and **care**⁽¹⁸⁾. Her story reminds us that even a small **effort**⁽¹⁹⁾ can make a big **difference**⁽²⁰⁾ and bring **comfort**⁽²¹⁾ and **happiness**⁽²²⁾ to others.

١. هام / مفيد
٢. لاحظت
٣. جيران كبار السن
٤. يشعروا بالوحدة
٥. بعيد جداً
٦. منشورات
٧. حتى سكني
٨. مختار
٩. زملاء الدراسة
١٠. مصنوع منزلياً
١١. طرقوا على
١٢. حيّوا (القوا)
١٣. التحية
١٤. بحفاوة
١٥. يرددش
١٦. مروا به/ عاشوه
١٧. اللطف
١٨. اهتمام
١٩. عناية/ رعاية
٢٠. جهد
٢١. فرق/ اختلاف
٢٢. راحة
٢٣. سعادة


Audio Script SB Page (60)
Three Volunteer⁽¹⁾ Interviews⁽²⁾

Last week, three young volunteers shared their experiences. **Mona, 15**, helps at the **local⁽³⁾** library. "I **organize⁽⁴⁾** books and read stories to children," she said. "It makes me happy when they listen with big smiles."

Omar, 16, spends weekends cleaning the park. "We collect **trash⁽⁵⁾**, plant flowers, and paint **benches⁽⁶⁾**. The park looks beautiful, and families enjoy it more," he explained **proudly⁽⁷⁾**. **Lina, 14**, volunteers at an **animal shelter⁽⁸⁾**. "I **feed⁽⁹⁾** the dogs, walk them, and help keep their **cages⁽¹⁰⁾** clean. They get excited when they see us," she said.

Each volunteer agreed that helping others, whether people, places, or animals, is **rewarding⁽¹¹⁾**. They believe volunteering teaches **responsibility⁽¹²⁾** and **teamwork⁽¹³⁾**, and it also builds **confidence⁽¹⁴⁾**. Their stories **prove⁽¹⁵⁾** that small actions can **improve⁽¹⁶⁾** a whole **community⁽¹⁷⁾**.

١. مقابلات مع متوعين
٢. تجارهم
٣. محلي
٤. ينظم
٥. قمامة
٦. مقاعد
٧. بفخر
٨. مأوى حيوانات
٩. يطعم
١٠. أقفاص
١١. مجز (معنويًا)
١٢. مسؤولية
١٣. عمل جماعي
١٤. ثقة
١٥. يثبت
١٦. يحسن
١٧. مجتمع

Exercises on Vocabulary
1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
Definitions

1. _____ are small pieces of paper with information or announcements that are given to many people. SB
 a. Experiences b. Actions c. Flyers d. Responsibilities
2. The word "_____" means in a kind and friendly way. SB
 a. warmly b. deeply c. proudly d. simply
3. _____ is the area or place where people live near each other. SB
 a. Neighbor b. Neighborhood c. Childhood d. Comfort
4. "_____" means giving your time and care to people. SB
 a. Happiness b. Effort c. Kindness d. Announcement

Synonyms & Antonyms

5. The word "meaningful" is similar in meaning to _____.
 a. meaningless b. careless c. sociable d. important

6. Hossam is a friendly neighbor. "-----" is a synonym of friendly.
a. Unkind b. Cruel c. Sociable d. Unfriendly
7. Amal created colorful flyers. The antonym of "colorful" is -----.
a. bright b. gentle c. meaningful d. colorless
8. Don't feel lonely, join our group! "-----" is similar in meaning to lonely.
a. Isolated b. Sociable c. Friendly d. Kind
9. It is kind to help neighbors. The opposite of "kind" is -----.
a. cruel b. unkind c. both a & b d. friendly

Prefixes and Suffixes

10. To get the adverb from the adjective "deep", we add the suffix -----.
a. -al b. -ly c. -ive d. -ence
11. The suffix "-ence" changes the verb "differ" into a/an -----.
a. noun b. adjective c. adverb d. verb
12. To get the antonym of "friendly", add the prefix -----.
a. in- b. ir- c. dis- d. un-
13. The noun of "kind" is formed by adding the suffix -----.
a. -ment b. -ence c. -tion d. -ness
14. The suffix ----- changes the noun "care" into an adjective.
a. -ive b. -less c. -ly d. -able

Collocations & Guessing the meaning

15. He smiled ----- at the child. SB
a. lonely b. powerfully c. warmly d. difficultly
16. Lina volunteers at an animal ----- SB
a. neighborhood b. shelter c. school d. station
17. Omar helps improve the park by collecting ----- and planting flowers. SB
a. tickets b. toys c. trash d. kids
18. Students learned to give ----- to their elderly neighbors.
a. attention b. cages c. interviews d. difference
19. Volunteering teaches young children how to show -----.
a. interview b. purpose c. comfort d. responsibility
20. Doing something meaningful for your community is always -----.
a. rewarding b. unimportant c. meaningless d. unkind

21. Volunteering is a good way to confidence.
 a. lose b. build c. destroy d. harm
22. We did for our community by cleaning the park.
 a. difference b. attention c. purpose d. voluntary work
23. Small actions can a difference in people's lives.
 a. do b. make c. get d. give
24. The volunteers collect food and clothes for families need.
 a. at b. with c. on d. in
25. The supermarket is not far; it's just a ten-minute walk from our house.
 a. way b. a way c. away d. ways

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

board games - attention - chat - experiences - greet

My classmate, Seif, was new and felt very lonely. I thought about how to help. I decided to ① him warmly every morning. I invited him to play ② with our group at lunch. I gave ③ when he talked. Slowly, he became more friendly. We shared many good ④ My small actions helped build his confidence. We are now good friends.



Language

قواعد لغوية

The Future Simple Tense (will+ inf.)

المستقبل البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

1 Quick decisions: القرارات السريعة

Ex. I'm hungry. I **will make** a sandwich.
 - The phone is ringing. I **will answer** it.

2 Promises/ offers: الوعود والعروض

Ex. I **will help** you with your homework. (promise).
 - I **will carry** that bag for you. (offer).

3 Predictions: التوقعات

Ex. I think it **will rain** tomorrow.
 - I believe people **will live** on Mars one day.

Form التكوين

1 Affirmative: الإثبات

Subject الفاعل + will + inf. مصدر الفعل

Ex. I **will** study tonight.

- We **will** travel to Japan this summer.
- Hossam **will** play football after school.
- Salma **will** help her mother at home.

2 Negative: النفي

Subject الفاعل + will not (won't) + inf. مصدر الفعل

Ex. She **won't** come to school tomorrow.

- I **won't** watch TV before finishing my work.
- They **won't** play outside at night.
- The weather **won't** be cold tomorrow.

Question السؤال

1 Yes/ No questions: السؤال بمعنى هل

Will + subject الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل؟

Ex. **Will** you finish your work today?

- **Will** she help her sister?
- **Will** we visit our grandparents? - **Will** they come tomorrow?

2 Wh-questions: السؤال بأداة استفهام

Wh. word أداة استفهام + will + subject الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل؟

Ex. **When** will they start the lesson?

- **Why** will he study late tonight? - **How** will we solve the problem?
- **Where** will she go after school?

Time Expressions: الكلمات الدالة على الزمن

tomorrow	غداً	soon	قريباً
next (week - month - year)	(الأسبوع / الشهر / السنة) القادم	later	لاحقاً
in (an hour - two days a few minutes)	خلال (ساعة / يومين / دقائق قليلة)	in the future	في المستقبل
The day after tomorrow	بعد غدٍ	tonight	الليلة
I think / I believe	أعتقد	I promise	أعدك

ادرس التعبيرات والكلمات الآتية حيث أنها بدائل لـ **will**

الفعّل/الكلمة	Example	Will Sentences
Promise يعد	I promise to + inf. I promise to call you as soon as I arrive.	I will + inf I will call you as soon as I arrive.
Expect يتوقع	I expect them to win the match.	They will win the match.
Predict يتنبأ	I predict (My prediction is) another hot summer.	The summer will be hot.
Perhaps.....	Perhaps it rains tomorrow.	It will perhaps rain tomorrow.
in a moment	The match starts in a moment .	The match will start soon.

Notes

• نستخدم **will** في جملة جواب الشرط مع الحالة الأولى من **If** كما يلي:

مصدر الفعل + **will + inf.** الفاعل + **subject** , مضارع بسيط + الفاعل + **If + subject**

Ex. I will help you with your homework **if** you want.

- **If** the weather is nice, we **will go** to the beach.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Rewrite the sentences using the words between brackets:

1. My father promises to buy me a new bike. (will)
.....
2. I expect him to send me the details by email. (will)
.....
3. Perhaps it rains soon. (will)
.....

Exercises on Language

Rewrite the sentences using the words between brackets:

1. I promise to call you as soon as I arrive. (will)
.....
2. Perhaps Hani invites us to his birthday party. (will)
.....
3. I expect the weather to be fine tomorrow. (will)
.....

4. Scientists predict a change in the weather. (will)

5. The bus will arrive soon. (expect)

6. I promise to help you with your project tonight. (will)

7. I expect his arrival at 7 o'clock.  (will)

8. The lesson starts in a minute. (will)

9. I don't think it will be a difficult test. (I expect that... won't)

10. I promise to clean my room before Mum arrives. (will)

11. I expect the train to arrive in ten minutes. (will)

12. I think that life will be easier in the future. (I expect)

13. Do you expect him to pass the test? (Will he)

14. I will clean my room. (promise)

15. I will buy dinner tonight. (promise)

16. They will win the match. (expect)

17. It will rain this afternoon. (I predict)

18. I expect the meeting to start soon. (will)

19. She promised her teacher to do her best. (will)

20. My prediction is a win for the Egyptian team. (I predict that... will)

21. I don't think it will rain today. (I expect that... won't)

22. I expect that she will win the gold medal. (expect her to)

23. He will call you back. (I expect)

24. She will change her mind.

(predict)

25. They promise to arrive on time.

(will)

26. I will save money.

(promise)

27. I expect him to pass the test.

(will)



Speaking

Showing kindness to someone:

• اظهار اللطف مع شخص ما:

Question

1. Did you show kindness to someone?

هل اظهرت اللطف مع شخص ما؟

2. What did you do?

ماذا فعلت؟

3. How did you feel?

بما شعرت؟

4. What did you learn?

ماذا تعلمت؟

Answer

Yes. Once, I saw a new student sitting alone in the playground. She looked very lonely.

نعم. ذات مرة، رأيت طالبة جديدة تجلس وحيدة في الملعب. بدت عليها الوحدة الشديدة.

I helped her by introducing her to my friends, and we played together.

ساعدتها بتعريفها على أصدقائي، ولعبنا معًا.

I felt really happy because I saw her smiling for the first time.

شعرت بسعادة غامرة لأنني رأيتها تبتسم للمرة الأولى.

I learned that small acts of kindness can make a big difference in someone's life.

تعلمت أن أعمال اللطف الصغيرة قد تحدث فرقًا كبيرًا في حياة الإنسان.

General Exercises



on Lessons 1 & 2



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The word "....." means having a special or important purpose; full of value.

a. rewarding

b. meaningful

c. local

d. homemade

2. To is to talk in a friendly way.

a. organize

b. argue

c. notice

d. chat

3. The antonym of the word "kind" is formed by adding the prefix
 a. in- b. dis- c. ir- d. un-
4. To change the noun "neighbor" into another noun, we add the suffix
 a. -ment b. -ence c. -hood d. -ness
5. The garden is full of colorful flowers. The synonym of "colorful" is
 a. colorless b. sociable c. dull d. bright
6. Drive carefully in the rain. The antonym of "carefully" is
 a. proudly b. cautiously c. carelessly d. deeply
7. My sister decided to for helping older neighbors.
 a. volunteer b. experience c. interview d. notice
8. The neighbors welcomed the visitors
 a. locally b. warmly c. carelessly d. deeply
9. My grandparents lived in this neighborhood a long time.
 a. in b. at c. for d. with
10. Students talk about their at school.
 a. experiences b. baskets c. shelters d. difference

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

meaningful - difference - improve - flyers - collect

Our neighborhood is very important to us. Next week, we will organize a voluntary work day to make a ① We will ② trash and plant colorful flowers to reduce pollution. I will share around ③ to invite all the neighbors. We want to keep the park clean and beautiful. It will be a ④ day, and I am sure everyone will be proud of our community.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

1. My friend promised to lend me his camera. (will)

2. Perhaps it rains tomorrow. (will)

3. The team will lose. (predict)

4. The movie will be good. (expect)

5. Perhaps he is late because of the traffic. (will perhaps)

6. She promises to finish the project on time. (will)

7. I promise to buy you a present. (will)

8. I expect the train to be late today." (will)

9. She will send the email. (promises)

10. It will rain tomorrow. (predict)

11. She will water the plants. (promises)

12. We will have problems. (predict)

4 Complete the following dialog:

Ahmed is talking to Fatma about showing kindness.

Ahmed : Did you show kindness to someone before?

Fatma : Yes. ① _____, I saw an old man carrying heavy bags in the street.

Ahmed : What did you do?

Fatma : I ② _____ him by carrying the bags to his house.

Ahmed : How did you feel?

Fatma : I felt very ③ _____ because he thanked me warmly.

Ahmed : What did you ④ _____?

Fatma : I learned that helping others makes the world a better place.

5 Write a paragraph of 90 (NINETY) words on:

[مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة]

"Helping people"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

1. How can we help people in our community?
2. Why is helping people very important?
3. How can helping others affect volunteers?
4. What does helping others build?



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

huge (adj)	ضخم	alone (adj)	وحيد/بمفرده
effort (n)	جهد	powerful (adj)	قوي
patience (n)	صبر		

المفردات الرئيسية

Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

hope (n)	أمل	project (n)	مشروع
whole (adj)	كامل	daily (adj)	يومي
shopping bag (n)	حقيبة تسوق	useful (adj)	مفيد
respect (n)	احترام	change (v) (d)	يغير
action (n)	فعل	carry (v) (ied)	يحمل
free (adj)	مجاني		



Definitions

huge (adj)	ضخم	very big	١. قدرة
effort (n)	جهد	trying hard to do something	٢. سيطرة على
patience (n)	صبر	the ability ⁽¹⁾ to wait calmly	٣. أحداث
alone (adj)	وحيد	without other people	
powerful (adj)	مؤثر/قوي	having control ⁽²⁾ over people and events ⁽³⁾	

Expressions & Prepositions

cost money	يكلف مالاً	smile at	يبتسم لـ
in fact	في الواقع/ في الحقيقة	act of kindness	عمل من أعمال اللطف (عمل خيري)
part of	جزء من		

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ly	تحويل الصفة إلى ظرف	slowly / calmly
-ful	تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	powerful



Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد
huge	ضخم	giant/ enormous	tiny / small صغير
alone	وحيد	single/ lonely/ isolated	together/ sociable معاً/ اجتماعي
simple	بسيط	easy	hard/ difficult شاق/ صعب
sad	حزين	unhappy	happy / cheerful سعيد/ مبتهج
free	مجاني	unpaid/at no cost	costly / expensive غالي الثمن
difficult	صعب	hard	easy سهل
powerful	قوي/ مؤثر	strong /effective	powerless /weak / ineffective عاجز/ ضعيف/ غير مؤثر

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
mean	يعني	meant	meant
cost	يكلف	cost	cost
find	يجد	found	found
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
hear	يسمع	heard	heard

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 someone

• someone

• يأتي بعدها فعل مفرد ويعود عليها ضمير جمع

Ex. If **someone** needs help, we should help **them**.

2 by + V. ing

• بواسطة/ عن طريق

Ex. Another way to help is **by explaining** a lesson to a classmate who doesn't understand it.

3 would like to + inf.

• يود أن

Ex. I **would like to** help my neighbors clean the park.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Someone left umbrella here.
a. his b. her c. their d. its
2. We would like to our grandparents.
a. visits b. visiting c. visited d. visit
3. You can improve your English listening to stories.
a. in b. with c. for d. by



Reading



SB Page (62)



SB Page (62)

استمع إلى النصوص



Helping others does not always mean doing something **huge**⁽¹⁾ or giving a lot of money. **In fact**,⁽²⁾ helping can be very simple and part of everyday life. A small **action**,⁽³⁾ if it comes from the heart, can bring **happiness**⁽⁴⁾ and **hope**⁽⁵⁾ to another person. For example, you can **smile at**⁽⁶⁾ someone who looks sad. A smile is free, but it can change someone's whole day. You can also carry **shopping bags**⁽⁷⁾ for an older person who finds it difficult to walk. That small **effort**⁽⁸⁾ shows **respect**⁽⁹⁾ and **care**⁽¹⁰⁾. Another easy way to help is by explaining a lesson to a classmate who doesn't understand it. Your time and **patience**⁽¹¹⁾ can make learning easier for them. Helping can also mean listening. Sometimes a friend just needs someone to hear their problems. By giving attention, you show that they are not **alone**.⁽¹²⁾ When many people do small things like this, the world slowly becomes a better and kinder place. Big **projects**⁽¹³⁾ are important, but daily **acts of kindness**⁽¹⁴⁾ are **powerful**,⁽¹⁵⁾ too. Everyone, even children, can help. You do not need to wait until you are older or richer. Start with simple actions today, and you will make a real difference.



١. ضخم
٢. في الواقع
٣. فعل
٤. سعادة
٥. أمل
٦. يتسمر
٧. حقائب تسوق
٨. جهد
٩. احترام
١٠. عناية/رعاية
١١. الصبر
١٢. وحيد
١٣. مشاريع
١٤. أعمال اللطف
١٥. مؤثر/قوى

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

- The word "-----" means trying hard to do something.
a. hope b. patience c. effort d. project
- is the ability to wait calmly.
a. Respect b. Effort c. Patience d. Action
- "-----" means very big.
a. Alone b. Powerful c. Useful d. Huge

Synonyms & Antonyms

- The museum has free tickets today. The word ----- is an antonym of "free".
a. costly b. unpaid c. difficult d. sociable
- Learning a new language can be difficult. "-----" is similar in meaning to difficult.
a. Easy b. Simple c. Hard d. Powerful
- Sometimes I feel alone at home. The opposite of "alone" is -----.
a. single b. lonely c. sociable d. isolated

Suffixes and Prefixes

- To get the adjective from the word "power", we add the suffix -----.
a. -ive b. -al c. -ful d. -able
- The adverb of the word "slow" is formed by adding the suffix -----.
a. -ful b. -ed c. -ive d. -ly

Collocations & Guessing the meaning

- Children show ----- by listening carefully to adults.
a. hope b. respect c. kindness d. fact
- Helping others does not always ----- money.
a. change b. carry c. cost d. show
- A/An ----- team can solve problems easily together.
a. weak b. powerless c. ineffective d. powerful
- Maria seems quiet, but ----- fact, she talks a lot.
a. on b. in c. at d. with

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:
effort - in - act - free - at

A smile is a simple but powerful action. It is ① and does not cost any money. When you smile ② someone who feels alone or sad, it can change their day. This small ③ of kindness shows respect and gives hope. In fact, it is part of being a good person. It requires no ④, just a little patience to notice others.

General Exercises

on Lesson 3
1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب


A. Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. Laila and her friend carried the shopping bag.	☐	☐
2. Laila showed respect and kindness to the elderly woman.	☐	☐

B: Listen again and complete:

- Last, Laila saw an elderly woman carrying a heavy shopping bag.
- She ran to help and carried it for her
- Laila's action brought and happiness to the woman's day.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The word "....." means having control over people and events. SB
 - powerful
 - patience
 - effort
 - huge
- To get the adverb from the word "calm", we add the suffix
 - ive
 - al
 - ily
 - ly
- The word "huge" is similar in meaning to
 - very small
 - tiny
 - very big
 - very useful

4. The antonym of "simple" is
 a. hard b. easy c. difficult d. both a & c
5. Sharing kindness is part being a good neighbor.
 a. in b. at c. of d. by
6. Mr. Tamer showed while teaching the children.
 a. patience b. trash c. pollution d. flyers
7. Helping others is a way to make a difference.
 a. cruel b. bad c. huge d. difficult
8. I finished the project No one helped me. .
 a. happy b. sociable c. alone d. calm

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

whole - shopping bag - respect - kindness - daily

Helping does not need to be a huge project. In fact, simple ① acts are very important. You can smile at people or carry a ② for an old person. These things do not cost money, but they change the ③ day for someone. Every small effort is a great act of ④ that makes our world a better place.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Sara lives in a quiet neighborhood and loves voluntary work. Every day, she smiles at her neighbors and greets them warmly. She notices that some elderly people feel lonely, so she visits them and gives them attention and care. Sara brings homemade food and chats with them for a long time. This act of kindness brings happiness and comfort. It does not cost money, but it needs effort and patience. Through teamwork with other volunteers, she helps collect trash and keep the area clean. In fact, Sara believes that helping others is part of everyday life and creates hope in the whole community.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is about
 a. cooking food b. helping animals
 c. doing acts of kindness d. moving to another place

2. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to

- a. homemade food
- b. happiness
- c. act of kindness
- d. neighborhood

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does Sara do to help the elderly?

.....

4. What does the underlined word "lonely" mean?

.....

5. Why do you think helping others is important for the community?

.....

5 Write a paragraph of NIENTY (90) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"A small act of kindness you can do every day"

SB

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

1. What is the action?
2. Who would you help?
3. Why did you choose this action?
4. How can it make someone feel better?



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

charity (n)

جمعية خيرية

donate (v) (d)

يتبرع

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

hungry (adj)

جائع

fantastic (adj)

رائع

environment (n)

البيئة

plus (conj)

بالإضافة إلى

valued (adj)

مُقدَّر / ذو قيمة

care (v) (d)

يهتم / يراعى

village (n)

قرية

protect (v) (ed)

يحمي

worker (n)

عامل

matter (v) (ed)

يهم

chance (n)

فرصة

treat (v) (ed)

يعامل

Expressions & Prepositions

clean up

ينظف

learn new skills

يتعلم مهارات جديدة

think of

يفكر في

do (voluntary) work

يقوم بعمل (تطوعي)

proud of

فخور بـ

prepare... for

يجهز... لـ

at least

على الأقل

plan to

يخطط لـ

give a chance

يعطي فرصة

make flyers

يصنع منشورات



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
excellent	ممتاز	outstanding/ great		bad/ common	سيئ/ عادي
start	يبدأ	begin		finish/ end	ينتهي
proud	فخور	satisfied / pleased		ashamed	خجول
local	محلي	national		international	دولي/ عالمي
ready	جاهز/ مستعد	prepared		unready/ unprepared	غير جاهز/ غير مستعد

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ly	تحول الصفة إلى ظرف	usefully
-ment	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	environ ^{ment}

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present

meet

يقابل

Past simple

met

Past Participle

met



Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

It's important to + inf. مصدر

من المهم أن

Ex. It's important to help others..



Reading



SB Page (66)



SB Page (66)

استمع إلى النصوص



Teacher : Good morning, everyone! Can I ask you two questions to start? First, why do you think it's important to help others?

Maher : I think it makes people happy and shows we **care**.⁽¹⁾

Teacher : **That's a great point!**⁽²⁾ Second question: How can we help others?

Mariam : We can help by giving food to people who are hungry.

Omar : I like helping by explaining lessons for younger students in school.

Laila : I sometimes help by cleaning up my neighborhood or school.

Teacher : Wow, those are all **excellent**⁽³⁾ ideas! Can anyone think of something else?

Mariam : We can help by planting trees to **protect**⁽⁴⁾ the **environment**.⁽⁵⁾

Omar : Or by helping our parents at home, like cooking or cleaning.

Teacher : **Fantastic!**⁽⁶⁾ I'm really **proud of**⁽⁷⁾ all your ideas. Remember, helping doesn't have to be big - **even**⁽⁸⁾ small acts matter.

Laila : Yes! I'll try to do at least one kind thing every day.

١. نهتم
٢. هذه نقطة رائعة
٣. ممتاز
٤. يحمي
٥. البيئة
٦. مذهب/مدهش
٧. فخور ب
٨. على الأقل



SB Page (66)

Tamer : Hi Rami! Have you ever done any voluntary work?

Rami : Yes, I helped clean the local park last month. It felt really good.

Tamer : **Why do you think voluntary work is important?**

Rami : I think voluntary work is important because it helps the community and teaches us responsibility.

Tamer : **I agree, and it also builds our confidence and makes us feel happy.**

Rami : Exactly! Plus, it gives us a chance to meet new people and learn new skills.

Tamer : **Do you think these actions can make a difference?**

Rami : Yes, and even small actions, like helping an elderly neighbor, can make a big difference.

Tamer : That is true; every small acts matter.



SB Page (68)

My plans to Help My Community Next Summer

Next summer holiday, I will spend my time **usefully**⁽¹⁾ I will help my neighbors and the local community. I will clean the park and plant trees with other volunteers. I will make flyers to invite people to join our activities. I **hope**⁽²⁾ my small effort will make a huge difference.

Doing this work will bring happiness to me and others. I will **treat**⁽³⁾ everyone with kindness and help everyone feel **valued**⁽⁴⁾



١. بشكل مفيد
٢. يأمل
٣. يعامل
٤. ذو قيمة



SB Page (69)

Bassem's Plans to Help his Grandfather

Bassem lives in a city, but next weekend he will visit his grandfather's farm in a village near Benha called Marsafa. He will help his grandfather plant vegetables and feed the animals. He knows it will need effort and patience, but he is ready. Bassem will clean the farm and prepare food for the workers. He also plans to **donate**⁽¹⁾ clothes and food to a local **charity**⁽²⁾ He wants to make a huge difference in the village and show his kindness to everyone.

١. يتبرع
٢. جمعية خيرية

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Synonyms & Antonyms

1. She did an excellent job at school. The synonym of "excellent" is
a. bad b. common c. usual d. great
2. Fares feels proud of his hard work. "....." is the opposite of "proud".
a. Ashamed b. Satisfied c. Pleased d. Cheerful
3. My friends clean the local park every week. "....." is similar in meaning to "local".
a. International b. Regional c. Social d. Useful

Suffixes & Prefixes

4. To get the noun from the word "environ", we add the suffix
a. -ence b. -ment c. -ness d. -tion
5. The antonym of "ready" is formed by adding the prefix
a. un- b. ir- c. dis- d. in-

Collocations & Guessing the meaning

6. The helps poor families in our neighborhood.
a. charity b. environment c. community d. patience
7. I clothes to people in need today.
a. treat b. matter c. protect d. donate
8. Children the environment when they plant trees.
a. learn b. protect c. prepare d. treat
9. Many students voluntary work after school hours.
a. do b. make c. have d. give
10. Parents should a chance for children to speak.
a. plan b. prepare c. give d. treat

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

make - matters - clean up - do - charity

It's important to help others. Students at our school plan to do voluntary work with a ① They donate food to hungry people and ② the village. The students ③ flyers and give everyone a chance to help. They care about the environment and protect animals. The students feel proud of their work because it ④ and helps many people.

Speaking

Helping in your Local Community :

• المساعدة في مجتمعك المحلي :

Question

1. Hi! Have you ever helped in our local community?

مرحباً! هل سبق لك أن ساعدت في خدمة مجتمعنا المحلي؟

2. That sounds fun! I think cleaning the streets makes our city look beautiful.

يبدو هذا ممتعاً! أعتقد أن تنظيف الشوارع يُضفي جمالاً على مدينتنا.

3. That's true. I am planning to plant some trees in the park next Saturday.

هذا صحيح. أخطط لزراعة بعض الأشجار في الحديقة يوم السبت القادم.

4. I agree. Helping our community makes us feel proud and happy.

أوافقك الرأي. خدمة مجتمعنا تُشعرنا بالفخر والسعادة

Answer

Yes, last week I helped clean the playground near our school.

نعم، ساعدت الأسبوع الماضي في تنظيف الملعب القريب من مدرستنا.

Exactly! When we work together, we can make a big difference.

صحيح تماماً! عندما نعمل معاً، يُمكننا إحداث فرق كبير.

Me too! I want to help with that. It's a great way to help the environment. وأنا أيضاً! أريد المساعدة في ذلك. إنها طريقة رائعة للمساهمة في حماية البيئة.

That's true.

هذا صحيح.

Giving opinions:

إبداء الرأي :

I think	أعتقد أن
In my opinion,	في رأيي
I believe	أؤمن أن
I feel that	أشعر أن
From my point of view	من وجهة نظري

Ex. I think helping others is important.

Ex. In my opinion, teamwork is very useful.

Ex. I feel that voluntary work is rewarding.

Responding to opinions:

تعابير تستخدم عند الرد

١- عند الإعجاب أو الموافقة:

That's a great point!	هذه نقطة رائعة
Fantastic!	مذهل
Exactly!	بالضبط
That sounds fun	يبدو ممتعاً
Wow!	رائع
That's true!	هذا صحيح
I agree	أوافق
Me too!	وأنا أيضاً

٢- عند عدم الموافقة:

I don't agree.	لا أوافق
I don't think so.	لا أعتقد ذلك
I'm not sure.	لست متأكداً

General Exercises



on Lessons 5&6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- To _____ is to give money, food, or clothes to help a person or a charity.
a. treat b. care c. donate d. matter
- I am ready to help. The antonym of "ready" is _____.
a. prepared b. unready c. valued d. satisfied
- The adverb of the word "useful" is formed by adding the suffix _____.
a. -al b. -ly c. -ive d. -ful
- Our _____ helps poor people in the small village.
a. charity b. environment c. interview d. patience
- It is time to start our work. "_____" is similar in meaning to "start".
a. End b. Finish c. Begin d. Stop
- We need _____ least five people to clean the park.
a. in b. for c. on d. at

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

valued - for - local - with - environment

Waleed lives in a small village. He wanted to help, so he joined a ① _____ charity. He decided to do voluntary work to protect the ② _____. First, he helped clean up the park. Then, he helped prepare food ③ _____ hungry people. Waleed is proud of his work. He knows that helping others makes them feel ④ _____ and happy.

3 Complete the following dialog

Eyad and Rován discuss the importance of helping others.

Eyad : Why do you think we should join a charity?

Rován : I ① _____ it is important to help poor people.

Eyad : ② _____ can we help protect the environment?

Rován : In my opinion, we can start by cleaning up the park.

Eyad : Are you ③ _____ to make flyers for our new project?

Rován : Yes, of course. That is an excellent way to tell our friends.

Eyad : Do you believe that small acts really matter?

Rován : Yes, that's ④ _____! Even small things make people feel valued.

4 Write an email of about **NINETY (90)** words to your friend Fares to tell him about the voluntary work you will do next summer:

(محباب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

Your name is Omar and your email address is omar2012@gmail.com
and your friend's email address is fares2014@gmail.com.

[illegible]

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

1. Who will you help?
2. What activities will you do?
3. How will your actions help your community?
4. How will your efforts make you feel?

Review on Unit 10

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

community (n)	مجتمع	warmly (adv)	بود / بحفاوة (ترحيبا حارا)
kindness (n)	لطف / عطف	attention (n)	اهتمام
meaningful (adj)	هادف / له معنى	interview (n)	مقابلة
flyer (n)	منشور	volunteer (n/v) (ed)	متطوع / يتطوع
neighborhood (n)	حي سكني	experience (n/ v) (d)	تجربة حياتية / يجرب
huge (adj)	ضخم	alone (adj)	وحيد
effort (n)	جهد	powerful (adj)	قوي / بمفرده
patience (n)	صبر	donate (v) (d)	يتبرع
charity (n)	جمعية خيرية		



Language

قواعد لغوية

The Future Simple Tense (will+ inf.)

المستقبل البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

1 Quick decisions: القرارات السريعة

Ex. I'm hungry. I **will make** a sandwich.

2 Promises/ offers: الوعود والعروض

Ex. I **will help** you with your homework. (promise).

3 Predictions: التوقعات

Ex. I think it **will rain** tomorrow.

- I believe people **will live** on Mars one day.

Form التكوين

1 Affirmative: الإثبات

مصدر الفعل + **will + inf.** + الفاعل **Subject**

Ex. I **will study** tonight.

- Hossam **will play** football after school.

2 Negative: النفي

Subject الفاعل + **will not (won't)** + **inf.** مصدر الفعل

Ex. She **won't** come to school tomorrow.

- I **won't** watch TV before finishing my work.

Question السؤال

1 Yes/ No questions: السؤال بمعنى هل

Will + subject الفاعل + **inf.** مصدر الفعل?

Ex. Will you **finish** your work today?

- Will she **help** her sister?

2 Wh-questions: السؤال بأداة استفهام

Wh. word أداة استفهام + **will + subject** الفاعل + **inf.** مصدر الفعل ?

Ex. When will they **start** the lesson?

- How will we **solve** the problem?

Time Expressions: الكلمات الدالة على الزمن

tomorrow	غداً	soon	قريباً
next (week - month - year)	(الأسبوع / الشهر / السنة) القادم	later	لاحقاً
in(an hour - two days a few minutes)	خلال (ساعة / يومين / دقائق قليلة)	in the future	في المستقبل
The day after tomorrow	بعد غدٍ	tonight	الليلة
I think / I believe	أعتقد	I promise	أعدك

- ادرس التعبيرات والكلمات الآتية حيث أنها بدائل لـ **will**

الفاعل/الكلمة	Example	Will Sentences
Promise يعد	I promise to + inf. I promise to call you as soon as I arrive.	I will + inf I will call you as soon as I arrive.
Expect يتوقع	I expect them to win the match.	They will win the match.
Predict يتنبأ	I predict (My prediction is) another hot summer.	The summer will be hot.
Perhaps.....	Perhaps it rains tomorrow.	It will perhaps rain tomorrow.
in a moment	The match starts in a moment .	The match will start soon.

Speaking

Helping in your Local Community :

المساعدة في مجتمعك المحلي :

Question

1. Hi! Have you ever helped in our local community?

مرحباً! هل سبق لك أن ساعدت في خدمة مجتمعنا المحلي؟

2. That sounds fun! I think cleaning the streets makes our city look beautiful.

يبدو هذا ممتعاً! أعتقد أن تنظيف الشوارع يُضفي جمالاً على مدينتنا.

3. That's true. I am planning to plant some trees in the park next Saturday.

هذا صحيح. أخطط لزراعة بعض الأشجار في الحديقة يوم السبت القادم.

4. I agree. Helping our community makes us feel proud and happy.

أوافقك الرأي. خدمة مجتمعنا تُشعرنا بالفخر والسعادة

Answer

Yes, last week I helped clean the playground near our school.

نعم، ساعدت الأسبوع الماضي في تنظيف الملعب القريب من مدرستنا.

Exactly! When we work together, we can make a big difference.

صحيح تماماً! عندما نعمل معاً، يمكننا إحداث فرق كبير.

Me too! I want to help with that. It's a great way to help the environment.

وأنا أيضاً! أريد المساعدة في ذلك. إنها طريقة رائعة للمساهمة في حماية البيئة.

That's true.

هذا صحيح.

Giving opinions:

إبداء الرأي :

I think	أعتقد أن
In my opinion,	في رأيي
I believe	أؤمن أن
I feel that	أشعر أن
From my point of view	من وجهة نظري

Ex. I think helping others is important.

Ex. In my opinion, teamwork is very useful.

Ex. I feel that voluntary work is rewarding.

Responding to opinions:

تعبيرات تستخدم عند الرد

١- عند الإعجاب أو الموافقة:

That's a great point!	هذه نقطة رائعة
Fantastic!	مذهل
Exactly!	بالضبط
That sounds fun	يبدو ممتعاً
Wow!	رائع
That's true!	هذا صحيح
I agree	أوافق
Me too!	وأنا أيضاً

٢- عند عدم الموافقة:

I don't agree.	لا أوافق
I don't think so.	لا أعتقد ذلك
I'm not sure.	لست متأكداً

Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات إنشائية ورسائل بريد إلكتروني عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة

Lessons 1 & 2

Helping people is very important in our community. Many people volunteer to help those in need. They visit the elderly, give attention and care, and show kindness. Helping people makes life more meaningful and rewarding. Neighbors work together as a team to clean the neighborhood and reduce pollution. They share flyers to invite other to join voluntary work. People greet helpers warmly. Helping others builds confidence and show responsibility. When we help people, we make a real difference and create a better place for everyone.

Lesson 3

A small act of kindness I can do every day is smiling at people and speaking kindly. I can smile at my classmates, teachers, and neighbors. I chose this action because it is very simple and does not cost money. A smile can make people feel happy and calm. It can help someone who feels sad or alone. In fact, this small action can bring hope and comfort. Smiling and using kind words are part of everyday life and help make a real difference.

Lessons 5 & 6


New Message

To : fares2014@gmail.com
 Cc Bcc

From : omar2012@gmail.com

Subject : My Voluntary Work Next Summer

Hi Fares,

I hope you are well. Next summer, I will spend my holiday helping my community. I will clean the park and plant trees. I will also help on my grandfather's farm in the village. I will plant vegetables and feed the animals. I will prepare food for the workers, and donate clothes and food to a local charity. I hope my small effort will make a big difference. Doing this work will make me feel proud and happy.

See you soon,

Omar

Send
🔗
📎
📷
🔍
😊
🗑️

Al-Azhar Test

Helping in my local community is very important. I can volunteer to clean the park or visit the elderly. Small actions, like giving attention or sharing food, make people happy. Helping others also makes me feel proud.

Test on Unit 10

We can make our neighbors happy by being kind and friendly. We should greet them warmly with a smile. We should help them with small things, like carrying bags or watering plants. We can share homemade food or gifts to make them feel good. We should listen to them and give them attention. We can organize small activities or do voluntary work together. These small acts of kindness do not cost money. They make people feel happy and valued. These simple actions also help to build confidence and improve our whole community. They prove that anyone can make a difference through a little effort and love.

Al Azhar Test

A. Listening

1 Answer the following questions:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. When will Omar learn new skills?

2. How will Omar feel after doing this work?

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Sara and Omar are planning to help others this weekend.

Sara : Hi Omar! I think helping others is very important.

Omar : ①! Volunteering at a local charity is rewarding.

Sara : ②?

Omar : We can clean up the park and make flyers to invite people.

Sara : That sounds fun! I will plan to help this weekend.

Omar : Great! ③

Sara : That's ture. We will feel proud.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My father gave me a look that showed he really cared.

a. huge b. meaningful c. small d. tall

2. I sat on the beach watching the sunset.

a. powerful b. valued c. alone d. warm

3. They their grandparents next weekend.

a. visit b. will visit c. have visited d. visited

4. Celin travel to Alexandria this summer, she will travel to Hurghada.

a. will b. won't c. hasn't d. isn't

4 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. I bought a gift for my friend's next birthday party.

SB (.....)

2. I won't being lonely in the future.

(.....)

3. Will Waleed makes flyers for the village meeting?

(.....)

4. Do you show kindness to your neighbor tomorrow?

(.....)

C: Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

Last weekend, Renad joined a charity project in our village. She donated food and helped prepare meals for people in need. She also learned new skills by organizing the workers and making flyers to invite more volunteers. In fact, voluntary work is not only useful for others but also builds confidence and happiness. She realized that even small actions, like smiling at someone or giving attention, can make a big difference. She feels proud of her effort.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What did Renad do in the charity project last weekend?

.....

2. Why does Renad feel proud of her effort?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Renad made to invite more volunteers.

a. posters

b. flyers

c. videos

d. invitations

4. Voluntary work helps build

a. confidence and happiness

b. confidence and sadness

c. patience and happiness

d. patience and sadness

6 Write a paragraph of four sentences about:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Helping in your local community"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test on Unit 10

A. Listening

1 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Mazen used difficult examples to help Ahmed.	☐	☐
2. Ahmed felt sad because his friend helped him.	☐	☐

B: Listen again and complete:

- Ahmed was because he didn't understand the math lesson.
- Mazen felt that helping others is
- This small act of made both friends happy.

B. Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We need to make a great to reach our goals. SB
 a. smile b. value c. power d. effort
- are small pieces of paper with information or announcements that are given to many people. SB
 a. Flyers b. Skills c. Values d. Actions
- Helping others is meaningful. The word "meaningful" is similar in meaning to
 a. meaningless b. unimportant c. important d. useless
- Planting many trees will a difference to the environment.
 a. do b. get c. make d. give

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

efforts - experience - volunteer - warmly - donate

Omar is a fourteen-year-old student. One day, he saw a flyer for voluntary work at an animal shelter. He decided to ① At the shelter, Omar felt happy. He helped feed the animals and clean up. He spent time playing with a lonely dog. The workers greeted him ② This ③ was meaningful for Omar. He learned that small ④ can make a big difference.

4 Read the following text then answer the questions:

Our neighborhood had an old park which is dirty and has no flowers or trees. My friends and I thought about how to improve it. We had a discussion with a local gardener and planned to create a small garden. We asked for help by putting up colorful flyers. Many neighbors, young and old, volunteered. We worked together every weekend, planting trees, flowers, and vegetables. It required patience and effort, but it was fun. Now, our park is full of life. It brings happiness to the whole community and proves that teamwork makes powerful changes.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The passage is mainly about
 a. playing games in the park
 b. cleaning a school garden
 c. improving an old park
 d. visiting a local gardener
- The word "volunteer" means
 a. ask for help
 b. help for free
 c. do nothing
 d. paid for helping someone

B. Answer the following questions:

- How did the students and neighbors improve the old park?

- What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?

- What might happen if the neighbors did not work together?

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

		T	F
1. The villagers were angry when they saw Dummling's parade.	SB	☐	☐
2. The schoolmaster was able to free the boys.	SB	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

- Why did more people begin to follow Dummling?
 SB

- If you were one of the villagers, what would you have thought or done when you saw the parade?
 SB

C.Writing

6 Rewrite the sentences using the words between brackets:

1. They promise not to make any noise. (won't)

2. I hope that my father gets well soon. (will)

3. They will cancel the trip. (predict)

4. I expect him to apologize. (will)

7 Complete the following dialog:

SB

Lina and Omar are talking about how to help people.

Lina : I think it's important to help other people when we can.

Omar : I ① -----

Lina : ② ----- you help people in your neighborhood?

Omar : Yes. Yesterday I helped my neighbor with her groceries.

Lina : That's nice! I usually help my little brother with his homework.

Omar : That's great. Helping others is ③ -----

Lina : ④ ----- does helping others make you feel?

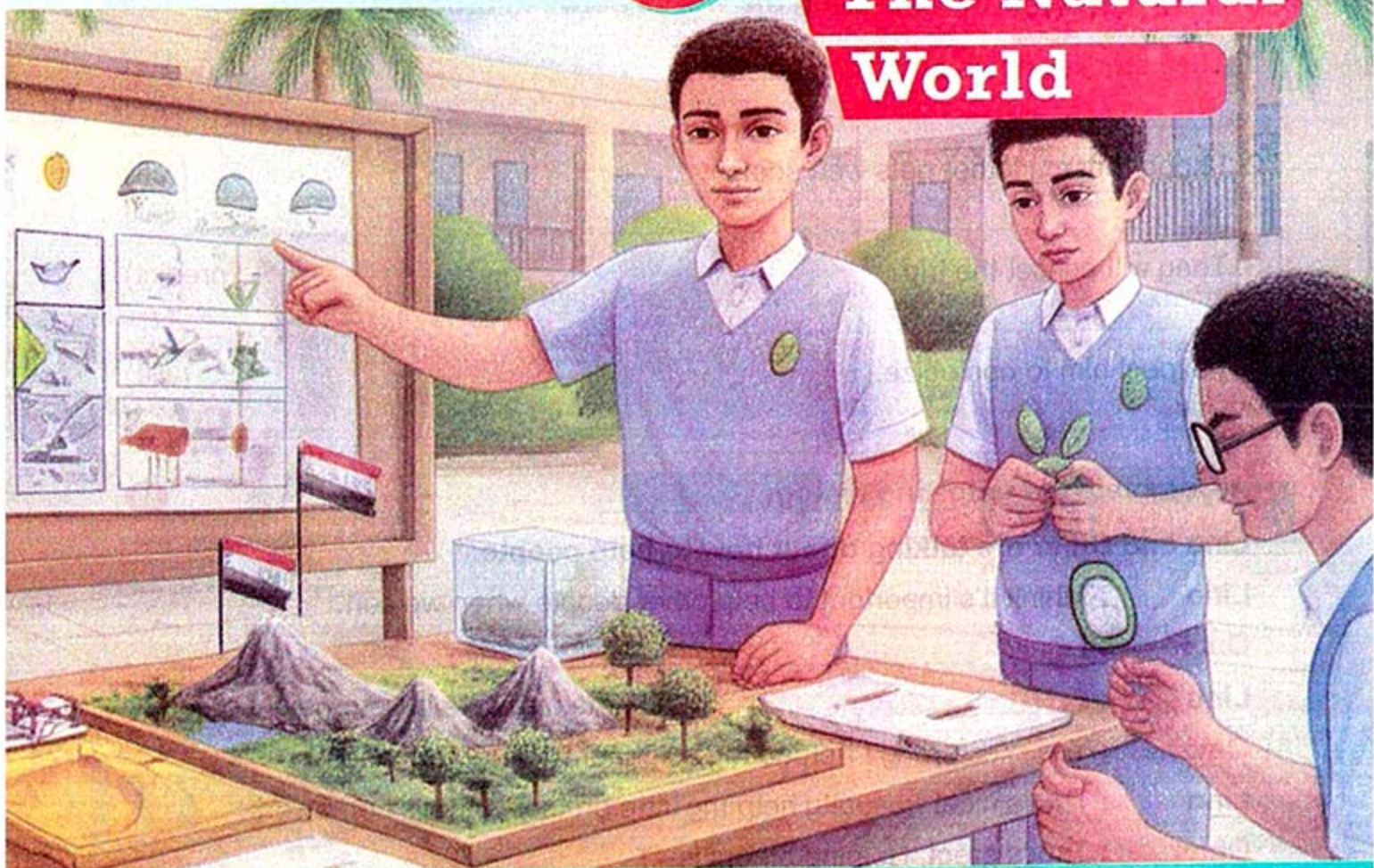
Omar : Helping others makes me feel happy.

8 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words about:

[مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة]

"How to make our neighbors happy"

The Natural World



Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

- Identify the main ideas and key details in short texts about natural wonders and wildlife

Listening:

- Listen for general meaning and specific details in short reports and weather forecasts

Speaking:

- Describe natural places, weather conditions, and animals using simple sentences
- Share personal opinions and short stories

Language:

- Comparatives and Superlatives

Writing:

- Write a short descriptive paragraph about nature and weather
- Use adjectives and linking words to organize ideas clearly and logically

• يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات بكتابة التسميع والواجب المنزلي



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

landmarks (n)	معالم / علامات بارزة	flat (adj)	مسطح
Victoria Falls (n)	شلالات فيكتوريا	towering (adj)	شاهق / مرتفع جدًا
mist (n)	ضباب / رذاذ	rise (v) (rose / risen)	يرتفع / يعلو
species (n)	نوع / فصيلة		

المفردات الإضافية

Vocabulary

wonders (n)	عجائب / روائع	sunscreen (n)	كريم واقٍ من الشمس
waterfalls (n)	شلالات	natural (adj)	طبيعي
sights (n)	مناظر	thunderous (adj)	مدو / رعدى
roar (n)	هدير / صوت دوي / صخب	endless (adj)	لا نهاية له / متواصل
variety (n)	تشكيلة / مجموعة متنوعة	giant (adj)	ضخم / عملاق
freshwater (n)	مياه عذبة	located (adj)	الذي يقع
planet (n)	كوكب	powerful (adj)	قوي
generation (n)	جيل	giant (adj)	ضخم / هائل
midday (n)	منتصف النهار	sunny (adj)	مشمس
climate (n)	مناخ	rainy (adj)	ممطر
environment (n)	البيئة	snowy (adj)	ثلجي
daily life (n)	الحياة اليومية	hydrated (adj)	مرطب
reporter (n)	مراسل	finally (adv)	في النهاية / أخيرًا
radio station (n)	محطة إذاعية	meanwhile (adv)	في هذه الأثناء / أثناء ذلك
weather forecast (n)	توقعات الطقس	wisely (adv)	بحكمة
update (n)	تحديث	outdoors (adv)	بالخارج / في مكان مفتوح
partner (n)	شريك	experience (v) (d)	يجرب / يمرّب
weather condition (n)	حالة الطقس	affect (v)	يؤثر على
temperature (n)	درجة الحرارة	expect (v) (ed)	يتوقع / ينتظر
warning (n)	تحذير	remind (v) (ed)	يذكر

Definitions

landmark (n)	فعلّم	famous and easily seen building or place
species (n)	نوع / فصيلة	a group of animals or plants
mist (n)	ضباب	light fog ⁽¹⁾ or tiny drops ⁽²⁾ of water in the air
rise (v)	يرتفع / يعلو	move from a place to a higher one
flat (adj)	مسطح / مستو	straight ⁽³⁾ with no height
towering (adj)	شاهق / مرتفع جدًا	very tall or high

١. ضباب
٢. قطرات
٣. مستقيم

Expressions & Prepositions

full of	مليء بـ	clear skies	سماء صافية
crash down	يتحطم	(be) known for	معروف بـ
look like	يشبه	what kind of weather	ما نوع الطقس
care for	يعتني بـ	what's the weather like	ما حالة الطقس
stay hydrated	يحافظ على رطوبة الجسم	there's no chance of	لا يوجد فرصة لـ



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
powerful	قوي	strong		weak	ضعيف
full	ممتلئ	filled		empty	فارغ
natural	طبيعي	organic		artificial	صناعي
flat	مستو	level		uneven	غير مستو
rise	يرتفع	ascend		descend	ينخفض
endless	لا نهاية له	limitless		limited	محدود

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ous	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	thunderous
-ful	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	powerful, beautiful
-less	تعطي معنى النفي / بدون	endless
-al	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	natural

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present

lie	يقع/يتمدد
fall	يسقط/ينخفض
show	يُظهر/يعرض

Past simple

lay
fell
showed

Past Participle

lain
fallen
shown



Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 water / a water / waters

• water

تستخدم كلمة (water) كاسم مفرد غير معدود بمعنى المياه التي تستخدم في الشرب والري وخلافه.

Ex. Water is essential for life.

• a water

ولكن يمكن أن تكون اسم مفرد معدود، وقبله أداة نكرة، (a water)، عندما تستخدم بمعنى زجاجة أو كوب من الماء.

Ex. Can I have a water, please? = a glass / a bottle of water.

• waters

ويمكن أيضا استخدامها في صيغة الجمع، (waters)، عندما تستخدم بمعنى (كيانات مائية في مناطق جغرافية محددة).

Ex. The ship was sailing in Egyptian waters.

2 sight / scene

• sight

تستخدم كلمة (sight) بمعنى (منظر تراه بعينيك):

Ex. The sunset over the sea was a beautiful sight.

• scene

بينما تستخدم كلمة (scene) عند الحديث عن مكان أو موقع يحدث فيه شيء ما:

Ex. The police arrived at the crime scene.

3 another / other

• another

تستخدم كلمة (another) بمعنى (آخر / إضافي)، ويليه اسم مفرد معدود:

Ex. Can I have another apple, please?

• other

بينما تستخدم كلمة (other) بمعنى (آخر / إضافي)، ولكن يليها اسم جمع أو اسم غير معدود:

Ex. I have other friends who live in London.

- Is there any other information you need?

4 weather / climate

• weather

تستخدم كلمة (weather) للحديث عن حالة الطقس اليومية أو لمدة قصيرة:

Ex. The weather was hot yesterday? - What's the weather like today?

• climate

بينما تستخدم كلمة (climate) للحديث عن حالة المناخ في منطقة معينة لفترة طويلة:

Ex. Egypt has a hot, desert climate.

5 affect / effect

• affect

تستخدم كلمة (affect) كفعل بمعنى (يؤثر على)، ولا يأتي بعدها حرف جر:

Ex. Hot weather can affect your health.

• effect

بينما تستخدم كلمة (effect) كاسم بمعنى (تأثير)، ويأتي بعدها حرف الجر (on):

Ex. Exercise has a good effect on your body.

6 outdoor / outdoors

• outdoor

تستخدم كلمة (outdoor) كصفة بمعنى (خارجي / يتم في مكان مفتوح)، ودائماً يأتي بعدها اسم:

Ex. I like outdoor activities.

• outdoors

بينما تستخدم كلمة (outdoors) كظرف بمعنى (بالخارج / في مكان مفتوح)، ولا يأتي بعدها اسم:

Ex. The children are playing outdoors.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- She felt thirsty, so she stopped to buy from a supermarket.
a. waterless b. a water c. waters d. watering
- The powerful of the Atlantic Ocean made the ship sink.
a. watering b. a water c. water d. waters
- The police arrived quickly at the accident
a. scene b. view c. sight d. look
- I don't like this shirt. Can I see one, please?
a. other b. others c. another d. the others
- The in this country is usually hot and dry all year.
a. weather b. climate c. season d. sky
- Lack of sleep can your school work.
a. affect b. effect c. result d. cause
- I'd like to spend this afternoon, in the park.
a. outdoor b. indoors c. indoor d. outdoors

Reading

SB Page (72)

SB Page (72)

استمع إلى النصوص



Read the following text. What do the natural wonders remind us of? The Wonders of Nature

From **towering waterfalls**⁽¹⁾ to endless deserts, the **natural**⁽²⁾ world is full of amazing sights. One of the most famous waterfalls is Victoria Falls, located between Zambia and Zimbabwe. Its **powerful**⁽³⁾ waters crash down with a **thunderous roar**⁽⁴⁾, creating mist that rises like smoke. It is often **called**⁽⁵⁾ "The Smoke That Thunders." Another **wonder**⁽⁶⁾ is **Table Mountain**⁽⁷⁾ which is one of the most famous **natural landmarks**⁽⁸⁾ in South Africa. It rises above the city of Cape Town and is **known for**⁽⁹⁾ its flat top, which looks like a **giant**⁽¹⁰⁾ table - that's how, it got its name. Finally, Lake Malawi (**also**⁽¹¹⁾ called Lake Nyasa) is one of Africa's largest and most beautiful **lakes**⁽¹²⁾. It lies between three countries: Malawi, Mozambique, and Tanzania. It's known for having the world's largest **variety**⁽¹³⁾ of **freshwater**⁽¹⁴⁾ fish **species**⁽¹⁵⁾. These natural wonders **remind**⁽¹⁶⁾ us to care for our **planet**⁽¹⁷⁾. They show the beauty and power of **creation**⁽¹⁸⁾, and the importance of **protecting**⁽¹⁹⁾ it for **future generations**⁽²⁰⁾.

١. شلالات شاهقة
٢. طبيعي
٣. قوية
٤. هدير مدوّ
٥. يُطلق عليها
٦. أعجوبة
٧. جبل الطاولة
٨. معالم طبيعية
٩. معروف بـ
١٠. عملاق
١١. أيضاً
١٢. بحيرات
١٣. مجموعة متنوعة
١٤. المياه العذبة
١٥. أنواع الأسماك
١٦. تذكر
١٧. كوكب
١٨. الخلق
١٩. حماية
٢٠. الأجيال القادمة

Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

Read again and answer the following questions.

1. Name three places from the passage that show nature's beauty and power.
2. In your opinion, what makes these natural places special?
3. Which natural wonder mentioned in the text would you like to explore? Why?

- Answers:
- 1- The three places are Victoria Falls, Table Mountain, and Lake Malawi (Lake Nyasa).
 - 2- These natural places are special because they show the beauty, power, and diversity of nature, such as powerful waterfalls, a unique flat-topped mountain, and a lake rich in freshwater fish species.
 - 3- I'd like to explore Victoria Falls. Because I enjoy seeing its powerful waters crashing down..



Audio Script

SB Page (74)

Good morning, my dear friends!

Let's **check**⁽¹⁾ the **weather**⁽²⁾ in three cities. In Cairo, it's **sunny**⁽³⁾ and very hot today with a high of 34°C. People are **advised**⁽⁴⁾ to stay **hydrated**⁽⁵⁾ and avoid the **midday**⁽⁶⁾ sun. In London, it's **cooler**⁽⁷⁾ and rainy, with a high of 18°C. The **streets**⁽⁸⁾ are wet, so carry an **umbrella**⁽⁹⁾. **Meanwhile**⁽¹⁰⁾, Moscow is cold at just 6°C, and snow is **expected**⁽¹¹⁾ later. **Roads**⁽¹²⁾ may be icy, so travel **carefully**⁽¹³⁾. These different **climates**⁽¹⁴⁾ show how nature changes across the world. **Whether**⁽¹⁵⁾ hot, wet, or cold, we must respect the **environment**⁽¹⁶⁾ and prepare **wisely**⁽¹⁷⁾ for all kinds of weather.

١. نتحقق من
٢. الطقس
٣. مشمس
٤. يُنصح
٥. يحافظ على رطوبة
٦. الجسم
٧. منتصف النهار
٨. أكثر برودة
٩. الشوارع
١٠. مظلة
١١. في الوقت نفسه
١٢. متوقع
١٣. الطرق
١٤. بحذر
١٥. المناخات
١٦. سواء
١٧. البيئة
١٨. يستعد بحكمة

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. To _____ means to move from a place to a higher one.
a. fall b. rise c. jump d. drop
2. _____ means very tall or high.
a. Towering b. Wide c. Short d. Flat
3. A _____ is a famous and easily seen building or place.
a. village b. landmark c. corner d. street
4. _____ means straight with no height.
a. Deep b. Round c. Flat d. Rough
5. A _____ is a group of animals or plants.
a. species b. forest c. crowd d. family
6. _____ means light fog or tiny drops of water in the air.
a. Storm b. Rain c. Cloud d. Mist

Synonyms & Antonyms

7. The lion is a powerful animal. "Powerful" is closest in meaning to
 a. weak b. smart c. strong d. clever
8. My backpack is full of books. "Full" is opposite in meaning to
 a. empty b. deep c. high d. filled
9. This juice is made from natural fruit. "Natural" is an antonym for
 a. real b. expensive c. artificial d. true
10. The ground was flat, so it was easy to walk on. "Flat" can be replaced with
 a. uneven b. level c. rough d. bumpy
11. Hot air rises in the sky. "Rise" is a synonym for
 a. descend b. decrease c. drop d. shine
12. I feel like my homework is endless. The word "endless" means
 a. unlimited b. short c. limited d. tall

Prefixes & Suffixes

13. To get the adjective from the noun "power", we add the suffix ".....".
 a. ness b. ful c. ous d. ion
14. To get the adjective from the noun "thunder", we add the suffix ".....".
 a. ion b. tion c. ful d. ous
15. To get the adjective from the noun "end", we add the suffix ".....".
 a. less b. sion c. al d. ian
16. To get the adjective from the noun "nature", we add the suffix ".....".
 a. ing b. ful c. al d. ion

Collocations & Guessing meaning

17. The new museum is next to the main train station.
 a. located b. painted c. closed d. affected
18. The supermarket sells a wide of fruits, like apples, bananas, and oranges.
 a. reporter b. climate c. variety d. update
19. We very cold weather while camping in the mountains last week.
 a. exercised b. experienced c. hydrated d. reminded

20. My dad was fixing the car....., my mom was cleaning the house.
a. Wisely b. Suddenly c. Quickly d. Meanwhile
21. The desert has a very hot and dry all year round.
a. weather b. forecast c. climate d. season
22. You should spend your money and not buy too many things.
a. wisely b. quickly c. badly d. carelessly
23. Too much sun can your skin badly.
a. watch b. affect c. hear d. effect
24. My sister works as a for an international newspaper.
a. warning b. sunscreen c. reporter d. variety
25. We always check the weather before planning our trips or picnics.
a. forecast b. climate c. temperature d. planet
26. It is important to drink lots of water to hydrated during hot summer days.
a. take b. make c. do d. stay
27. London is known its famous red buses and black taxis.
a. for b. with c. about d. at

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the list:

climate - mountains - explore - wildlife - company

Traveling can be a wonderful experience if you plan carefully. First, choose a location with a suitable ① to enjoy your trip. Some people prefer the beach, while others like ② where they can hike and enjoy fresh air. During your journey, try to ③ new places and take photos. You can also observe the local ④, such as birds, deer, or other animals.



Language

قواعد لغوية

صفات المقارنة والتفضيل Comparative and Superlative adjectives

- تنقسم الصفات إلى صفات قصيرة وصفات طويلة.
من أمثلة الصفات القصيرة

big	كبير	fast	سريع	tall	طويل
high	على	long	طويل	nice	لطيف

- من أمثلة الصفات الطويلة

popular	شائع / مشهور	expensive	غالي الثمن	useful	مفيد
crowded	مزدحم	difficult	صعب	modern	حديث

- نستخدم صيغة المقارنة **Comparative** للمقارنة بين شيئين أو شخصين.
- نستخدم صيغة التفضيل **Superlative** لتفضيل عنصر واحد على مجموعة.
- تختلف صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل حسب الصفة ما إذا كانت قصيرة أو طويلة كما يلي:

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
short adjective "high"	صفة + er + than "higher than" Ex. Mount Kilimanjaro is higher than that mountain.	the + صفة + est "the highest" Ex. Mount Everest is the highest mountain.
long adjective "modern"	أقل أكثر more / less + صفة + than Ex. My city is more modern than your city.	الأقل الأكثر The most / least + صفة Ex. Ali's city is the most modern one.

Notes

- عند تكوين المقارنة / التفضيل:

1- إذا انتهت الصفة القصيرة بحرف (e) يضاف (r) فقط عند تكوين صيغة المقارنة ،
ويضاف (st) فقط عند تكوين صيغة التفضيل.

nice → nicer than → the nicest

2- إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن يليه حرف (y) تحول (y) إلى (i) ثم نضيف (er) أو (est):

noisy → noisier than → the noisiest / busy → busier than → the busiest

٣- إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك يضعف الحرف الأخير في بعض الصفات:

big → bigger than → the biggest / thin → thinner than → the thinnest

٤- هناك صفات شاذة تحفظ صيغة المقارنة والتفضيل منها مثل:

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
good جيد	better than	the best
bad سيء	worse than	the worst
many كثير (للعدد)	more than	the most
much كثير (للكمية)	more than	the most
little قليل (للكمية)	less than	the least
far بعيد	farther / further than	the farthest / furthest

٥- من الممكن أن نستغني عن **than** عند المقارنة وتفهم من المعنى:

Ex. Mona is clever but Habiba is **cleverer** (than her).

- تستخدم صيغة التفضيل بعد **'s** الملكية وبعد صفات الملكية (my / his / her ... etc.) بدون **the**.

Ex. He lost **his best** book yesterday.

Ex. **Helmi's most difficult** subject is maths.

٦- لاحظ أنه يمكن استخدام **the + صفة + er** عند المقارنة بين اثنين:

Ex. Ali is **the faster** of the **two boys**.

٧- عند تساوي اثنين في صفة نستخدم **as + صفة + as**:

Ex. Shady is **as fast / intelligent as** Magdy.

٨- عند عدم تساوي اثنين في صفة نستخدم **not + as / so + صفة + as**:

Ex. Omar is **not as / so clever as me**.

Exercises on Language

Rewrite the sentences correctly using the words between brackets.

Set Book Exercises

- No one is taller than Ali. (tallest)
- Hady is fatter than every student in class. (the)
- Tamer is the fastest runner in the race. (No runner)

4. I am 16 years old. Noha is 17.

(younger)

5. Dalia is clever, but Faten is cleverer.

(than)

Bit by Bit Exercises

6. Yesterday was not as cold as today.

(Today)

7. Layla is the most beautiful girl in her Family.

(No girl)

8. This building is the highest in the village.

(No building)

9. No one in class is more intelligent than Haroun.

(the most)

10. Yara is the cleverest doctor in the hospital.

(No doctor)

11. Maha is more intelligent than Ahmad.

(less)

12. Layla is older than Haroun

(younger)

13. Layla is taller than Haroun

(shorter)

14. This phone is more expensive than mine.

(cheaper)

15. No mountain in Africa is higher than Mount Kilimanjaro.

(the highest)

16. My brother is younger than me.

(older)

17. This lesson is the most important in the unit.

(No lesson)

18. This car is faster than that one.

(slower)

19. No book in the library is more useful than this one.

(the most)

20. Summer is hotter than spring.

(colder)

21. This problem is not as easy as it looks.

(harder)

22. Salma is the best player in the team.

(No player)

General Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

1 Complete the following dialog:

Sara and Ali are talking about protecting the environment.

Sara : I'm happy we are doing a project about the environment.

Ali : Me too! What does it mean to protect the ① _____?

Sara : It means keeping our air, water, and land clean.

Ali : I see. So we should care about nature.

Sara : Yes. Do you think we have a responsibility toward our ② _____?

Ali : Of course. We shouldn't waste water or throw ③ _____ on the ground.

Sara : That's right. What will you do for the project?

Ali : I'm going to prepare an ④ _____ poster.

Sara : Great idea! Posters help people understand the message.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

wonders - natural - temperatures - landmarks - species

Our world is full of natural wonders. There are many famous ① _____ show the beauty of nature and history. Victoria Falls is one of the greatest ② _____ in Africa. The area around it is home to many animal and plant ③ _____. People visit this place to learn, enjoy nature, and protect these amazing ④ _____ treasures for the future.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The table has a flat surface. "Flat" is opposite in meaning to
a. smooth b. level c. uneven d. wide
- The bottle is full of water. "Full" is opposite in meaning to
a. filled b. heavy c. empty d. large
- Avoid going out at because the sun is very strong.
a. meantime b. midday c. umbrella d. weather
- The market has an amazing of fresh fish.
a. variety b. price c. box d. taste
- I must put on my before I go to the beach so I don't burn my skin.
a. sweater b. raincoat c. sunscreen d. glasses
- What is the like in your town today? – It's windy and cloudy.
a. climate b. weather c. rain d. flood
- Not getting enough sleep can your ability to concentrate at school.
a. update b. protect c. provide d. affect
- The teacher gave us an on the new school rules.
a. update b. information c. warning d. news
- Because of the bad weather, our flight was delayed.
a. a. tickets b. rules c. conditions d. prices
- The radio gave a about the high waves at the beach.
a. song b. warning c. report d. joke
- The weather is sunny and warm, Let's eat our breakfast, in the garden.
a. outdoors b. indoors c. indoor d. outdoor

4 Rewrite the sentences correctly using the words between brackets.

- This exam is easier than the previous one. (The previous exam)
.....
- No student in the class is more active than Ali. (the most)
.....
- Sara is the tallest girl in the team. (No girl)
.....
- Gold is more expensive than iron. (less)
.....

5. This road is longer than the Ring Road.

(shorter)

6. No city in the country is larger than Cairo.

(the largest)

7. My house is the oldest in the street.

(No house)

8. English is more interesting than history.

(less)

9. No player in the team is stronger than Omar.

(the strongest)

10. This exercise is not as difficult as the last one.

(The last)

5 Write a paragraph of **NINETY (90)** words about:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Your favourite season and why"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

1. What is your favorite season?
2. What is the weather like during this season?
3. Why do you like this season?
4. What do you usually do during this season?

- جمل تساعدك في كتابة الفقرة:

- My favorite season is
- The weather is usually
- I like this season because
- During this season, I usually



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

tongue (n.)	لسان	sensitive (adj)	حساس
species (n.)	نوع / فصيلة	biodiverse (adj)	متنوع بيولوجيًا
nutrients (n.)	مواد غذائية	shrink (v.) (shrank / shrunk)	يتقلص / يتناقص
Venus flytrap (n.) نبات مصيدة الذباب (فينوس)		adapt (v) (ed)	يتكيف / يتأقلم

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

giraffe (n)	زرافة	worth (adj)	جدير بـ / مستحق لـ
starfish (n)	نجم البحر	rapid (adj)	سريع
bamboo (n)	خيزران	competitive (adj)	تنافسي
leaves (n)	أوراق	fascinating (adj)	رائع / مذهل
rainforest (n)	الغابة المطيرة	survive (n) (v) (d)	ينجو / يعيش
purple (n)	اللون البنفسجي	protects (v) (ed)	يحمي
sunburn (n)	لسعة شمس	surprise (n. / v. d)	مفاجأة / يفاجئ
growth (n)	النمو	reach (v) (ed)	يصل
prey (n)	فريسة	protect (v) (ed)	يحمي
dark (adj)	داكن اللون	allow (v) (ed)	يسمح
fast-growing (adj)	سريع النمو		



Definitions

venus flytrap (n)

نبات صائد الذباب فينوس

a plant that eats insects⁽¹⁾

sensitive (adj)

حساس

easily affected or responsive⁽²⁾

biodiverse (adj)

متنوع بيولوجيًا

having many different species⁽³⁾

adapt (v)

يتكيف

to change in order to survive⁽⁴⁾

١. حشرات
٢. مستجيب
٣. فصائل
٤. ينجو

Expressions & Prepositions

up to	يصل إلى	adapt to survive	يتكيف للبقاء على قيد الحياة
protects it from	يحميه من	feed from	يتغذى من
benefit from	يستفيد من	rapid growth	نمو سريع
survive the heat	ينجو من الحرارة	gets nutrients from	يحصل على المغذيات من
in just one day	في يوم واحد فقط	store water	يخزن الماء
over 2.5 million	أكثر من ٢.٥ مليون	keep shrinking	يستمر في الانكماش
among the many	من بين العديد	lose their homes	يفقدون مساكنهم
by snapping its leaves shut	عن طريق غلق أوراقه بسرعة	worth protecting	يستحق الحماية



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
protect	يحمي	defend		harm	يضر
fascinating	رائع / مذهل	amazing		boring	ممل
adapt	يتكيف	adjust		resist	يقاوم
survive	ينجو/يعيش	live		die	يموت
feed	يتغذى	eat		starve	يجوع
rapid	سريع	quick		slow	بطيء
competitive	تنافسي	challenging		easy	سهل
biodiverse	متنوع بيولوجياً	varied			

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present

feed	
lose	يفقد
keep	يواصل

Past simple

fed
lost
kept

Past Participle

fed
lost
kept



Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 reach / arrive

• reach

• يستخدم الفعل (reach) بمعنى (يصل إلى)، ولا يأتي بعده حرف جر، بل نذكر بعده المكان مباشرة:

Ex. He reached school on time.

• arrive

- بينما يستخدم الفعل (arrive) بمعنى (يصل) ويجب ان يأتي بعده حرف جر عند ذكر المكان بعده:

Ex. He arrived at school on time.

- لاحظ أن حروف الجر التي تستخدم بعد (arrive) هي (in / on / at)، ولا نستخدم بعده حرف الجر (to):

Ex. She arrived in London at midnight. (NOT: She arrived to London)

② allow + شخص + to + فعل بالمصدر

• allow

• - عندما يأتي الفعل (allow) متبوعاً بمفعول به، يأتي بعد المفعول به فعل بالمصدر مسبقاً بـ (to):

Ex. My father didn't allow me to drive his car.

③ (be) worth + v -ing:

• تأتي الصفة (worth) بمعنى (يستحق/جدير بـ)، ويأتي بعدها فعل منتهي بـ (ing):

Ex. The new museum is worth visiting.

④ species (n) فصيلة/فصائل

• يمكن استخدام كلمة (species) كإسم مفرد بمعنى (فصيلة)، ويليهما فعل مفرد، كما يمكن استخدامها بنفس الشكل كإسم جمع بمعنى (فصائل)، ويليهما في هذه الحالة فعل جمع:

Ex. This species lives in the desert.

- Many species live in the forest.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We need to leave now if we want to the airport on time for our flight.
a. arrive b. arrive at c. arrive to d. reach at
- It took us five hours to the top of the mountain.
a. arrive b. arrive on c. arrive to d. reach
- My parents allow me up late on Friday nights to watch a movie.
a. to stay b. staying c. stay d. stayed
- The new mobile is worth I really like it.
a. to buy b. buy c. buying d. bought
- A new species of fish discovered in the deep ocean by scientists yesterday.
a. have b. were c. has d. was
- All the plant species in the forest important for the ecosystem.
a. are b. is c. have d. has

Reading

SB Page (76)



SB Page (76)

استمع إلى النصوص



Read the following text. What should we do to help nature?

Nature⁽¹⁾ is full of surprises⁽²⁾! Do you know a giraffe's tongue⁽³⁾ can be up to 50 cm long and is dark purple? This helps it reach high leaves and protects⁽⁴⁾ it from the sun. Starfish⁽⁵⁾ are also fascinating⁽⁶⁾ - they usually have five arms, though some species⁽⁷⁾ can have more. Bamboo is one of the fastest-growing⁽⁸⁾ plants in the world; it can grow up to 90 cm in just one day! In the Amazon Rainforest⁽⁹⁾, over 2.5 million species of animals live, making it one of the most biodiverse⁽¹⁰⁾ places on Earth. Among the many strange plants in nature is the Venus flytrap⁽¹¹⁾, which eats insects by snapping⁽¹²⁾ its leaves shut when prey touches its sensitive hairs. These facts show how living things adapt to⁽¹³⁾ survive. A giraffe's long tongue helps it feed from tall trees. Bamboo's rapid⁽¹⁴⁾ growth allows it to increase⁽¹⁵⁾ in competitive environments⁽¹⁶⁾. The Venus flytrap gets nutrients from insects, and desert animals store water to survive⁽¹⁷⁾ the heat. If the Amazon keeps shrinking, many species could lose their homes. Nature is amazing and worth protecting⁽¹⁸⁾.



١. الطبيعة
٢. مفاجآت
٣. لسان
٤. يحمي
٥. نجم البحر
٦. رائع / مذهل
٧. أنواع
٨. سريع النمو
٩. غابة مطيرة
١٠. متنوعة بيولوجياً
١١. نبات مطاردة الذباب
١٢. يغلق / ينقض
١٣. يتكيف مع
١٤. سريع
١٥. يزيد / ينمو
١٦. بيئات
١٧. ينجو / يبقى على قيد الحياة
١٨. حماية / يحمي

Reading Skill

مهارات القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

1. How does the Venus flytrap benefit from eating insects?
2. Which animal or plant from the reading would you like to learn more about?
3. How do these facts make you think differently about protecting the environment?

1. How does the Venus flytrap benefit from eating insects?
2. Which animal or plant from the reading would you like to learn more about?
3. How do these facts make you think differently about protecting the environment?

Answers:

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

- Venus is a plant that eats insects.
a. cactus b. flower c. rose d. flytrap
- A person who is easily affected by feelings is
a. brave b. calm c. sensitive d. polite
- A rainforest with many kinds of animals and plants is
a. dry b. narrow c. empty d. biodiverse
- When animals change their behavior to survive; they
a. adapt b. sleep c. grow d. travel

Synonyms & Antonyms

- The film was fascinating. "Fascinating" is closest in meaning to
a. boring b. tiring c. amazing d. difficult
- My skin is sensitive, so I must use special soap. "Sensitive" means
a. delicate b. strong c. rough d. hard
- Rainforests are biodiverse and full of animals. "Biodiverse" means
a. powerful b. clever c. smart d. varied
- Animals adapt to hot weather in the desert. The antonym of "adapt" is
a. change b. resist c. modify d. calm
- Plants need water to survive. "Survive" is opposite in meaning to
a. die b. reach c. live d. store
- Most animals feed on grass. "Feed" is an antonym for
a. starve b. eat c. protect d. provide

Collocations & Guessing meaning

- A giraffe uses its long to eat leaves from tall trees.
a. increase b. starfish c. environments d. tongue
- Plants and animals are classified into different
a. flytraps b. environments c. species d. tongue
- Fresh vegetables have many that help your body stay strong and healthy.
a. tastes b. nutrients c. warnings d. insects
- Please be quiet around the baby; her ears are very to loud sounds.
a. sensitive b. strong c. funny d. happy

15. The rainforest is _____ because it has thousands of different plants and animals.
a. empty b. small c. dangerous d. biodiverse
16. The exam was very _____, but I answered all the questions.
a. sensitive b. competitive c. expensive d. protective
17. In winter, I wear a thick coat to _____ myself from the cold wind.
a. show b. find c. protect d. clean
18. Good soil and enough water are important for the _____ of these plants.
a. color b. snow c. price d. growth
19. The computer game is so fun; it is _____ buying.
a. ready b. worth c. waiting d. paying
20. After falling asleep on the beach for too long, he had a very bad _____.
a. sunburn b. sunset c. sunscreen d. sunrise
21. The river has a very _____ current, so it is dangerous to swim there.
a. clean b. slow c. rapid d. cold
22. The lion is a hunter, and the zebra is its favorite _____.
a. friend b. prey c. pet d. baby
23. My parents don't _____ me to watch TV before I finish my homework.
a. carry b. build c. give d. allow
24. I am not tall enough to _____ the books on the top shelf.
a. arrive b. buy c. reach d. open
25. Bamboo is a very _____ plant; it can get taller every day!
a. fast-growing b. slow-moving c. light-colored d. hard-working
26. Students can _____ from the new library and its useful books.
a. harm b. worry c. miss d. benefit
27. Camels can _____ the heat in the desert because they can store water in their bodies.
a. find b. survive c. feel d. drink

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

protect - sunburn - generations - biodiverse - survive

The rainforest is a very special place on Earth. It is ① _____ and full of many plants and animals. People find it fascinating because there's life everywhere there. We must ② _____ the rainforest so animals and people can ③ _____. It is important for our future ④ _____.



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

I can't wait	لا أستطيع الانتظار	You are right.	أنت على حق.
How amazing!	يا لها من روعة!	well	حسنا
That's wonderful!	هذا رائع!		

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

tour (n)	جولة	strong (adj)	قوي
wonders (n)	عجائب	snapping (adj)	متطير / متكسر
museum (n)	متحف	unique (adj)	فريد
glory (n)	مجد	fantastic (adj)	رائع
sand dunes (n)	كثبان رملية	hydrated (adj)	مرطب
hump (n)	سنام	unlike (prep)	على عكس / بخلاف
fat (n)	دهون	sensitive (adj)	حساس
achievements (n)	إنجازات	eager (adj)	متحمس / حريص
artifacts (n)	قطع أثرية	vast (adj)	شاسع / كبير الاتساع
weather forecast (n)	توقعات الطقس	towering (adj)	شاهق الارتفاع
creatures (n)	مخلوقات	stretch (v) (ed)	يمتد
eyelashes (n)	رموش	adapt (v) (ed)	تكيف
grand (adj)	كبير / رائع	survive (v) (d)	ينجو / يبقى على قيد الحياة

Expressions & Prepositions

Have you ever..?	هل سبق لك أن	stay hydrated	يحافظ على رطوبة الجسم
welcome to	أهلا بك في	(be) eager to	يكون حريصا على أن
you mean ...	انت تقصد		

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
un-	تحول الكلمة الى العكس	unlike
ment -	تحول الفعل إلى الاسم	achievement

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
vast	واسع	large		small	صغير
survive	ينجو	live		die	يموت
endless	بلا نهاية	unlimited		limited	محدود
hydrated	مرطب	wet		dry	جاف
unique	فريد	special		normal	عادي

Reading

SB Page (80)

SB Page (80)

استمع إلى النصوص



Read the following conversation. Guess the meaning of the words in bold.

Tour Guide : Welcome to Egypt! Are you **ready**⁽¹⁾ to start our tour?

Tourist : **Yes, I can't wait!** What will we start with? I want to see **ancient**⁽²⁾ and modern **wonders**⁽³⁾ in Egypt.

Tour Guide : **Well**, we'll start by visiting the Pyramids, **especially**⁽⁴⁾ the Great Pyramid in Giza. It's an ancient wonder in Egypt.

Tourist : **How amazing**⁽⁵⁾! How old is it?

Tour Guide : It's 4000 years old and is still standing **strong**⁽⁶⁾.

Tourist : What other modern wonders can we visit?

Tour Guide : We will visit the **Grand**⁽⁷⁾ Egyptian **Museum**⁽⁸⁾ near the Pyramids.

Tourist : That's **wonderful**⁽⁹⁾! Both the ancient and modern wonders in one place.

Tour Guide : **You are right**. Egypt always connects its ancient **glory**⁽¹⁰⁾ with modern **achievements**⁽¹¹⁾. So, let's start. I'm **eager to**⁽¹²⁾ see what seems so **fantastic**⁽¹³⁾ in Egypt.

١. جاهز
٢. قديم/تاريخي
٣. عجائب
٤. خصوصاً/بشكل خاص
٥. مذهش/رائع
٦. قوي
٧. كبير/رائع/فخم
٨. متحف
٩. رائع/مذهش
١٠. مجد/عظمة
١١. إنجازات
١٢. متحمس لـ/حريص على
١٣. رائع/مذهل



SB Page (81)

Complete the following dialog in complete questions and sentences:

Leen : Have you ever been to the new Egyptian Museum near the Pyramids?

Dima : You mean the Grand Egyptian Museum. Yes, I visited it last weekend.

Leen : ① What makes it so special?

Dima : It has thousands of artifacts and a special Hall for King Tutankhamun.

Leen : ② How amazing! It looks like a very beautiful and unique building.

Dima : You're right. It's a modern building with lights everywhere.

Leen : ③ That's wonderful! I think I will visit it very soon.

Dima : I'm sure you'll love it. It's Egypt's greatest modern wonder.



SB Page (82)

The camel is one of the most **amazing**⁽¹⁾ animals living in the vast deserts. It has **adapted**⁽²⁾ **perfectly**⁽³⁾ to survive under the hottest weather **forecast**⁽⁴⁾. Its long legs help it walk easily across the **endless**⁽⁵⁾ sand **dunes**⁽⁶⁾. Unlike other animals, the camel can stay **hydrated**⁽⁷⁾ for many days. Its **hump**⁽⁸⁾ stores fat, not water, and its thick **eyelashes**⁽⁹⁾ **protect**⁽¹⁰⁾ it from **snapping**⁽¹¹⁾ sand. **Truly**⁽¹²⁾, it is one of the most **unique**⁽¹³⁾ and **sensitive**⁽¹⁴⁾ creatures of nature

١. مذهش / رائع
٢. متكيف / تكيف
٣. بشكل مثالي / تمامًا
٤. توقع / نشرة الطقس
٥. بلا نهاية / لا نهائي
٦. كثبان رملية
٧. مرطب
٨. سنام
٩. رموش
١٠. يحمي
١١. متطاير / يلسع
١٢. حقًا / بالفعل
١٣. فريد
١٤. حساس



Speaking

Ask and answer questions about an amazing animal in nature:

• اسأل واجب اسئلة عن حيوان مدهل في الطبيعة:

Question

1- Have you ever heard of the leaf-cutter ant?

- هل سمعت من قبل عن نملة قاطعة الأوراق؟

Answer

- Yes, I've read about it. You mean the tiny insects that carry leaves on their heads?

They are small but very strong!

نعم، قرأت عنها. هل تقصد تلك الحشرات الصغيرة التي تحمل الأوراق على رؤوسها؟ إنها صغيرة لكنها قوية جدًا!

2- What do they do with those leaves?

- ماذا تفعل بتلك الأوراق؟

3- How amazing! Where does it live?

- يا للعجب! أين تعيش؟

4- What makes it so special?

- ما الذي يجعلها مميزة جدًا؟ ما الذي يجعلها مميزة جدًا؟

5 - That's wonderful! Nature is full of surprises.

- هذا رائع! الطبيعة مليئة بالمفاجآت.

- They don't eat the leaves. They use them to grow a special fungus underground for food.

إنها لا تأكل الأوراق، بل تستخدمها لزراعة فطر خاص تحت الأرض كغذاء.

- They live in the rainforests of Central and South America.

تعيش في الغابات المطيرة في أمريكا الوسطى والجنوبية.

- One ant can carry a piece of leaf that is fifty times heavier than its own body!

تستطيع نملة واحدة حمل ورقة أثقل من جسمها بخمسين ضعفًا!

- You're right.

أنت على حق.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Synonyms & Antonyms

- The ocean is vast and full of life. "Vast" is opposite in meaning to
a. big b. wide c. small d. long
- Plants need water to survive. The word "survive" means
a. live b. help c. stay d. die
- We walked for hours across the endless road. "Endless" is a synonym for
a. long b. short c. big d. wide
- Drink water to stay hydrated during exercise. "Hydrated" is an antonym for
a. dry b. wet c. hot d. warm
- Every culture has unique traditions. "Unique" is closest in meaning to
a. public b. clever c. cold d. special

Prefixes and Suffixes

- To make the opposite of the word "like", we add the prefix
a. re- b. un- c. pre- d. mis-

7. To change the verb "achieve" into a noun, we add the suffix

- a. -able b. -tion c. -nce d. -ment

Collocations & Guessing meaning

8. We went on a school to the museum.

- a. tour b. tourist c. desert d. glory

9. The pyramids are one of the world's famous

- a. places b. wonders c. deserts d. tours

10. Egypt is proud of its great historical

- a. dunes b. fats c. humps d. achievements

11. The pyramids are buildings that amaze people.

- a. grand b. wet c. snapping d. hydrated

12. The camel has very adaptations to survive in the desert.

- a. strong b. hydrated c. unique d. bad

13. The Sahara is a hot with little water.

- a. museum b. desert c. place d. tour

14. We saw ancient tools in the history

- a. place b. museum c. desert d. wonder

15. The camel has a on its back to store fat.

- a. hump b. dune c. glory d. place

16. Animals must to the extreme heat in the desert climate.

- a. adapt b. survive c. tour d. snap

17. With water and food, people can in hard conditions.

- a. assist b. survive c. guide d. die

18. Egypt always connects its ancient with modern achievements.

- a. glory b. noise c. trouble d. mistake

19. We saw tall sand while traveling across the desert.

- a. forests b. rivers c. dunes d. lakes

20. Be careful near that turtle! It has a mouth that can bite.

- a. sleeping b. snapping c. singing d. swimming

21. yesterday, which was sunny, today's weather is cold and rainy.

- a. Like b. As c. Same d. Unlike

22. The students are to finish their exams and start their summer holiday.

- a. afraid b. tired c. eager d. slow

23. I am so excited about the school trip tomorrow; to see the museum!
 a. I can't help b. I can't wait c. I can't stay d. I can't move
24. My eyes are very to bright light. So, I always wear my sunglasses.
 a. strong b. rough c. noisy d. sensitive
25. The ocean is so that it takes many days for a ship to cross it.
 a. vast b. small c. low d. old
26. The buildings in the city center are so high they touch the clouds.
 a. short b. flat c. empty d. towering
27. When I wake up, I always my arms above my head.
 a. jump b. stop c. stretch d. break
28. Some animals store to survive in cold winters.
 a. fat b. water c. air d. sand
29. The new museum shows fantastic from ancient Egypt.
 a. machines b. artifacts c. toys d. plants

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

achievements - plants - wonders - tours - oases

Nature offers many beautiful places to explore around the world. Rainforests are full of ① and animals, while ② give life to people in dry deserts. Many travelers enjoy ③ to these places to learn and relax. Protecting nature is one of our greatest ④ for the future.



Writing Tip

(Descriptive Paragraph)

ما هي الفقرة الوصفية ؟

الفقرة الوصفية هي فقرة تهدف إلى وصف شخص، مكان، شيء، أو حدث بطريقة تجعل القارئ يتخيله بوضوح. مكونات الفقرة الوصفية:

١- **الجملة الرئيسية (Topic Sentence):**

هي الجملة الأولى في الفقرة. تخبر القارئ بما سوف تصفه.

Ex. "My bedroom is my favorite place at home." (غرفتي هي مكاني المفضل في البيت.)

٢- **جمل التفاصيل (Supporting Sentences):**

تعطي تفاصيل أكثر عن الموضوع.

يمكنك وصف: المظهر (كيف يبدو) - الحجم أو الشكل - اللون

الحواس: ما نشعر به أو نسمعه أو نراه أو نتذوقه أو نشمه

مثال:

Ex. "The walls are painted blue, and a big window lets in sunlight. My bed is soft and covered with a colorful blanket."

الجدران مطلية باللون الأزرق، وهناك نافذة كبيرة تدخل ضوء الشمس. سريري ناعم ومغطى ببطانية ملونة.)

٣- الجملة الختامية (Concluding Sentence):

تلخص ما وصفت أو تعطي رأيك الشخصي.

Ex. "I feel happy and comfortable whenever I am in my bedroom."

(أشعر بالسعادة والراحة كلما كنت في غرفتي)

A model descriptive paragraph

مثال فقرة كاملة:

My school garden is beautiful. It has many flowers in different colors, and the trees give cool shade. I can hear birds singing in the morning. The grass is soft, and I like to walk barefoot on it. I love spending time in the garden because it makes me feel relaxed and happy.

(حديقة مدرستي جميلة. بها العديد من الزهور بألوان مختلفة، والأشجار توفر ظلًا منعشًا. أستطيع سماع الطيور تغني في الصباح. العشب ناعم، وأحب المشي حافي القدمين عليه. أحب قضاء الوقت في الحديقة لأنها تجعلني أشعر بالراحة والسعادة)

General Exercises



on Lessons 5&6

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

vast - weather - mountains - dunes - variety

Nature is very beautiful and full of ① We have large, ② deserts with high sand ③ that look like mountains of gold. The ④ is usually sunny and warm, but it can be very hot in the summer.

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

The camel is called the ship of the desert. It is a very special animal. Camels can carry heavy loads for a long time, and they can survive in hot and dry places. They have fat in their humps, which gives them energy when food is scarce. Camels can walk for many kilometers without water, and their thick feet help them walk on the sand. People use camels for traveling, carrying goods, and even milk and meat. Camels are part of desert life, and many people protect them. They are strong, patient, and very helpful animals.

A. Choose the correct answer:

- Camels can carry heavy loads for a long time because they are
a. small b. strong c. weak d. fast
- Camels can survive in deserts because they have in their humps.
a. water b. food c. sand d. fat

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why is the camel called the "ship of the desert"?

4. How do camels survive without water for a long time?

5. What do people use camels for?

3 Complete the following dialog:

Mona is having a friendly talk with Salma.

Mona : Hi Salma! You look happy today.

Salma : Thanks! I had a good day at ①

Mona : That's great! ② do you usually do at home?

Salma : I usually read stories or watch TV.

Mona : Nice. What do you like to do in your ③ time?

Salma : I like walking and listening to music. It helps me ④ calm.

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words about:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"The weather in your town"

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

1. How is the the weather in your country?
2. Is the weather the same all over the country?
3. How is the weather like in summer?
4. How is the weather like in winter?
5. How does the weather affect your daily life?

- جمل تساعدك في كتابة الفقرة:

- The weather changes every day.....
- The weather isn't the same in every place.....
- In summer, it is
- In winter, it is
- The weather affects our daily life, including what we wear and how we travel.....

Review on Unit 11

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

landmarks (n)	معالم / علامات بارزة	That's wonderful!	هذا رائع!
victoria Falls (n)	شلالات فيكتوريا	flat (adj)	مسطح
mist (n)	ضباب / رذاذ	towering (adj)	شاهق / مرتفع جدًا
species (n)	نوع / فصيلة	rise (v) (rose / risen)	يرتفع / يعلو
tongue (n.)	لسان	sensitive (adj)	حساس
species (n.)	نوع / فصيلة	biodiverse (adj)	متنوع بيولوجيًا
nutrients (n.)	مواد غذائية	shrink (v.) (shrank / shrunk)	يتقلص / يتناقص
venus flytrap (n.)	نبات مصيدة الذباب	adapt (v) (ed)	يتكيف / يتأقلم
I can't wait	لا أستطيع الانتظار	You are right.	أنت على حق.
How amazing!	يا لها من روعة!	well	حسنًا



Language

قواعد لغوية

Comparative and Superlative adjectives صفات المقارنة والتفضيل

• تنقسم الصفات إلى صفات قصيرة وصفات طويلة.
من أمثلة الصفات القصيرة

big	كبير	fast	سريع	tall	طويل
high	عالي	long	طويل	nice	لطيف

من أمثلة الصفات الطويلة

popular	شائع / مشهور	expensive	غالي الثمن	useful	مفيد
crowded	مزدحم	difficult	صعب	modern	حديث

- نستخدم صيغة المقارنة **Comparative** للمقارنة بين شيئين أو شخصين.
- نستخدم صيغة التفضيل **Superlative** لتفضيل عنصر واحد على مجموعة.
- تختلف صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل حسب الصفة ما إذا كانت قصيرة أو طويلة كما يلي:

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
short adjective "high"	صفة + er + than "higher than"	the + صفة + est "the highest"

	Ex. Mount Kilimanjaro is higher than that mountain.	Ex. Mount Everest is the highest mountain.
long adjective "modern"	أقل أكثر more / less + صفة + than Ex. My city is more modern than your city.	الأقل الأكثر The most / least + صفة Ex. Ali's city is the most modern one.



• عند تكوين المقارنة / التفضيل:

- ١- إذا انتهت الصفة القصيرة بحرف (e) يضاف (r) فقط عند تكوين صيغة المقارنة ، ويضاف (st) فقط عند تكوين صيغة التفضيل.

nice → nicer than → the nicest

- ٢- إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن يليه حرف (y) تحول (y) إلى (i) ثم نضيف (er) أو (est):

noisy → noisier than → the noisiest / busy → busier than → the busiest

- ٣- إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك يضاعف الحرف الأخير في بعض الصفات:

big → bigger than → the biggest / thin → thinner than → the thinnest

- ٤- هناك صفات شاذة تحفظ صيغة المقارنة والتفضيل منها مثل:

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
good جيد	better than	the best
bad سيء	worse than	the worst
many كثير (للعدد)	more than	the most
much كثير (للكمية)	more than	the most
little قليل (للكمية)	less than	the least
far بعيد	farther / further than	the farthest / furthest

- ٥- من الممكن أن نستغني عن **than** عند المقارنة وتفهم من المعنى:

Ex. Mona is clever but Habiba is **cleverer** (than her).

- تستخدم صيغة التفضيل بعد 's الملكية وبعد صفات الملكية (my / his / her ... etc.) بدون the.

Ex. He lost **his best** book yesterday.

Ex. Helmi's most difficult subject is maths.

٦- لاحظ انه يمكن استخدام **the + صفة + er** عند المقارنة بين اثنين:

Ex. Ali is the faster of the two boys.

٧- عند تساوي اثنين في صفة نستخدم **as + صفة + as** :

Ex. Shady is as fast / intelligent as Magdy.

٨- عند عدم تساوي اثنين في صفة نستخدم **not + as / so + صفة + as** :

Ex. Omar is not as /so clever as me.



Speaking

Ask and answer questions about an amazing animal in nature:

• اسأل واجب اسئلة عن حيوان مدهل في الطبيعة:

Question

1- Have you ever heard of the leaf-cutter ant?

- هل سمعت من قبل عن نملة قاطعة الأوراق؟

2- What do they do with those leaves?

- ماذا تفعل بتلك الأوراق؟

3- How amazing! Where does it live?

- يا للعجب! أين تعيش؟

4- What makes it so special?

- ما الذي يجعلها مميزة جدًا؟ ما الذي يجعلها مميزة جدًا؟

5 - That's wonderful! Nature is full of surprises.

- هذا رائع! الطبيعة مليئة بالمفاجآت.

Answer

- Yes, I've read about it. You mean the tiny insects that carry leaves on their heads?

They are small but very strong!

نعم، قرأت عنها. هل تقصد تلك الحشرات الصغيرة التي تحمل الأوراق على رؤوسها؟ إنها صغيرة لكنها قوية جدًا!

- They don't eat the leaves. They use them to grow a special fungus underground for food.

إنها لا تأكل الأوراق، بل تستخدمها لزراعة فطر خاص تحت الأرض كغذاء.

- They live in the rainforests of Central and South America.

تعيش في الغابات المطيرة في أمريكا الوسطى والجنوبية.

- One ant can carry a piece of leaf that is fifty times heavier than its own body!

تستطيع نملة واحدة حمل ورقة أثقل من جسمها بخمسين ضعفًا!

- You're right.

أنت على حق.

Paragraphs & Emails

مقالات إنشائية ورسائل بريد إلكتروني عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة

Lessons 1 & 2

My favourite season is spring. I like spring because the weather is warm but not too hot. Flowers start to bloom, and the trees become green again. Birds sing beautifully, and the air feels fresh and clean. Spring is also a good time to spend time outside, walking in the park or having a picnic. I enjoy seeing the colourful flowers and feeling the gentle breeze. Unlike winter, it is not too cold, and unlike summer, it is not too hot. Spring makes me feel happy and relaxed. That is why spring is my favourite season.

Writing Tip

In my country, nature is very beautiful and varied. We have wide deserts, green fields, and a long river that gives life to many people. The weather is usually sunny and warm, especially in summer. Winters are mild and not very cold. Sometimes it is windy, and in some areas it can be dusty. Many people enjoy the clear sky and bright sunshine. Nature and weather help people grow food, travel easily, and enjoy outdoor life every day.

Lessons 5 & 6

The weather changes every day. Sometimes it is sunny, and sometimes it is rainy. In the morning, the sky can be clear, but in the afternoon, clouds may appear. Windy days are common in some areas, while other places are calm. Seasons also affect the weather. In summer, it is usually hot and dry, while in winter, it can be cold and snowy. Storms can happen suddenly, and people need to be prepared. The weather affects our daily life, including what we wear and how we travel. Watching the weather forecast helps us plan our day. Overall, changes in the weather are normal and natural.

Al-Azhar Test

My favorite hobby is reading books. I like reading stories in the evening after I finish my homework. Reading helps me relax and learn new words. It also makes me imagine new places and people. My favorite hobby is reading books. I like reading stories in the evening after I finish my homework. Reading helps me relax and learn new words. It also makes me imagine new places and people.

Test on Unit 11

My best friend is Ahmed. We have been friends for many years, and we study in the same school. He is kind, helpful, and always honest with me. We like playing football after school and sharing our lunch. When I feel sad, he listens to me and gives good advice. Ahmed works hard and wants to be a doctor in the future. I am happy to have a friend like him because he makes my life more enjoyable.

A. Listening

- 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. What do you usually do after school?

2. Why is it important to spend time with friends?

B. Language Functions

- 2 Complete the following dialogue:

Sara meets Ali on his way to the market.

Sara : Hi Ali! Where are you going?

Ali : ① ----- to buy some fruit.

Sara : That sounds nice. ② ----- ?

Ali : I want to buy oranges and bananas.

Sara : Great choice! When will you come back?

Ali : ③ -----

- 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Hello! ----- to your new school. Let me show you where your classroom is.

a. Welcome b. Goodbye c. Thanks d. Listen

2. The Sahara is a ----- desert that covers many different countries in Africa.

a. tiny b. noisy c. vast d. spicy

3. Osama was the ----- runner in yesterday's race. He won the medal.

a. fast b. fastest c. faster d. as fast

4. My bike is ----- than yours. I want to buy a new one.

a. old b. oldest c. older d. the old

4 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

- English is the easier subject. (.....)
- A plane is fast than a train. (.....)
- Reading is my more favorite hobby. (.....)
- Today's exam is most difficult than yesterday's one. (.....)

C: Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Last Saturday, my family and I went to the local farmer's market. It was a busy and colorful place. We saw tables full of fresh fruits and vegetables. The red apples and bright yellow bananas looked delicious. My mom talked to a farmer about how he grows his big, orange pumpkins. My dad bought some sweet honey from a friendly beekeeper, and I chose a small, green plant to put in my room. It was a fun morning, and I enjoyed seeing all the different, fresh foods.

A. Answer the following questions?

- What did the narrator's dad buy at the market?

.....

- When did the family go to the farmer's market?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer:

- The tables at the market were full of fresh fruits and

a. vegetables b. toys c. flowers d. books

- The writer chose a small, green to take home.

a. pumpkin b. apple c. plant d. honey

6 Write a short paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences on:

(مجاوب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"My favorite hobby"

.....

.....

.....

Test on Unit 11

A. Listening

1 A: Write True (T) or False (F):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Lina helps her mother only in the evening.	☐	☐
2. Lina reads a short story in the evening.	☐	☐

B: Listen and complete:

- Lina helps her mother school.
- After school, Lina does her homework and
- Lina's daily help her feel organized and calm.

B. Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- To is to move from a place to a higher one.
a. sleep b. walk c. rise d. run
- The suffix "....." makes the adjective from the verb "wonder".
a. ful b. ing c. ied d. ion
- This juice is 100% natural. The opposite of "natural" is
a. real b. limited c. clever d. artificial
- You need to drink much water in hot weather to hydrated.
a. come b. stay c. make d. do

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

sunburn - temperature - waterfall - remember - sunscreen

We went to the beach yesterday. The ① was very high, almost 35 degrees. My mom told me to put on ② to protect my skin. I forgot, and now I have a bad ③ on my shoulders. It is red and hurts a lot. I will ④ to use it next time.

C. Writing

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the words between brackets:

1. No one is taller than Hani. (tallest)

2. Salem is thinner than every student in class. (the)

3. Ahmed was the slowest runner in the race. (No runner)

4. I am 12 years old. Noha is 14. (younger)

7 Complete the following dialog:

Mona is asking Salma where she is going.

Mona : Hi Salma! How are you today?

Salma : I am fine, thank you. How about you?

Mona : I'm fine too. What are you ① ----- this afternoon?

Salma : I am going to the cinema.

Mona : That sounds nice. ② ----- are you going with?

Salma : I am going with my sister.

Mona : Great! What time will you ③ ----- ?

Salma : We will meet at five o'clock.

Mona : Okay. Have a good time!

Salma : Thank you. See you ④ ----- .

8 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words about:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"My best friend"



Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

- Identify main ideas and supporting details in short texts about rules
- Guess the meaning of new vocabulary from context

Listening:

- Understand the main ideas and details of short talks about daily rules and routines
- Distinguish between what students are allowed and not allowed to do.

Speaking:

- Role-play conversations about school and house rules using useful expressions
- Give and respond to instructions clearly and politely

Language:

- Countable and Uncountable nouns
- Correctly use quantifiers (a, an, some, any, much, many, a lot of)

Writing:

- Write a rules poster about their own school/house rules and healthy habits.

• يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات بكتابة التسميع والواجب المنزلي



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

respect (v. ed)	احترام/يحترم	set the table	يجهز المائدة
pay attention	ينتبه	chores (n)	أعمال منزلية
politeness (n)	أدب/تهذيب	place (v) (d)	يضع
good manners (n)	أخلاق حميدة/حسن الخلق	in order	بالترتيب/مرتب
feel proud	يشعر بالفخر	dust (v) (ed)	ينفض الغبار

Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

notebook (n)	كراسة	effort (n)	جهد
materials (n)	مواد/أدوات	plate (n)	طبق
understanding (n)	فهم	neatly (adv)	بشكل مرتب
friendship (n)	صداقة	until	حتى
behavioral (adj)	سلوكي	fork (n)	شوكة
goal (n)	هدف	especially (adv)	خصوصاً
learning (n)	تعلم	organized (adj)	منظم
bin (n)	سلة مهملات	treat (v) (ed)	يعامل
during	خلال	interrupt (v) (ed)	يقاطع
polite (adj)	مهذب/مؤدب	affect (v) (ed)	يؤثر
staff (n)	طاقم عمل / موظفون	arrange (v. d)	يرتب
welcoming (adj)	مُرْحَب	seem (v) (ed)	يبدو



Definitions

feel proud	يشعر بالفخر	feeling happy and confident ⁽¹⁾ about what you or others have done
good manners	أخلاق حميدة/حسن الخلق	behaving in a way that shows you are well-raised ⁽²⁾ and thoughtful ⁽³⁾
pay attention	ينتبه	to listen carefully and focus on ⁽⁴⁾ what is happening
respect (n/v)	احترام	to show care ⁽⁵⁾ and kindness ⁽⁶⁾ toward others

١. واثق
٢. ذو تربية حسنة
٣. مراعى لمشاعر الآخرين
٤. يركز على
٥. عناية/اهتمام
٦. لطف

politeness (n) ادب/تهذيب	saying "please," "thank you," and acting kindly in all situations ⁽⁷⁾	٧. مواقف ٨. مهام ٩. بشكل صحيح ١٠. يمسح
set the table يجهز المائدة	prepare the table for a meal	
chores (n) أعمال منزلية	tasks ⁽⁸⁾ or jobs that you do at home to help	
place (v) يضع	put something in a certain position carefully	
in order بالترتيب/ مرتب	arranged properly ⁽⁹⁾	
dust (v) ينفذ الغبار	clean something by wiping away ⁽¹⁰⁾ dirt or dust	

Expressions & Prepositions

follow/ have rules يتبع القواعد / لديه قواعد	make the bed يرتب السرير
raise hand يرفع يده	wash the dishes يغسل الأطباق
give a chance يعطي فرصة	on/ at the weekend في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
show respect / responsibility يظهر الاحترام / المسؤولية	do chores/ schoolwork يؤدي المهام المنزلية / الواجبات المدرسية
build friendship يبني صداقة	put away يضع (شيء ما) في مكانه
on time في الوقت المحدد	dust the shelves ينفذ الغبار عن الرفوف
throw trash يرمي القمامة	avoid distractions يتجنب المشتتات
stay focused يبقى مركزاً	



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
respect	احترام	honor		disrespect	قلة احترام
late	متأخر	delayed		early	مبكر
clean	نظيف	tidy		dirty	متسخ
focused	مركز	concentrated		distracted/ unfocused	مشتت / غير مركز
polite	مehذب	well-behaved		rude/ impolite	وقح / غير مهذب
safe	آمن	secure / protected		dangerous	خطير
simple	بسيط	easy		difficult	صعب
organized	منظم	neat/ arranged		messy/ disorganized	فوضوي / غير منظم

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ly	تحول الصفة إلى حال	carefully/ neatly/ especially
-ness	تحول الصفة إلى اسم	kindness/ politeness
-ship	تعبّر عن علاقة أو حالة تربط بين أشخاص	friendship
-al	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	behavioral
-ity	تحول الصفة إلى اسم	responsibility
-ence	تحول الصفة إلى اسم	patience
-ed	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	focused/ organized
-ion	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	distraction

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
mean	يعني/ يقصد	meant	meant
bring	يُحضّر/ يجلب	brought	brought
set	يجهز/ يضع	set	set
spend	يقضي (وقتًا)	spent	spent



Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

① affect (v) / effect (n)

• affect (v)

• يؤثر

Ex: Being late affects learning.

• effect (n)

• تأثير

Ex: Sleeping late has a bad effect on your energy.

② spend + V.ing

• يقضي (وقتًا).

Ex: At the weekend, I spend extra time cleaning my room, dusting the shelves, and arranging my clothes.

③ (be) allowed to + inf.

• مسموح له بـ.

Ex: I am not allowed to watch TV until I finish all my homework.

4 You should + inf./ You shouldn't + inf./ It's important to + inf.

تستخدم هذه التعبيرات عند إعطاء النصيحة أو قواعد عليك إتباعها

• You should + inf.

• يجب أن

Ex: You **should** respect your teachers.

• You shouldn't + inf.

• لا يجب أن

Ex: You **shouldn't** stay up too late.

• It's important to + inf.

• من المهم أن

Ex: It's **important** to treat your classmates with patience.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I spend my free time books.

a. read b. reading c. reads d. to read

2. Students are not allowed to phones in class.

a. using b. used c. use d. uses

3. Exercise has a good on the body.

a. affect b. affects c. effect d. affected

Reading

SB Page (86)

SB Page (86)

There are many things a student can do to be a good one.

To be a good student, I will always bring my books, notebooks, and materials so I can follow lessons and learn better. I will **raise**⁽¹⁾ my hand before speaking to show **respect**⁽²⁾ and give others a **chance**⁽³⁾ to share. I will listen carefully when the teacher is explaining, because **understanding**⁽⁴⁾ starts with **paying attention**⁽⁵⁾. I will **treat**⁽⁶⁾ my classmates and teachers with kindness, patience, and **politeness**⁽⁷⁾ -because respect builds strong **friendships**⁽⁸⁾ and a happy classroom.



استمع إلى النص



١. يرفع
٢. احترام
٣. فرصة
٤. الفهم
٥. الانتباه
٦. يعامل
٧. أدب/تهذيب
٨. صداقات

Behavioral Goals of a Good Student:

I will be on time for every class, because being late **interrupts**⁽⁹⁾ learning and shows poor **responsibility**⁽¹⁰⁾. I will help keep our school clean by throwing trash in **bins**⁽¹¹⁾. I will not use my phone during lessons, because I want to stay **focused**⁽¹²⁾ and avoid **distractions**⁽¹³⁾. I will be **polite**⁽¹⁴⁾ and kind to everyone- teachers, students, and staff- because **good manners**⁽¹⁵⁾ make school a safe and welcoming place. By following these rules, everyone can learn, grow, and **feel proud**⁽¹⁶⁾.

٩. يقطع/ يوقف
١٠. مسؤولية
١١. سلال المهملات
١٢. مركز
١٣. مشتتات
١٤. مؤدب
١٥. أخلاق حميدة
١٦. يشعر بالفخر



Audio Script SB Page (88)

Listen to Rania's audio.

Hi, I'm Rania. At home, I try to help my parents by following house rules and **doing chores**⁽¹⁾. Every morning, I make my bed **neatly**⁽²⁾ before I go to school. **I am not allowed**⁽³⁾ to watch TV until I finish all my homework, so I usually do my schoolwork first. In the evening, I **set the table**⁽⁴⁾ for dinner, **placing**⁽⁵⁾ the plates, forks, and glasses in order. After we eat, I help my mother wash the dishes and **put them away**⁽⁶⁾. At the weekend, I spend extra time cleaning my room, **dusting**⁽⁷⁾ the shelves, and **arranging**⁽⁸⁾ my clothes. Sometimes, I also help my little brother with his homework, especially in English. These small chores may seem simple, but they make our home **organized**⁽⁹⁾ and keep everyone happy.



١. يقوم بالأعمال المنزلية
٢. بشكل مرتب
٣. غير مسموح
٤. يجهز المائدة
٥. يضع
٦. أضع الاطباق في مكانها
٧. ينفذ الغبار
٨. يرتب
٩. منظم

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. "_____ " means behaving in a way that shows you are well-raised and thoughtful.

a. Building friendship b. Good manners c. Doing chores d. Paying attention

2. To feel _____ is to feel happy and confident about what you or others have done.

SB

- a. ashamed b. rude c. polite d. proud

3. _____ are the tasks or jobs that you do at home to help.

SB

- a. Distractions b. Materials c. Chores d. Manners

4. To _____ is to put something in a certain position carefully.

SB

- a. treat b. dust c. place d. respect

5. The word "_____" means clean something by wiping away dirt.

SB

- a. dust b. set c. arrange d. interrupt

6. "_____" means arranged properly.

SB

- a. Feel proud b. Good manners c. In order d. Pay attention

7. To _____ the table is to prepare the table for a meal.

SB

- a. sit b. seat c. set d. sat

8. To _____ attention is to listen carefully and focus on what is happening.

SB

- a. bay b. pay c. pie d. buy

Synonyms & Antonyms

9. My little brother is polite. The word "polite" is similar in meaning to _____.

- a. rude b. well-behaved c. impolite d. ashamed

10. The antonym of "late" is _____.

- a. dirty b. early c. tidy d. messy

11. Hala is organized. "_____" is an opposite of the word "organized".

- a. Neat b. Tidy c. Arranged d. Messy

12. Maher is focused in class. The word "_____" is similar in meaning to "focused".

- a. distracted b. unfocused c. concentrated d. delayed

Suffixes and Prefixes

13. To get the noun from the word "polite", we add the suffix _____.

- a. -ment b. -ship c. -ation d. -ness

14. The adjective from the word "behavior" can be formed by adding the suffix _____.

- a. -al b. -ive c. -ful d. -ed

15. To get the antonym of the word "focused", we add the prefix
 a. in- b. dis- c. un- d. ir-
16. We use the suffix to change an adjective into an adverb.
 a. -ed b. -al c. -ly d. -ility

Collocations & Guessing the meaning

17. Students should their teachers. SB
 a. arrange b. interrupt c. affect d. respect
18. Young people should show to the elderly. SB
 a. politeness b. chores c. staff d. behavior
19. After winning the first prize, we felt SB
 a. sad b. proud c. sleepy d. nothing
20. Students should their hand before speaking in class.
 a. rise b. raise c. seem d. treat
21. I always chores after finishing my homework.
 a. make b. get c. do d. arrange
22. We learn many rules to be very good students.
 a. behavioral b. unfocused c. impolite d. messy
23. You should the shelves to remove all the dirt.
 a. avoid b. raise c. dust d. throw
24. Please put your toys after you finish playing.
 a. way b. away c. a way d. ways

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

friendship - effect - attention - affect - respect

At school, good manners are very important for learning. Students show
 ① to teachers and staff. They raise their hand and pay ②
 during the lesson. Being polite and staying focused help everyone understand
 better. Interrupting others can ③ learning badly. Organized students
 keep their notebooks neatly and avoid distractions. Good behavioral rules
 help students reach their goal and build ④ with classmates.



Language

قواعد لغوية

Countable nouns & Uncountable nouns

Countable nouns الأسماء المعدودة

Things we can count one by one.

أشياء يمكن عدّها واحدًا واحدًا

Ex: plate, fork, glass, chore, rule,
book, apple, chair

Uncountable nouns الأسماء غير المعدودة

Things we can't count separately.

أشياء لا يمكن عدّها بشكل منفصل (أشياء لا تعد واحدًا واحدًا)

Ex: water, rice, money, information,
milk, juice

Quantifiers محددات الكمية

- Quantifiers are words used to show amount or number.

• محددات الكمية هي كلمات تُستخدم للتعبير عن المقدار أو العدد

1 a/ an:

a/ an + singular countable nouns أسماء مفردة تعد

- نستخدم (an) مع الكلمات المفردة التي تبدأ بصوت متحرك ونستخدم (a) مع الكلمات المفردة التي تبدأ بصوت ساكن.

Ex: I have a book.

- I saw a cat in the street.

Ex: She eats an apple.

- I bought an umbrella.

2 many: كثير من

• (تستخدم مع الأسماء الجمع القابلة للعد)

many + plural countable nouns أسماء جمع

- نستخدم (many) في الجمل المثبتة والمنفية وفي السؤال.

Ex: I have many pencils in my bag.

- There aren't many chairs in the room.

- How many apples are in the basket?

3 much: كثير من

• (تستخدم مع الأسماء التي لا تعد)

much + uncountable nouns أسماء لا تعد

- نستخدم (much) في النفي والسؤال و نادرًا ما تأتي في الجمل المثبتة.

Ex: I don't have much money.

- There isn't much sugar in my tea.

- How much juice is in the fridge?

4 a lot of/lots of كثير من

• (تستخدم مع الأسماء التي تعد والتي لا تعد)

a lot of / lots of + both countable and uncountable nouns أسماء تعد وأسماء لا تعد

- نستخدم (a lot of/lots of) في الجمل المثبتة والمنفية وفي السؤال.

Ex: I have a lot of books in my bag.

- There is a lot of sugar in the cake.

- I need a lot of time to finish homework.

5 **some:** بعض / بعضاً من

• (تستخدم مع الأسماء الجمع والأسماء التي لا تعد)

some + uncountable or plural nouns أسماء لا تعد و أسماء الجمع

- تستخدم (some) في الجمل المثبتة.

Ex: I have **some** water in my bottle.

- She has **some** friends at school.
- We bought **some** milk from the shop.



لاحظ: يمكن استخدام (some) في السؤال مع العرض و الطلب

Ex: Would you like **some** water? (عرض)

- Can I have **some** sugar in my tea, please? (طلب)

6 **any:** أي

• (تستخدم مع الأسماء الجمع القابلة للعد و الأسماء التي لا تعد)

any + uncountable or plural nouns أسماء لا تعد و أسماء الجمع

• تستخدم (any) في الجمل المنفية و في السؤال.

Ex: I don't have **any** water in my bottle.

- Are there **any** chairs in the classroom?
- Is there **any** milk in the fridge?

- ادرس البدائل الآتية للمحددات **Quantifiers**

Quantifiers	البدائل (بنفس المعنى)
many There are many books.	a lot of, lots of, plenty of, a large number of There are a lot of books.
much There isn't much rice.	a lot of, lots of, plenty of, a large amount of There isn't a lot of rice.
a lot of There are a lot of books. There is a lot of fish.	lots of, plenty of, a great amount of, many, much There is a great amount of fish.
some I want some milk. I want some pens.	a little/, a bit of (uncountable), a few /a small number /several (countable) I want a little milk./I want a few pens.
any There isn't any sugar.	no, none, hardly any There is no sugar.

Rewrite Tips:

- إذا وضع (many) بين الأقواس و كانت الجملة بها (much) نحول الكمية إلى الحاوية أو الأجزاء التي من خلالها نجمع الكمية

much bread= many loaves of bread much coffee= many cups of coffee

- إما إذا طلب (much) بدلا من (many) نضع الكمية مباشرة بعدها

Ex: How much water do you have?

- How many bottles of water do you have?

• الجدول التالي يوضح بعض التحويلات:

milk/ juice/ water	bottles/ glasses of	meat/ cheese	pieces of
tea/ coffee	cups of	chocolate	bars of
sugar	teaspoons of	bread	loaves/ slices of

Exercises on Language

Rewrite the sentences using the words between brackets:

1. There are a lot of students in the class. (many)

2. He has many books on his shelf. (a large number of)

3. I don't have many friends in this city. (a lot of)

4. How much coffee did you drink?  (many)

5. There aren't many chairs here. (a lot of)

6. We have a lot of work to do today. (much)

7. He drinks a large amount of water. (a lot of)

8. How many bars of chocolate did you have?  (much)

9. I don't have much money right now. (a lot of)

10. There isn't much milk in the fridge. (a lot of)

11. There isn't any bread on the table. (no)

12. I have no time to waste.  (don't have)

13. We saw no animals in the forest. (didn't see)
14. There isn't any juice left. (no)
15. There was no water in the pool. (wasn't)
16. I have some free time today. (a little)
17. How much sugar do you want in your tea?  (many)
18. I have a few friends who live nearby. (some)
19. We have some bread for breakfast. (a little)
20. I didn't find any solutions. (no)
21. There is a lot of food for everyone. (plenty of)
22. He has lots of toys. (a lot of)
23. There are plenty of hotels in this city. (a large number of)
24. I have a lot of friends in my school. (many)
25. She doesn't have many books in her bag. (a lot of)
26. He eats a large number of apples every day. (many)
27. There is no sugar in my tea. (any)
28. We don't have any money left. (no)
29. I have only a little free time today.  (much)
30. There are only a few students in the class.  (many)

General Exercises



on Lessons 1& 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The word "_____ " means saying "please," "thank you," and acting kindly in all situations.
 a. disrespect b. politeness c. hate d. chores

2. I feel very proud when I school rules.
a. show b. follow c. make d. stay
3. The word "....." is similar in meaning to "late".
a. simple b. delayed c. early d. pleased
4. To get the opposite of "organized", we add the prefix
a. in- b. dis- c. ir- d. ab-
5. It is important to focused while doing your homework.
a. put away b. stay c. make d. show
6. My bedroom is clean. The word "....." is similar in meaning to "clean".
a. tidy b. dirty c. rude d. distracted
7. Good make a good man. SB
a. chores b. manners c. shelves d. schoolwork
8. I feel to be Egyptian. SB
a. sad b. proud c. sleepy d. focused
9. I put my phone away to distractions while studying.
a. avoid b. dust c. throw d. build
10. To is to show care and kindness toward others. SB
a. arrange b. affect c. interrupt d. respect
11. We friendship by being kind and helpful to others.
a. treat b. allow c. build d. arrange
12. To get the noun from the verb "distract", we add the suffix
a. -ed b. -ion c. -ive d. -ment

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

effort - do - attention - set - allowed

Ahmed has a very organized daily routine. In the morning, after he makes his bed, he helps ① the table for breakfast. At school, he shows respect to teachers and pays ② in class. After school, he does his homework first. He is not ③ to play until he finishes. Then, he does chores like washing the dishes. His good manners and ④ make his parents feel proud.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

1. Omar reads many stories. (a lot of)
.....
2. We didn't buy fruit at the market. (any)
.....
3. They have a lot of horses on the farm. (many)
.....

4. We don't have much time before the train leaves. (a lot of)

5. She bought plenty of oranges for the juice. (lots of)

6. I have some friends who live abroad. (A few)

7. She bought a lot of apples. (many)

8. There is much sugar in my tea. (a large amount of)

9. We need a lot of information. (much)

10. They have no reason to be late. (don't have)

11. Plenty of people like football. (many)

12. How many loaves of bread do you eat?. (much)

4 Complete the following dialog:

Amira asks Basma about her chores.

Amira : Do you help at home?

Basma : Yes, I 1 ----- chores.

Amira : What chores do you do?

Basma : I 2 ----- my bed.

Amira : 3 ----- you set the table?

Basma : Yes, every evening.

Amira : 4 ----- do you do after dinner?

Basma : I wash the dishes.

5 Write a paragraph of 90 (NINETY) words on:

مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة

"Your school rules"



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

hygiene (n) النظافة الشخصية / الصحة العامة

البيئة المحيطة

surroundings (n)

Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

healthy (adj)	صحي	fit (adj)	لائق بدنياً
choice (n)	اختيار	physical (adj)	بدني / جسدي
balanced (adj)	متوازن	teenager (n)	مراهق
meal (n)	وجبة	screen time (n)	وقت الشاشة
whole grains (n)	حبوب كاملة	personal (adj)	شخصي
protein (n)	بروتين	illness (n)	مرض
key habit (n)	عادة أساسية	well-being (n)	رفاهية / صحة جيدة
sugary drinks (n)	مشروبات سكرية	engage (v) (d)	يشارك في
cycling (n)	ركوب الدراجات	relax (v) (ed)	يسترخي
lungs (n)	الرئتين	limit (v) (ed)	يحد من / يقلل
muscles (n)	عضلات	matter (v) (ed)	يهم

Expressions & Prepositions

follow healthy habits	يتبع عادات صحية	part of	جزء من
stay safe/ well/ strong/ active	يبقى آمناً/ بصحة جيدة/ قوياً/ نشيطاً	protect from	يحمي من
plenty of	وفرة من	take care of	يعتني بـ / يهتم بـ
reduce stress	يقلل التوتر	engage in	يشارك في
get enough sleep	يحصل على قسط كافٍ من النوم	keep fit	يحافظ على لياقة
care for	يعتني بـ	give energy	يعطي طاقة
		feel refreshed	يشعر بالانتعاش



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
healthy	صحي	fit/ well		unhealthy/ sick	غير صحي / مريض
smart	ذكي	intelligent/ clever		stupid	غبى

responsible	مسؤول	reliable	irresponsible	غير مسؤول
active	نشط	energetic	lazy/ inactive	كسول / غير نشيط
positive	إيجابي	hopeful	negative	سلبي
calm	هادئ	quiet	angry/ nervous	غاضب / عصبي
strong	قوي	powerful	weak	ضعيف
personal	شخصي	private/ individual	public	عام
balanced	متوازن	equalized/ healthy	unbalanced	غير متوازن
plenty	وفرة / الكثير من	enough	little	قليل

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-y	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	healthy/ sugary
un-	تعطي عكس المعنى	unhealthy/ unfit/ unbalanced
-ible	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	responsible
-ed	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	balanced/ focused/ refreshed
-al	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	mental/ physical/ personal
-ing	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	surrounding/ walking/ cycling/ running
-ness	تحول الصفة إلى اسم	illness
ir-	تعطي عكس المعنى	irresponsible/ irregular
in-	تعطي عكس المعنى	inactive

Reading

SB Page (90)

SB Page (90)

Read the following passage. What is **hygiene**⁽¹⁾?

Living a healthy life isn't difficult when we make smart and **responsible**⁽²⁾ choices. One important habit is eating balanced meals every day. Our bodies need fruits, vegetables, **whole**

grains⁽³⁾, and **proteins**⁽⁴⁾ to stay strong. It's also better to drink **plenty** **of**⁽⁵⁾ water instead of **sugary drinks**⁽⁶⁾.

Another **key habit**⁽⁷⁾ is staying active. **Engaging in**⁽⁸⁾ activities like walking, running, cycling, or playing football with friends helps keep the heart, **lungs**⁽⁹⁾,



استمع إلى النصوص



١. النظافة العامة
٢. مسؤول
٣. حبوب كاملة
٤. بروتينات
٥. وفرة من
٦. مشروبات سكرية
٧. عادة أساسية
٨. المشاركة في
٩. الرئتين

and **muscles**⁽¹⁰⁾ **fit**⁽¹¹⁾. **Physical**⁽¹²⁾ activity also **reduces**⁽¹³⁾ **stress**⁽¹⁴⁾ and gives us more **energy**⁽¹⁵⁾.

Getting enough sleep is just as important. **Teenagers**⁽¹⁶⁾ especially need at least eight hours of sleep each night to stay focused at school and feel **refreshed**⁽¹⁷⁾ during the day.

Caring for our **mental**⁽¹⁸⁾ health is part of living well. Talking to friends and family, relaxing, and **limiting**⁽¹⁹⁾ **screen time**⁽²⁰⁾ are great ways to stay positive and calm.

Finally, **personal**⁽²¹⁾ hygiene **matters**⁽²²⁾. Washing hands, brushing teeth, and keeping our **surroundings**⁽²³⁾ clean help protect us from **illness**⁽²⁴⁾ and keep everyone feeling good.

By making these healthy choices, we take responsibility for our **well-being**⁽²⁵⁾ and enjoy a happy, strong, and active life.

١. عضلات
٢. لائق بدنياً
٣. بدني
٤. يقلل
٥. التوتر
٦. طاقة
٧. مرهقون
٨. منتعش
٩. عقلي
١٠. تقليل
١١. وقت الشاشة
١٢. شخصي
١٣. يهم
١٤. البيئة المحيطة
١٥. مرض
١٦. الصحة والعافية

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Synonyms & Antonyms

1. I eat healthy food. The antonym of "healthy" is
a. fit b. well c. active d. unhealthy
2. Nelly is smart. The word "smart" is similar in meaning to
a. stupid b. intelligent c. weak d. lazy
3. Responsible students follow rules. "....." is an antonym of "responsible".
a. Constant b. Regular c. Irresponsible d. Reliable
4. The synonym of "positive" is
a. negative b. hopeful c. energetic d. sick
5. The opposite of "personal" is
a. private b. public c. individual d. hopeful

Suffixes & Prefixes

6. To get the antonym of "fit", we add the prefix
a. in- b. un- c. ir- d. dis-
7. The noun from the adjective "ill" can be formed by adding the suffix
a. -ment b. -ness c. -ition d. -ion
8. To form the adjective from the word "physic", we add the suffix
a. -ive b. -ful c. -ible d. -al

9. We add the suffix to get the adjective from the word "sugar".

- a. -ly b. -ed c. -y d. -ful

Collocations & Guess the meaning

10. Exercise helps to keep the fit.

SB

- a. eyes b. skin and bones
c. heart and muscles d. nails

11. Talking to friends and family is a way to take care of

SB

- a. money b. mental health c. homework d. sports

12. Personal hygiene includes

SB

- a. eating sweets b. washing hands
c. playing games d. watching TV

13. His was caused by a virus.

SB

- a. respect b. attention c. illness d. hygiene

14. Clean help students feel safe and focused.

- a. grains b. surroundings c. drinks d. muscles

15. Daily habits keep our bodies clean and healthy.

- a. respect b. study c. hygiene d. work

16. A diet helps teenagers grow strong and active.

- a. balanced b. fit c. weak d. little

17. Eggs and beans are good sources of

- a. metal b. protein c. drinks d. hygiene

18. Students should engage sports to stay active.

- a. in b. on c. at d. for

19. I healthy habits to feel energetic daily.

- a. protect b. take care c. stay d. follow

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

grains - matters - stress - surroundings - engages

Our football team wants to stay strong. Our coach says physical health ①
We eat plenty of protein and whole ② We avoid sugary drinks. We take care
of our ③ and keep our bags clean. Personal hygiene is very important. We
also get enough sleep. These habits protect us from injury and illness. They help us
reduce ④ and give us energy to play well.

General Exercises

on Lesson 3

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A. Write True (T) or False (F):



	T	F
1. Seif felt energetic and strong because he ate junk food.	☐	☐
2. Cycling was one of the new habits Seif started.	☐	☐

B. Listen again and complete the following questions:

- Seif ate junk food and had too much time.
- He decided to follow healthy to feel better.
- His positive choices helped his and mental well-being.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- You need to read more to keep your health. SB
 a. mental b. metal c. body d. arm
- Our bodies need fruits, vegetables, whole grains, and SB
 a. sweets b. proteins c. coffee d. salt
- Music can stress after a long day. It's relaxing.
 a. increase b. engage c. reduce d. matter
- We add the prefix to form the antonym of "active".
 a. dis- b. in- c. ir- d. ab-
- Parents care teenagers and guide them wisely.
 a. of b. with c. in d. for
- The suffix "....." is added to the word "surround" to form the noun.
 a. -ing b. -ment c. -ition d. -ness
- The word "....." is similar in meaning to "calm".
 a. angry b. nervous c. quiet d. worried
- Balanced meals energy and build strength daily.
 a. make b. give c. limit d. relax
- Exercise improves and reduces stress.
 a. well-being b. hygiene c. surroundings d. screen time

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

hygiene - well-being - balanced - refreshed - cycling

Sara is a responsible teenager. She made a plan for her ① She will eat balanced food. She will engage in ② for 30 minutes. She will limit her screen time to one hour. She will also take care of her personal ③ These smart choices will help her stay active, reduce stress, and feel ④ every day.

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Last year, I was unhealthy and inactive. My main activity was screen time, and I drank many sugary drinks. I felt tired and weak. I decided to make a change. My first choice was to follow healthy habits. I began with small steps: a balanced meal for breakfast and a short walk. Soon, I started cycling. It made my lungs and muscles stronger. I learned that personal hygiene and a tidy room are part of my surroundings that matter. Now, I feel refreshed, fit, and positive. I engage in sports and take care of myself. This journey taught me that health is a key habit for happiness.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- was the writer's main activity before making a change.
a. Screen time b. Cycling c. Walking d. Running
- "Engage in" means
a. relax b. limit c. reduce d. join

B. Answer the following questions:

- What's the main idea of the passage?
.....
- What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?
.....
- Do you agree with the writer that health is a key habit for happiness? Why/ Why not?
.....

5 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Healthy habits"

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- Why are healthy habits important?
- What should our meals contain?/ What should we eat every day?
- How many hours should we sleep daily?
- Why is hygiene important?
- What else can we do to keep healthy and strong?



استمع إلى المفردات
المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

on time	في الوقت المحدد	sign (v) (ed)	يوقع
forget	ينسى		

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

school principal (n)	مدير المدرسة	daughter (n)	ابنة
sharp (adj)	تماماً/بالضبط	hospitality (n)	كرم الضيافة
hallways (n)	ممرات	siblings (n)	أشققاء
instructions (n)	تعليمات	privacy (n)	خصوصية
grandchildren (n)	أحفاد	tidy (v) (ied)	يرتب/ينظم
son (n)	ابن		

Expressions & Prepositions

give instructions	يعطي تعليمات	welcome to	مرحباً بك في
on the first day of	في اليوم الأول من	touch the stove	يلمس الموقد



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
remember	يتذكر	recall		forget	ينسى
keep	يحافظ على	preserve/save		waste	يهدر

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ion	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	instruct <i>ion</i>
-ous	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	danger <i>ous</i>
-ful	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	care <i>ful</i>

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
forget	forgot	forgotten
ينسى		

Reading

SB Page (94)



استمع إلى النصوص

SB Page (94)

Read the conversation between the **School principal**⁽¹⁾ and three students (Ali, Osama, and Anwar) on the first day of school.

School Principal : Good morning, students. Welcome to our school!

Ali : Good morning, sir.

School Principal : Please remember to be **on time**⁽²⁾ every day. Classes start at eight o'clock sharp.

Osama : Yes, sir. What should we do if we are late?

School Principal : If you are late, go to the office and **sign**⁽³⁾ your name before going to class.

Anwar : Okay, sir.

School Principal : Don't run in the **hallways**⁽⁴⁾ and always keep your classrooms clean.

Ali : Sure, we will.

School Principal : And don't forget-respect your teachers and your friends.

All Students : Yes, Sir. Thank you for your **instructions**⁽⁵⁾!

١. مدير المدرسة

٢. في الوقت المحدد

٣. يوقع

٤. ممرات

٥. تعليمات

SB Page (94)

Parent : Children, I want to talk to you about our home rules. Please **1 tidy** your toys after you play.

Son : Okay, Dad. Should we also **2 wash** the dishes?

Parent : Yes, and don't **3 play** in the living room. It's dangerous.

Daughter : Can we watch TV before doing homework?

Parent : No, finish your homework before you **4 watch** TV.

Children : Okay, Dad. We'll follow the rules.

SB Page (96)

Read this model poster about Our House Rules.

Our House Rules:

- ① Always be polite and kind.
- ② Don't watch TV until homework is finished.
- ③ Share food and games with your **siblings**⁽¹⁾.
- ④ Help with house chores every day.
- ④ Respect each other's **privacy**⁽²⁾.

١. أشقاء

٢. خصوصية

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The welcomed students on the first day.
a. grandchildren b. school principal c. privacy d. hospitality
- My father the school form yesterday morning.
a. tidied b. touched c. signed d. welcomed
- To get the noun from the verb "instruct", we add the suffix
a. -ition b. -ion c. -ation d. -cion
- Students should arrive at school time.
a. at b. of c. with d. on
- The antonym of "remember" is
a. recall b. forget c. welcome d. sign
- The adjective from the word "danger" is formed by adding the suffix
a. -ful b. -ive c. -ous d. -able
- The teacher gives clear before every activity.
a. hospitality b. stove c. hallways d. instructions
- I my room before going to bed.
a. wash b. watch c. tidy d. play
- Egyptian people are famous for their
a. hospital b. hospitality c. instruction d. hallways

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

privacy - on - hospitality - forget - in

At home, my parents teach us good habits. They show ① to our guests. They give instructions to my siblings and me. We must tidy our rooms and respect each other's ② One important rule is to never touch the stove because it is dangerous. My mother asks us to help ③ the first day of every week. We never ④ to thank our parents for their care.

Speaking

Giving instructions:

إعطاء التعليمات:

1 Use imperatives: استخدم صيغة الأمر

- Inf.
- Don't + inf.

Ex: Be quiet. / Listen carefully.

Ex: Don't run. / Don't touch the stove.

2 Use polite forms: استخدم صيغ مهذبة

- Please

Ex: Please remember to tidy your room.

3 Use must/ mustn't:

Ex: - You must be careful at home.

- You mustn't run in the hallways.

How to respond كيفية الرد

- Yes, sir.
- Okay, I'll do that.
- Thank you for your advice.
- Sure, I will do that.

حسنًا يا استاذ.

حسنًا، سأفعل ذلك.

شكرًا لك على نصيحتك.

بالتأكيد سأفعل ذلك.

Question

Grandma: My dear children, you must be careful at home.

الجدّة: يا أولادي الأعزاء، يجب أن تكونوا حذرين في المنزل.

Grandma: Don't touch the stove, it's hot.

الجدّة: لا تلمسوا الموقد، إنه ساخن.

Grandma: Please remember to share food and games with your siblings.

الجدّة: من فضلكم تذكروا أن تشاركوا الطعام والألعاب مع إخوانكم.

Grandma: Don't forget to help with house chores every day.

الجدّة: لا تنسوا المساعدة في أعمال المنزل كل يوم.

Answer

Grandchild: How can we be careful, grandma?

الحفيد: كيف نكون حذرين يا جدتي؟

Grandchild: Okay, grandma.

الحفيد: حسنًا يا جدتي.

Grandchild: Sure, I will do that.

الحفيد: بالتأكيد، سأفعل ذلك.

Grandchild: Okay I'll do that.

الحفيد: حسنًا، سأفعل ذلك.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Do not touch the stove because it is
a. safe b. refreshed c. dangerous d. healthy
- Welcome our school, we hope you enjoy learning.
a. with b. at c. for d. to
- To get the adjective from the word "care", we add the suffix
a. -able b. -ful c. -ive d. -al
- Our school shows to parents and visitors.
a. siblings b. hospitality c. homework d. advice
- Parents instructions to keep children safe.
a. make b. do c. have d. give
- The word is a synonym of keep.
a. waste b. lose c. save d. harm

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

forget - sign - sharp - careful - remember

It was Adam's first day of school. He wanted to be on time, ① at 8 o'clock. His parents gave him instructions to be ② and polite. In the hallways, he saw many new students. The school principal stood at the door to welcome everyone. Adam had to ③ his name on a list. He tried hard to ④ his teacher's name. He felt a little nervous but excited to make new friends.

3 Complete the following dialog:

The librarian gives Ali some instructions.

Librarian : Welcome. Do you know the library rules?

Ali : Not all of them. ① you tell me?

Librarian : Of course. You must be quiet inside.

Ali : Yes, sir.

Librarian : Good. Please ② to put books back on the correct shelf.

Ali : ③ if I can't find the shelf?

Librarian : Then bring it to me. Don't leave it on a chair.

Ali : ④ , I'll do that.

Review on Unit 12

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

respect (n/ v)	احترام/ يحترم	set the table	يجهز المائدة
pay attention	ينتبه	chores (n)	أعمال منزلية
politeness (n)	أدب/ تهذيب	place (v) (d)	يضع
good manners (n)	أخلاق حميدة/ حسن الخلق	in order	بالترتيب/ مرتب
feel proud	يشعر بالفخر	dust (v) (ed)	ينفض الغبار
hygiene (n)	النظافة الشخصية/ الصحة العامة	surroundings (n)	البيئة المحيطة
on time	في الوقت المحدد	sign (v) (ed)	يوقع
forget	ينسى		



Language

قواعد لغوية

Countable nouns & Uncountable nouns

Countable nouns الأسماء المعدودة

Things we can count one by one.
أشياء يمكن عدّها واحدًا واحدًا
Ex: plate, fork, glass, chore, rule,
book, apple, chair

Uncountable nouns الأسماء غير المعدودة

Things we can't count separately.
أشياء لا يمكن عدّها بشكل منفصل (أشياء لا تعد واحدًا واحدًا)
Ex: water, rice, money, information,
milk, juice

Quantifiers محددات الكمية

- Quantifiers are words used to show amount or number.

• محددات الكمية هي كلمات تُستخدم للتعبير عن المقدار أو العدد

1 a/ an:

a/ an + singular countable nouns أسماء مفردة تعد

- نستخدم (an) مع الكلمات المفردة التي تبدأ بصوت متحرك ونستخدم (a) مع الكلمات المفردة التي تبدأ بصوت ساكن.

Ex: I have a book.

- I saw a cat in the street.

Ex: She eats an apple.

- I bought an umbrella.

2 many: كثير من

• (تستخدم مع الأسماء الجمع القابلة للعد)

many + plural countable nouns أسماء جمع

- نستخدم (many) في الجمل المثبتة والمنفية وفي السؤال.

Ex: I have many pencils in my bag.

- There aren't **many** chairs in the room.
- How **many** apples are in the basket?

3 much: كثير من

• (تستخدم مع الأسماء التي لا تعد)

much + uncountable nouns أسماء لا تعد

- تستخدم (**much**) في النفي والسؤال و نادرًا ما تأتي في الجمل المثبتة.

Ex: I don't have **much** money.

- There isn't **much** sugar in my tea.

- How **much** juice is in the fridge?

4 a lot of/lots of كثير من

• (تستخدم مع الأسماء التي تعد والتي لا تعد)

a lot of / lots of + both countable and uncountable nouns أسماء تعد وأسماء لا تعد

- تستخدم (**a lot of/lots of**) في الجمل المثبتة والمنفية وفي السؤال.

Ex: I have **a lot of** books in my bag.

- There is **a lot of** sugar in the cake.

- I need **a lot of** time to finish homework.

5 some: بعض/بعضاً من

• (تستخدم مع الأسماء الجمع والأسماء التي لا تعد)

some + uncountable or plural nouns أسماء لا تعد وأسماء الجمع

- تستخدم (**some**) في الجمل المثبتة.

Ex: I have **some** water in my bottle.

- She has **some** friends at school.

- We bought **some** milk from the shop.



لاحظ: يمكن استخدام (**some**) في السؤال مع العرض والطلب

Ex: Would you like **some** water? (عرض)

- Can I have **some** sugar in my tea, please? (طلب)

6 any: أي

• (تستخدم مع الأسماء الجمع القابلة للعد والأسماء التي لا تعد)

any + uncountable or plural nouns أسماء لا تعد وأسماء الجمع

• تستخدم (**any**) في الجمل المنفية وفي السؤال.

Ex: I don't have **any** water in my bottle.

- Are there **any** chairs in the classroom?

- Is there **any** milk in the fridge?

- ادرس البدائل الآتية للمحددات **Quantifiers**

Quantifiers

البدائل (بنفس المعنى)

many There are many books.	a lot of, lots of, plenty of, a large number of There are a lot of books.
much There isn't much rice.	a lot of, lots of, plenty of, a large amount of There isn't a lot of rice.

a lot of

There are **a lot of** books.
There is **a lot of** fish.

lots of, plenty of, a great amount of, many, much
There is **a great amount of** fish.

some

I want **some** milk.
I want **some** pens.

a little/, a bit of (uncountable), a few /a small number /several (countable)
I want **a little** milk./I want **a few** pens.

any

There isn't **any** sugar.

no, none, hardly any
There is **no** sugar.

Rewrite Tips:

- إذا وضع (**many**) بين الأقواس و كانت الجملة بها (**much**) نحول الكمية إلى الحاوية أو الأجزاء التي من خلالها نجمع الكمية

much bread = many loaves of bread much coffee = many cups of coffee

- إما إذا طلب (**much**) بدلا من (**many**) نضع الكمية مباشرة بعدها

Ex: How much water do you have?

- How many bottles of water do you have?

• الجدول التالي يوضح بعض التحويلات:

milk/ juice/ water	bottles/ glasses of	meat/ cheese	pieces of
tea/ coffee	cups of	chocolate	bars of
sugar	teaspoons of	bread	loaves/ slices of

**Speaking****Giving instructions:**

إعطاء التعليمات:

1 Use imperatives: استخدم صيغة الأمر

- Inf.
- Don't + inf.

Ex: Be quiet. / Listen carefully.
Ex: Don't run. / Don't touch the stove.

2 Use polite forms: استخدم صيغة مهذبة

- Please

Ex: Please remember to tidy your room.

3 Use must/ mustn't:

Ex: You must be careful at home. - You mustn't run in the hallways.

How to respond كيفية الرد

- Yes, sir. حسنا يا استاذ.
- Thank you for your advice. شكراً لك على نصيحتك.
- Okay, I'll do that. حسناً، سأفعل ذلك.
- Sure, I will do that. بالتأكيد سأفعل ذلك.

Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات انشائية ورسائل بريد الكتروني عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة

Lessons 1 & 2

At my school, we have clear rules that help everyone learn better. We should be on time for class because being late affects learning. It's important to pay attention and raise our hand before speaking. We must show respect to teachers, classmates, and staff. Students are not allowed to use phones during lessons, so we can stay focused and avoid distractions. We should keep our classroom clean by throwing trash in the bin and putting materials away neatly. These rules make our school safe, organized, and welcoming, and they help us feel proud.

Lesson 3

Healthy habits are very important because they help us stay strong and active. We should eat balanced meals with plenty of good food, like fruits and whole grains. We should drink water instead of sugary drinks. It is also important to engage in physical activities, like running or cycling, because it makes our muscles and lungs fit. We should take care of our personal hygiene by washing our hands. Keeping our surroundings clean is part of staying healthy. Finally, we should limit screen time and get enough sleep to feel refreshed every day.

Al-Azhar Test

It is important to follow home rules to show responsibility. We should always treat our family with respect and politeness. I help my parents by doing chores, like setting the table and dusting the shelves. Keeping our home tidy and organized makes everyone feel happy and proud.

Test on Unit 12

Following school rules is very important for all students. School rules help keep everyone safe and organized. We should arrive on time and bring our books and materials every day. It's important to pay attention in class and raise our hand before speaking. We should show respect to teachers, classmates, and staff by using good manners. Students are not allowed to use phones during lessons to avoid distractions. When we follow school rules, learning becomes easier, friendships grow, and everyone feels happy and proud at school.

Al Azhar

Test

A. Listening

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. How does Karim keep his desk?

2. Why is this habit good?

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

SB

Grandma gives her grandchildren some instructions.

Grandma : My dear children, you must be careful at home.

Grandchildren : 1 ?

Grandma : Don't touch the stove, it's 2

Grandchildren : Okay, grandma. Should we help with chores too?

Grandma : Of course! You can 3

Grandchildren : Okay, we will clean the living room.

C. Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. We should always show to older people. SB

a. respect b. impoliteness c. courage d. fear

2. Good can help you keep your body healthy. SB

a. respect b. study c. hygiene d. work

3. Would you like water before we leave ? SB

a. a b. an c. some d. many

4. There isn't time before we finish the test. SB

a. much b. an c. few d. many

4 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. We don't have some sugar left in the kitchen. SB (.....)

2. I drank many water after playing tennis. (.....)

3. The school principal gave us a lot instructions. (.....)

4. Shahenda bought some skirt yesterday. (.....)

5 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

Being smart is not just about school; it is about making healthy choices. A regular day should include physical exercise and mental rest. I spend time cycling in the park to stay active. I am careful not to spend too much screen time because it can make me feel distracted. Instead, I engage in hobbies that make me feel calm. Following a balanced routine helps me stay focused and keeps my body safe from illness.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why is it important to avoid spending too much screen time?

.....

2. How does the balanced routine help the writer?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b ,c or d:

3. Being smart is about making

a. school grades

b. a lot of chores

c. much screen time

d. healthy choices

4. The writer engages in hobbies that make him feel

a. nervous

b. active

c. calm

d. lazy

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences on:

"Home rules"

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test on Unit 12

A. Listening

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



A: Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. The teenagers spent their weekend being lazy and watching TV.	☐	☐
2. They felt refreshed at the end of the day.	☐	☐

B: Listen again and complete the following questions:

- The teenagers went to stay fit and safe.
- They ate balanced meals and avoided drinks.
- They felt proud of their

B. Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- is to say "please," "thank you," and act kindly in all situations.
a. Attention b. Sadness c. Politeness d. Chore
- To get the antonym of "responsible", we add the prefix
a. in- b. ir- c. ab- d. dis-
- We should always others, even when we disagree with them. SB
a. ignore b. disturb c. respect d. blame
- When the teacher is explaining something important, students should attention. SB
a. take b. pay c. give d. send

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

make - effort - chores - of - do

Learning responsibility starts at a young age. Students should bring their materials and ① their schoolwork on time. At home, helping with ② teaches them to care for others. Making healthy choices and following rules show good behavior. Responsibility is part ③ growing up. When they make an ④ every day, they become better students and better people, and they feel proud of themselves.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

The students in Class 5B decided to take care of their school surroundings. They brought bags and gloves. They picked up trash from the playground and dust from the classroom shelves. Their teacher gave instructions to work carefully and in teams. They sorted the waste and threw it in the bin. This effort made their school look clean and organized. The school principal thanked them for showing responsibility and respect for their environment. The students felt proud and refreshed after their hard work. They promised to continue following this good habit every month. Their teamwork also helped build stronger friendship among classmates.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The students' hard work made the school look clean and
a. dangerous b. dirty c. organized d. simple
- The students "picked up" trash. This means they the trash.
a. looked at b. collected c. forgot about d. bought

B. Answer the following questions:

- What's the main idea of the passage?

- What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

- Why is it important for students to take care of their school surroundings?

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

		T	F
1. The golden goose was a symbol of kindness and reward.	SB	☐	☐
2. Dummling became a gentle and wise prince.	SB	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

- Explain in your own words what the story teaches us about true fortune.

- Why do you think Dummling's kindness was more powerful than his brothers' cleverness or pride?

C. Writing

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. A large number of people visited the zoo. (a lot of)

.....

2. There is a lot of salt in the soup. (much)

.....

3. There aren't any pupils in the playground. (no)

.....

4. There are a few errors in your report. (some)

.....

7 Complete the following dialog:

Sherif and Mostafa are talking about the importance of physical activities.

Sherif : What is your favorite physical activity?

Mostafa : I love ① in the park with my siblings.

Sherif : That's cool! It keeps your heart and ② fit.

Mostafa : I also like walking to stay active.

Sherif : ③ it reduce stress?

Mostafa : Yes, and it gives me a lot of energy.

Sherif : I want to ④ in sports too.

Mostafa : Let's go together this weekend!

8 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words about:

SB

"The importance of following school rules"

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review (4)

Vocabulary



المفردات

natural (adj)	طبيعي	planet (n)	كوكب
sights (n)	مشاهد	environment (n)	البيئة
amazing (adj)	مدهش	generations (n)	الأجيال
forest (n)	غابة	balanced (adj)	متوازن
home for	موطن لـ	full of	مليء بـ
oceans (n)	محيطات	contain (v. ed)	يحتوي على
creatures (n)	مخلوقات	provide (v. d)	يوفر
insects (n)	حشرات	protect (v. ed)	يحمي



Audioscript



SB Page (98)



Audio Script

SB Page (98)

استمع إلى النص



The natural world⁽¹⁾ is full of amazing sights⁽²⁾. Forests provide homes⁽³⁾ for thousands of animals, while oceans⁽⁴⁾ cover most of our planet and contain⁽⁵⁾ many different kinds of life. Even small creatures⁽⁶⁾, like insects, play an important role⁽⁷⁾ in keeping nature balanced⁽⁸⁾. When people protect the environment⁽⁹⁾, the natural world becomes healthier and stronger for future generations⁽¹⁰⁾.

١. العالم الطبيعي
٢. مشاهد مدهشة
٣. توفر الموطن
٤. المحيطات
٥. تحتوي على
٦. المخلوقات
٧. دور
٨. متوازن
٩. البيئة
١٠. الأجيال

Lesson 1

1 A. Listen to the text and Write (T) True or (F) False:

	T	F
1. Forests are home to many animals.	☐	☐
2. Oceans cover only a small part of the Earth.	☐	☐
3. The text says insects are not important.	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

4. Think of ways we can protect the Earth in our daily life.

.....

5. Why is it important for everyone to work together to protect the environment?

.....

2 Complete the following dialog:

Lina and Omar are talking about how to help people.

Lina : I think it's important to help other people when we can.

Omar : ①

Lina : ② ?

Omar : Yes. Yesterday I helped my neighbor with her groceries.

Lina : That's nice! I usually help my little brother with his homework.

Omar : That's great . Helping others ③

Lina : ④

Omar : Helping others makes me feel happy.

3 Fill in the spaces with words from the box.

hygiene - warmly - powerful - landmark - politeness

- Showing to others makes conversations more pleasant.
- Good is important for staying healthy every day.

Review 4

3. She greeted us _____ when we arrived at her house.
4. His speech was so _____ that everyone listened carefully.
5. The old clock tower is a famous _____ in our city.

4 Write a poster of (90) words about:

"The rules students should follow during the next school trip"

Lesson 2

1 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

A sense of responsibility is an important quality that helps people make good choices. Responsible individuals think carefully before acting, and they understand how their actions affect others. For example, students show responsibility by completing their homework on time and helping classmates when needed. At home, responsibility can mean taking care of younger siblings, keeping shared spaces clean, or following family rules. In the community, responsible people respect public property and follow safety guidelines to protect everyone. Responsibility also includes admitting mistakes and trying to fix them. When people act responsibly, they build trust with others and create a safer, more positive environment. Developing a strong sense of responsibility is an important step toward becoming a reliable and caring person.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Responsible individuals think carefully before _____
a. reading b. acting c. sleeping d. laughing
2. Students show responsibility by completing their homework _____
a. slowly b. loudly c. on time d. in groups

B. Answer the following questions:

3. According to the text, how do responsible students behave at school?

4. What are two ways someone can show responsibility at home?

5. Why is admitting mistakes an important part of responsibility?

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- When the teacher is explaining something important, students should attention.
a. take b. pay c. give d. send
- The hikers stood quietly, looking up at the trees around them.
a. tiny b. weak c. broken d. towering
- Animals must to changes in their environment to survive.
a. adapt b. copy c. forget d. remove
- We should always others, even when we disagree with them.
a. ignore b. disturb c. respect d. blame
- Working with young children requires a lot of
a. noise b. patience c. fear d. speed
- I think it rain tomorrow, so take an umbrella.
a. will b. do c. did d. has
- Mount Everest is mountain in the world.
a. the highest b. highest c. high d. higher
- We don't have sugar left in the kitchen.
a. some b. any c. a d. an
- I would like water, please.
a. a b. an c. some d. many
- This book is than the one I bought last month.
a. cheaper b. cheapest c. cheap d. the cheapest

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets to give the same meaning:

- My friend isn't as tall as my brother. (than)
.....
- She doesn't have many friends. (some)
.....
- No other car in the race is faster than this one. (the fastest)
.....

The Story

4 A. Answer the following questions

1. Why did the princess laugh for the first time?

2. What did Dummiling do to marry the princess?

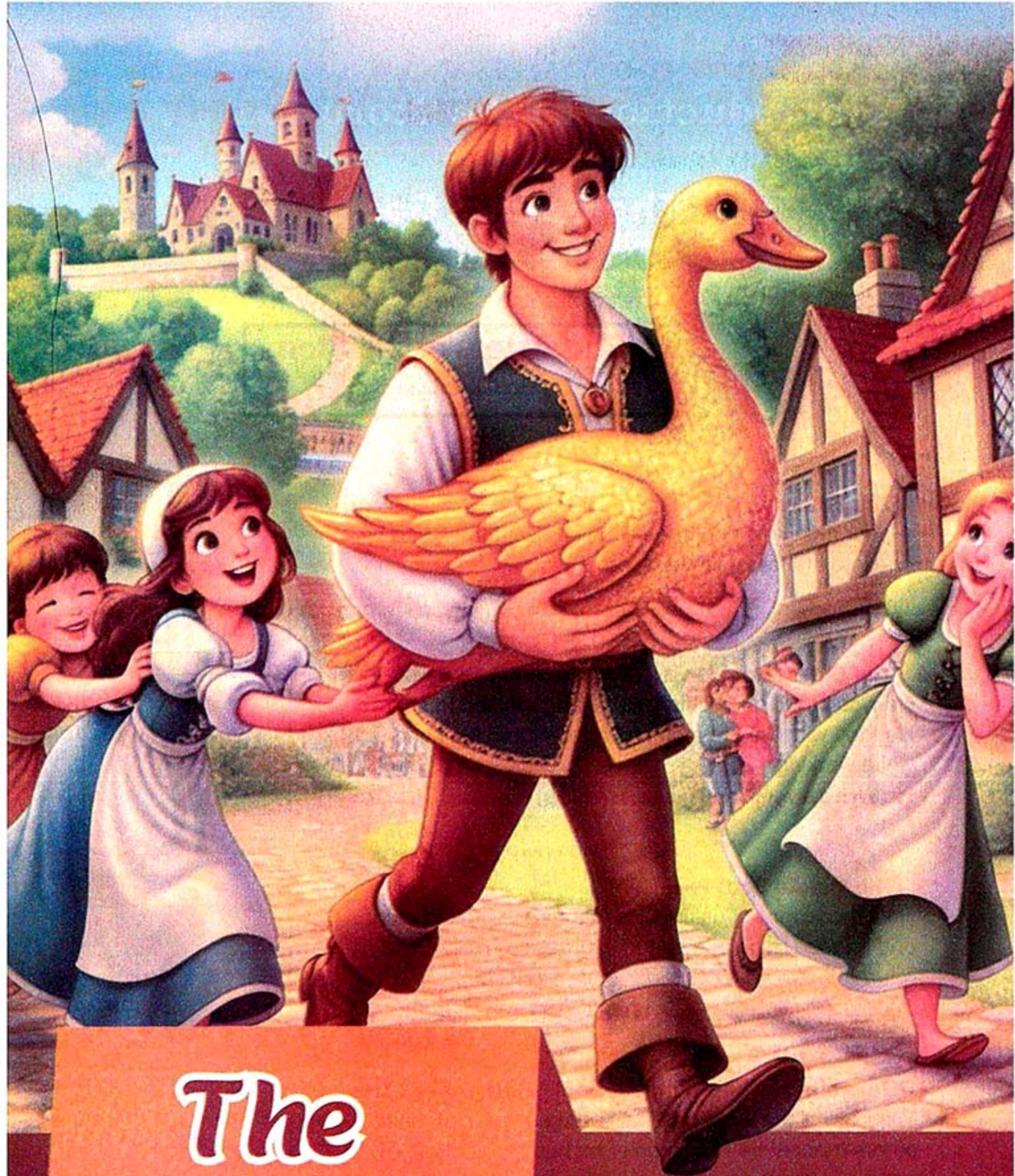
3. Why is Dummiling considered a wise and gentle prince by the end of the story?

B. Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. Dummiling made the princess laugh for the first time.	☐	☐
2. The king refused to let Dummiling marry his daughter even after he completed the challenge.	☐	☐
3. The story teaches that true wealth lies only in gold.	☐	☐

5 Write a paragraph of about (90) words on the following:

"How to help your parents"



The Golden Goose

Story Content

- Chapte 1: The Three Brothers
- Chapte 2: Dummling's Kindness
- Chapte 3: The Goose's Magic
- Chapte 4: The Long Procession
- Chapte 5: The Princess's Laughte
- Chapte 6: Dummling's Reward

The Golden Goose

Characters of the Story

شخصيات القصة

1. (The Father) الأب

- A poor man who had three sons and sent them one by one into the forest to cut wood.

• رجل فقير لديه ثلاثة أبناء، أرسلهم إلى الغابة لقطع الخشب.



2. (The Eldest Son) الابن الأكبر

- He was proud and selfish. He rudely refused to share his food with the old man and later injured his hand while working.

• كان مغروراً وأنانياً. رفض مشاركة طعامه مع الرجل العجوز فأصيبت يده أثناء العمل.



3. (The Middle Son) الابن الأوسط

- He was clever but unkind. He laughed at the old man and refused to help, eventually breaking his axe and returning with nothing.

• كان ذكياً لكنه غير طيب. سخر من الرجل العجوز ورفض مساعدته، فانكسر فأسه وعاد خائباً.



4. (Dummling - The Youngest Son) داملينج - الابن الأصغر

- The hero of the story and the youngest son. Although others thought he was simple, he had a kind and generous heart. Because of his kindness to the old man, he was rewarded with the golden goose and married the princess.

• هو بطل القصة، الابن الأصغر الذي كان الناس يظنونونه أحمقاً، لكنه كان يمتلك قلباً طيباً وكرماً. وبسبب كرمه مع الرجل العجوز، كوفئ بالإوزة الذهبية وتزوج الأميرة.



5. (The Old Man in the Forest) الرجل العجوز في الغابة

- A wise man who tested the brothers' kindness. He rewarded Dummling by guiding him to the tree where the magical goose was.

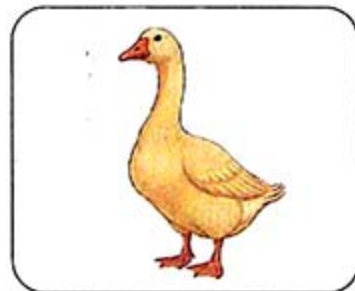
• رجل حكيم ظهر للأبناء ليدرس أخلاقهم. كافأ داملينج بإرشاده للشجرة التي بها الإوزة السحرية



6. (The Golden Goose) الإوزة الذهبية

- A magical bird with pure gold feathers. It has a magical power that makes anyone who greedily touches it stick to it, which created the funny parade.

• طائر سحري ريشه من الذهب الخالص. لديها قوة سحرية تجعل أي شخص طماع يحاول لمس ريشها يلتصق بها، وهي التي تسببت في تكوين الموكب المضحك



7. (The Hotel Owner) صاحب الفندق

- The owner of the small hotel where Dummling stayed; he had three greedy children.

• يمتلك الفندق الذي أقام فيه داملينج، لديه ثلاثة أبناء طامعين



8. (The Hotel Owner's Three Children) أبناء صاحب الفندق الثلاثة

- They tried to steal a golden feather from the goose and got stuck to it one by one.

• حاولوا سرقة ريشة ذهبية من الإوزة فالتصقوا بها واحداً تلو الآخر



9. (The Princess) الأميرة

- The King's daughter who never smiled or laughed until she saw Dummling's funny parade.

• ابنة الملك التي لم تضحك أبداً حتى رأت موكب داملينج المضحك



10. (The King) الملك

- The Princess's father who promised her hand to whoever made her laugh and kept his promise to Dummling.

• والد الأميرة الذي وعد بتزويجها لمن يضحكها، وقد وفى بعده لداملينج



Summary of the Story

ملخص القصة

The story begins with a poor father and his three sons. The two eldest brothers failed their woodcutting task because they were selfish and refused to help a hungry old man. However, the youngest son, "Dummling," whom everyone mocked, kindly shared his food with the old man. As a reward, the man led him to a special tree containing a goose with feathers made of pure gold.

During his journey, several greedy people tried to steal the golden feathers, but they magically stuck to the goose and to each other, forming a funny parade. When they reached the kingdom, the princess, who had never laughed before, saw the ridiculous scene and burst into laughter for the first time. The King kept his promise and allowed Dummling to marry her. Dummling became a wise and loved prince, proving that true wealth lies in kindness and modesty.

ملخص القصة:

تبدأ القصة بأب فقير لديه ثلاثة أبناء. فشل الابن الأكبر سنًا في مهمة قطع الخشب بالغابة لأنهما كانا أنانيين ورفضوا مساعدة رجل عجوز جائع. أما الابن الأصغر "داملينج"، الذي كان يسخر منه الجميع، فقد شارك طعامه مع العجوز بكل لطف. مكافأة له، أرشده العجوز إلى إوزة ذات ريش ذهبي خالص. أثناء رحلته، حاول الكثير من الناس الطامعين سرقة ريش الإوزة، لكنهم التصقوا بها وبيعضهم البعض بفعل السحر، مما شكل موكباً مضحكاً يتبعه الجميع. عندما وصلوا إلى المملكة، رأتهم الأميرة التي لم تضحك أبداً، فانفجرت من الضحك لأول مرة في حياتها. التزم الملك بوعده وزوجها لداملينج، الذي أصبح أميراً حكيماً ومحبوباً. لتثبت القصة أن الطيبة والتواضع هما الثروة الحقيقية.

Story Time

The Golden Goose

Chapter One

The Three Brothers

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

Once upon a time	يحكى ان	soon (adv)	سريعا/قريبا
poor (adj)	فقير	axe (n)	فأس
son (n)	ابن	slipped (v)	انزلق
eldest (adj)	الاكبر	injured (v)	أصاب
proud (adj)	متكبر/مغرور	angry (adj)	غاضب
selfish (adj)	اناني	kindly (adv)	بلطف
middle (adj)	متوسط/اوسط	drink (n)	مشروب
unkind (adj)	غير عطوف	not long after	لم يمر طويلا بعد
clever (adj)	ماهر	return (v.ed)	يرجع
kind (adj)	طيب/عطوف	turn (n)	دور
laugh (ed)	يضحك	succeed (ed)	ينجح
forest (n)	غابة	simple (adj)	ساذج/بسيط/متواضع
come closer	يقترّب	full of	ملئ بـ
rudely (adv)	بوقاحة	kindness (n)	العطف/الطيبة
refuse (v. d)	يرفض	forever (adv)	للأبد



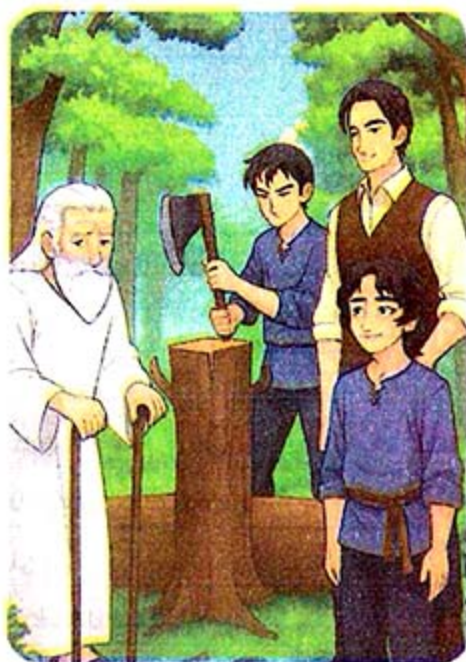
Definitions

selfish (adj)	أناني	not thinking about other people's needs or feelings
slipped (v)	انزلق	to slide ⁽¹⁾ out of your hand
axe (n)	فأس	a tool ⁽²⁾ used to cut wood
injured (v)	أصاب	hurt or wounded
succeed (v)	ينجح	to achieve ⁽³⁾ what you were trying to do
forever (adv)	للأبد	for all time without end

١. ينزلق
٢. أداة
٣. يحقق

- Read the following text.

Once upon a time⁽¹⁾, there was a poor man who had three sons⁽²⁾. The eldest was proud and selfish⁽³⁾, the middle⁽⁴⁾ son was clever but unkind⁽⁵⁾, and the youngest was kind and often laughed. People called him "Dummling", yet he had a good heart. One day, their father sent each son into the forest⁽⁶⁾ to cut wood. The eldest brother went first. As he worked, an old man came closer⁽⁷⁾ to him, asking for food and water. The eldest son, thinking only of himself, and rudely⁽⁸⁾ refused. Soon after, his axe⁽⁹⁾ slipped⁽¹⁰⁾, and he injured⁽¹¹⁾ his hand. Tired and angry, he went home with little to show. The next day, the middle



brother went to the forest. He too met the old man, who asked kindly⁽¹²⁾ for food and drink. The middle son laughed at him and walked away. Not long after, his axe broke⁽¹³⁾, and he returned home with nothing. Both brothers laughed at Dummling when their father told him it was his turn⁽¹⁴⁾, for they thought he could not succeed⁽¹⁵⁾. But Dummling, though simple, had a heart full of kindness⁽¹⁶⁾ that would soon change his life forever⁽¹⁷⁾.

١. يحكى أن
٢. أبناء
٣. أنا
٤. الأوسط
٥. غير عطوف/قاسي
٦. غابة
٧. اقترب
٨. بوقاحة
٩. فأس
١٠. انزلق
١١. أصيب
١٢. بلطف
١٣. انكسر
١٤. دور
١٥. ينجح
١٦. طيبة
١٧. للأبد

"في قديم الزمان، كان هناك رجل فقير لديه ثلاثة أبناء. كان الابن الأكبر مغروراً وأناانياً، والابن الأوسط ذكياً ولكنه قاسي القلب (غير طيب)، أما الأصغر فكان طيباً وكثير الضحك. كان الناس يطلقون عليه اسم "داملينج" (الأحمق)، ومع ذلك كان يمتلك قلباً صالحاً.

ذات يوم، أرسل والدهم كل ابن منهم إلى الغابة لقطع الخشب. ذهب الأخ الأكبر أولاً، وبينما كان يعمل، اقترب منه رجل عجوز يطلب طعاماً وماءً. رفض الابن الأكبر بوقاحة، مفكراً في نفسه فقط. وبعد فترة وجيزة، انزلق فأسه وأصاب يده. عاد إلى المنزل متعباً وغاضباً دون أن ينجح شيئاً يذكر.

وفي اليوم التالي، ذهب الأخ الأوسط إلى الغابة. وقابل هو الآخر الرجل العجوز الذي طلب منه بلطف طعاماً وشراباً. ضحك الابن الأوسط منه ومضى في طريقه. ولم يمض وقت طويل حتى انكسر فأسه، وعاد إلى المنزل خالي الوفاض.

سخر كلا الأخوين من داملينج عندما أخبره والدهما أن دوره قد حان، لأنهما اعتقدا أنه لن ينجح. لكن داملينج، رغم بساطته، كان يمتلك قلباً مفعماً باللطف من شأنه أن يغير حياته للأبد قريئاً.

Exercises on Chapter 1

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

SB Exercises

	T	F
1. The eldest brother was kind to the old man.	☐	☐
2. The middle brother's axe broke after he was rude.	☐	☐
3. Dummling was the youngest son.	☐	☐
4. The old man offered the brothers food and water.	☐	☐
5. Dummling's brothers believed he would succeed	☐	☐

Bit by Bit Exercises

	T	F
6. The poor man had four sons.	☐	☐
7. The eldest son was proud and selfish.	☐	☐
8. The middle son laughed at the old man and walked away.	☐	☐
9. The father sent his sons to the forest to hunt animals.	☐	☐
10. Dummling had a good heart.	☐	☐

B Answer the following questions:

SB Exercises

- How would you describe the eldest brother?
 ا. كيف تصف الأخ الأكبر؟
 - The eldest brother was proud, selfish, and rude. كان الأخ الأكبر متكبراً وأنانياً ووقحاً.
- Why did the eldest brother get injured while cutting wood?
 لماذا أصيب الأخ الأكبر أثناء تقطيع الحطب؟
 - He got injured because his axe slipped after he rudely refused to help the old man. أصيب لأن فأسه انزلق بعد أن رفض بوقاحة مساعدة الرجل العجوز.
- What can you tell about Dummling's personality from the last sentences?
 ماذا يمكنك أن تستنتج عن شخصية دملينغ من الجمل السابقة؟
 - Dummling is simple but has a "heart full of kindness". داملينج بسيط ولكنه يملك قلباً مليئاً بالعطف.

4. Who does the underlined word "He" refer to? إلى من تشير كلمة "هو" التي تحتها خط؟
 - It refers to the middle brother. تشير إلى الأخ الأوسط.
5. Why did the middle son's cleverness fail to save him from the same fate as his eldest brother? لماذا لم ينقذ ذكاء الابن الأوسط نفسه من المصير نفسه الذي لاقاه أخوه الأكبر؟

- His cleverness failed because he wasn't kind to the old man. لم ينقذه ذكاؤه لأنه لم يكن لطيفاً مع الرجل العجوز.

Bit by Bit Exercises

6. What did people call the youngest son? ماذا كان الناس يطلقون على الابن الأصغر؟
 - They called him "Dummling". كانوا يسمونه داملينج "الأبله".
7. What did the old man ask the brothers for? ماذا طلب الرجل العجوز من الإخوة؟
 - He asked them for food and water (or drink). طلب منهم طعاماً وماءً (أو شرباً).
8. How did the eldest brother treat the old man? ٩. كيف عامل الأخ الأكبر الرجل العجوز؟
 - He was rude and refused to give him anything. كان وقحاً ورفض إعطائه أي شيء.
9. What happened to the middle brother's axe? ماذا حدث لفأس الأخ الأوسط؟
 - His axe broke, and he returned home with nothing. انكسر فأسه، وعاد إلى المنزل خالي الوفاض.
10. Describe Dummling's personality in one sentence. صف شخصية داملينج في جملة واحدة.
 - He was a kind boy who had a good heart and often laughed. كان فتى طيب القلب، كثير الضحك.
11. Why did the brothers laugh at Dummling? لماذا سخر الإخوة من دمبلينج؟
 - They thought he could not succeed. ظنوا أنه لن ينجح.
12. What did Dummling have that was special? ما الذي كان يميز دمبلينج؟
 - He had a good heart full of kindness. كان قلبه طيباً مليئاً باللطف.
13. How did the eldest son feel when he came home? كيف شعر الابن الأكبر عندما عاد إلى المنزل؟
 - He was tired and angry. كان متعباً وغاضباً.
14. What makes Dummling different from his brothers? ما الذي يميز دمبلينج عن إخوته؟
 - He is kind while his brothers are selfish and unkind. هو طيب القلب بينما إخوته أنانيون وغير عطوفين.

Critical thinking questions

SB Questions

1. What qualities do you think make a person kind or unkind?

ما الصفات التي تجعل الشخص لطيفاً أو قاسياً برأيك؟

- Qualities that make a person kind are generosity, sharing with others even when you have little, and being respectful to elders.

من صفات الشخص العطوف: الكرم، ومشاركة الآخرين حتى في أوقات الشدة، واحترام كبار السن.

- Qualities that make a person unkind are selfish, thinking only of yourself, and acting rudely to those in need.

من صفات الشخص القاسي: الأنانية، والتفكير في الذات فقط، والتصرف بوقاحة مع المحتاجين.

2. Why do you think fairy tales often begin with "Once upon a time"?

لماذا تبدأ الحكايات الخرافية غالباً بعبارـة "كان يا ما كان"؟

- This phrase is a traditional way to start a story.

هذه العبارة طريقة تقليدية لبدء القصص.

3. Why do you think both of the older brothers faced bad luck after refusing to help the old man?

لماذا واجه الأخوان الأكبر سناً سوء حظ بعد رفضهما مساعدة الرجل العجوز؟

- Because they were selfish and unkind to the poor man.

لأنهما كانا أنانيين وقاسيين مع الرجل المسكين.

4. What lesson or moral do you think this story teaches about kindness and behavior?

ما الدرس أو العبرة التي تعلمها هذه القصة عن اللطف والسلوك؟

- The story teaches that true success comes from kindness and modesty.

تعلمنا القصة أن النجاح الحقيقي ينبع من اللطف والتواضع.

Bit by Bit Exercises

5. Why did the brothers laugh at Dummling when it was his turn?

لماذا سخر الإخوة من داملينج عندما جاء دوره؟

- Because they thought he was "simple" and not clever like them, so they didn't believe in him.

لأنهم ظنوا أنه "بسيط" وليس ذكياً مثلهم، لذلك لم يؤمنوا به.

6. In your opinion, what is more important: being clever or being kind? Why?

برأيك، ما هو الأهم: الذكاء أم اللطف؟ ولماذا؟

- Being kind is more important, because kindness helps people and brings good luck.

7. What does this story teach us about kindness?

ماذا تعلمنا هذه القصة عن اللطف؟

- Kindness is more important than being clever or proud.

اللطف أهم من الذكاء أو الكبرياء أو الغرور.

8. What makes Dummling different from his brothers?

ما الذي يميز داملينج عن إخوته؟

- He is kind while his brothers are selfish and unkind.

إنه لطيف بينما إخوته أنانيون وقساة.

9. Do you like Dummling or his brothers more? Why?

هل تحب داملينج أكثر أم إخوته؟ ولماذا؟

- I like Dummling because he is kind and has a good heart.

أحب داملينج لأنه لطيف وطيب القلب.

Exercises on Chapter 1

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

	T	F
1. The poor man had three sons.	☐	☐
2. The eldest son was kind and generous.	☐	☐
3. The middle son helped the old man in the forest.	☐	☐
4. The eldest son injured his hand because his axe slipped.	☐	☐
5. Dummling had a good heart and was very kind.	☐	☐
6. The father sent his sons to the forest to cut wood).	☐	☐
7. The two older brothers thought that Dummling could not succeed.	☐	☐
8. Dummling was the middle son	☐	☐
9. The old man asked for food and water	☐	☐
10. The middle son broke his axe	☐	☐
11. Dummling was unkind	☐	☐
12. People laughed at Dummling	☐	☐

**Answer the following questions:**

1. What did the father ask his sons to do?

2. Who went to the forest first?

3. How did the eldest son feel when he came home?

4. How many sons did the poor man have?

5. What did the old man ask for?

6. What did people call the youngest son?

7. Why do you think the eldest son refused to help the old man?

8. Why were the first two brothers unsuccessful?

9. Why do you think people laughed at Dummling?

10. What happened to the eldest son's hand?

11. What happened to the middle brother's axe?

The Golden Goose

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

reward (n / v. ed)	مكافأة / يكافئ	shining (adj)	لامع / براق
kindness (n)	شفقة / عطف	amazed (adj)	منبهر
adventures (n)	مغامرات	golden (adj)	ذهبي
greed (n)	طمع / جشع	gladly (adv)	بسرور
feathers (n)	ريش	guide (d) to	يرشد (شخص) لـ
magical (adj)	سحري	bless (v. ed / adj)	يبارك / مبارك
ordinary (adj)	عادي / مألوف	reveal (ed)	يكشف عن
pure (adj)	نقي	cut down (v)	يقطع

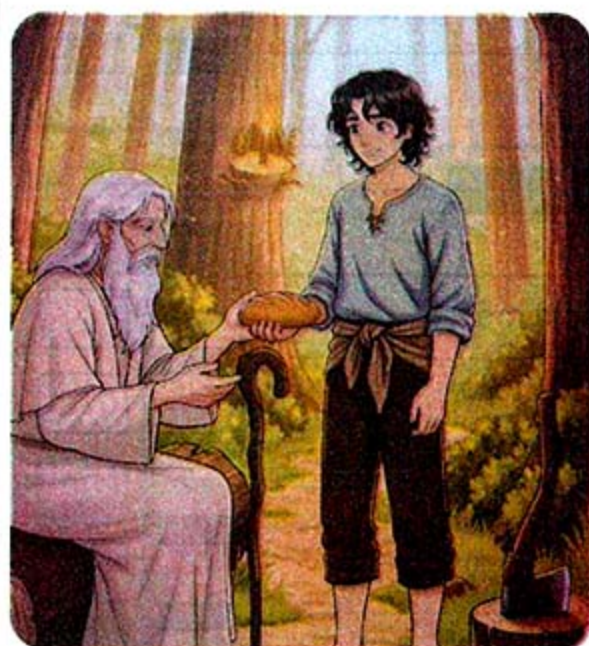


Definitions

blessed (adj)	مبارك	having received good wishes or kindness
shining (adj)	لامع	giving off bright light or glowing
adventures (n)	مغامرات	I exciting experiences where something suddenly happens
reveal (v)	يكشف عن	make something known that was hidden before
greed (n)	جشع / طمع	I want to have more of something than is needed
ordinary (adj)	عادي	not Interesting / usual

- Read the following text.

At last, it was Dummling's **turn**⁽¹⁾ to go into the **forest**⁽²⁾. Unlike his brothers, he **gladly**⁽³⁾ shared his bread and drink with the old man he met along the way. The old man smiled and **blessed**⁽⁴⁾ him, saying, "Because of your **kindness**⁽⁵⁾, you will be **rewarded**⁽⁶⁾". He **guided**⁽⁷⁾ Dummling to a special tree and told him to cut it down. When Dummling did, he found a goose inside with **feathers**⁽⁸⁾ made of **pure**⁽⁹⁾ shining gold. **Amazed**⁽¹⁰⁾ by this, Dummling gently **picked up**⁽¹¹⁾ the **golden** goose, wondering what **adventures**⁽¹²⁾ it might bring. That night, He stayed at a



small hotel at a busy market, which was owned by a man and his three children, while keeping the goose by his side. They were surprised by the bird's beauty. Greed filled their hearts as they thought of taking a golden feather for themselves. But the goose was not **ordinary**⁽¹³⁾-it had a strange, **magical**⁽¹⁴⁾ power that would soon **reveal**⁽²⁰⁾ itself in surprising ways.

١. دور
٢. الغابة
٣. بسرور
٤. بارك
٥. عطف
٦. ينال مكافأة
٧. يرشد
٨. ريش
٩. نقي
١٠. منبهر
١١. التقط
١٢. ذهبي
١٣. مغامرات
١٤. عادي
١٥. سحري
١٦. يكشف عن

وأخيراً، حان دور داملينج لدخول الغابة. على عكس إخوته، شارك بسعادة خبزه وشرابه مع الرجل العجوز الذي قابله في طريقه. ابتسم الرجل العجوز وباركه قائلاً: "بفضل لطفك، ستُكافأ". أرشد داملينج إلى شجرة مميزة وأمره بقطعها. عندما فعل داملينج ذلك، وجد بداخلها إوزة بريش مصنوع من ذهب خالص لامع. اندهش داملينج من ذلك، فحمل الإوزة الذهبية برفق، متسائلاً عن المغامرات التي قد تجلبها. في تلك الليلة، أقام في فندق صغير في سوق مزدحم، يملكه رجل وأطفاله الثلاثة، واحتفظ بالإوزة بجانبه. اندهشوا من جمال الطائر. ملأ الطمع قلوبهم وهم يفكرون في أخذ ريشة ذهبية لأنفسهم. لكن الإوزة لم تكن عادية - فقد كانت تمتلك قوة سحرية غريبة ستكشف عن نفسها قريباً بطرق مذهلة.

Exercises on Chapter 2

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

SB Exercises

	T	F
1. Dummling refused to share his food with the old man.	☐	☐
2. The old man showed Dummling a special house.	☐	☐
3. Dummling found a golden goose inside the tree	☐	☐
4. The hotel owner and his three children were kind and generous.	☐	☐
5. The golden goose had magical powers.	☐	☐

Bit by Bit Exercises

	T	F
6. Dummling shared his food and drink with the old man.	☐	☐
7. The old man was angry with Dummling.	☐	☐
8. The old man told Dummling to cut down a special tree.	☐	☐
9. Inside the tree, Dummling found a silver goose.	☐	☐
10. The goose had feathers made of pure gold	☐	☐

B Answer the following questions:

SB Exercises

1. What does Dummling's behavior show about his personality?

- ماذا يبين سلوك داملينج عن شخصيته؟

- It shows that he is kind and generous.

- يوضح أنه عطوف وكريم

2. Why did the old man help Dummling but not his brothers?

- لماذا ساعد الرجل العجوز داملينج وليس اخوته؟

- Because Dummling's brothers were not kind or generous.

- لأن إخوة داملينج لم يكونوا عطوفين أو كرماء

3. What happened when Dummling was kind to the old man?

- ماذا حدث عندما كان داملينج عطوفا تجاه الرجل العجوز؟

- The old man decided to reward him.

قرر الرجل العجوز أن يكافئه

Bit by Bit Exercises

4. What did Dummling share with the old man?

ما الذي قام داملينج بمشاركته مع الرجل العجوز؟

- He shared his food with the old man.

قام بمشاركة طعامه مع الرجل العجوز

5. Where did the old man guide Dummling?

إلى أين أُرشد الرجل العجوز داملينج؟

- He guided him to a special tree and told him to cut it down.

أُرشده إلى شجرة خاصة وطلب منه أن يقطعها.

6. What did Dummling find inside the tree?

ماذا وجد داملينج بداخل الشجرة؟

- He found a goose with gold feathers.

وجد أوزة لها ريش مصنوع من الذهب

7. How did Dummling feel when he saw the golden goose?

كيف شعر داملينج عندما رأى الأوزة الذهبية؟

- He felt amazed.

كان مذهولا

8. Who owned the small hotel?

من الذي كان يمتلك الفندق؟

- A man and his three children

رجل وأولاده الثلاثة.

9. Why were the man and his children surprised?

- Because of the goose's beauty.

بسبب جمال الأوزة

10. What was special about the golden goose?

ما الذي كان يميز الأوزة الذهبية؟

- Its feathers were made of pure gold.

كان ريشها مصنوعا من الذهب الخالص

Critical thinking questions

SB Exercises

1. Why do you think the man rewarded Dummling?

في رأيك لماذا كافأ الرجل العجوز داملينج؟

- Because he was kind and generous.

لأنه كان عطوفا و كريما

2. Do you agree with the behavior of the hotel owner? Why or why not?

هل تتفق مع سلوك مالك الفندق وأولاده؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't. Because greed is bad.

لا أتفق معهم. لأن الطمع شيء سيء.

Bit by Bit Exercises

3. How was Dummling different from his brothers? كيف كان داملينج مختلفا عن إخوته؟

- Dummling was kind and shared his food, unlike his greedy brothers.

كان داملينج كريما وشارك طعامه، بخلاف إخوته.

4. Why do you think the old man decided to help Dummling?

في رأيك لماذا قرر الرجل العجوز أن يساعد داملينج؟

- Because Dummling was generous and kind. لأن داملينج كان كريما وعطوفا

5. Why do you think the hotel owner and his children felt "greed" in their hearts?

في رأيك لماذا شعر مالك الفندق وأولاده بالجشع في قلوبهم؟

- Because the goose had feathers made of pure gold, and they wanted it for themselves.

لأن الأوزة كان له ريش مصنوع من الذهب الخالص وقد أرادوه لأنفسهم.

Exercises on Chapter 2

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

	T	F
1. Dummling was afraid of the golden goose.	☐	☐
2. Dummling stayed at a big hotel in a quiet place.	☐	☐
3. The hotel owner had three children.	☐	☐
4. The hotel family wanted to help Dummling hide the goose.	☐	☐
5. The goose was a normal bird without special powers.	☐	☐
6. Dummling was the last brother to go into the forest.	☐	☐
7. Dummling did not share his food with the old man.	☐	☐
8. The old man was angry with Dummling.	☐	☐
9. Dummling cut down a special tree.	☐	☐
10. Inside the tree was a normal brown goose.	☐	☐

11. The goose's feathers were made of gold.

--	--

12. The hotel owner's family thought the goose was ugly.

--	--

B Answer the following questions:

1. Where did Dummling find the goose?

2. What were the goose's feathers made of?

3. Who owned the hotel?

4. What kind of power did the goose have?

5. Do you think Dummling deserves the golden goose? Why/Why not?

6. What lesson can we learn from Dummling's kindness?

7. What did Dummling do when he met the old man?

8. What did the old man give Dummling for his kindness?

9. How did Dummling feel when he saw the golden goose?

10. What do you think will happen next with the goose?

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

goose (n.)	إوزة	curious(adj.)	فضولي
gather (v.ed)	يتجمع	glow (ed.)	يلمع
attention (n.)	انتباه	stuck (v)	التصق
unaware (adj.)	غير مدرك	attached (adj.)	مرتبط
magical (adj.)	سحري	puzzled (adj.)	متحير
sight (n.)	منظر	stare (d.)	يحملق



Definitions

curious (adj)	فضولي	wanting to know or learn something
attached (adj)	مرتبط	Joined with something or someone
puzzled (adj)	متحير	feeling confused ⁽¹⁾ because you don't understand something
attract (v)	يجذب	to pull to someone or something
stuck (v)	التصق	fixed In ⁽²⁾ one place and can't be moved
unaware (adj)	غير مدرك	have no knowledge ⁽³⁾ of a situation

- Read the following text.

When Dummling brought the **goose**⁽¹⁾ to the hotel where he stayed, **curious**⁽²⁾ people **gathered**⁽³⁾ to look at it. The goose **glowed**⁽⁴⁾ **brightly**⁽⁵⁾, attracting everyone's **attention**⁽⁶⁾. The hotel **owner's**⁽⁷⁾ three children tried to **steal**⁽⁸⁾ one of its golden **feathers**⁽⁹⁾. But as soon as the eldest touched the goose, his hand **stuck**⁽¹⁰⁾ fast. The second son tried to help, but he also stuck. Then the youngest son, too, became **attached**⁽¹¹⁾. In the morning,



Dummling woke up, **unaware**⁽¹²⁾ of what had happened. He **picked up**⁽¹³⁾ the goose and left the hotel. To his surprise, the three children followed him, still stuck to the magical **bird**⁽¹⁴⁾. People **stared**⁽¹⁵⁾ as they walked down the road, **laughing at**⁽¹⁶⁾ the strange **sight**⁽¹⁷⁾. Dummling, **though puzzled**⁽¹⁸⁾, continued walking, with the goose under his arm and the three children following him, unable to break free.

١. إوزة
٢. فضولي
٣. يتجمع
٤. يلمع
٥. بشدة
٦. انتباه
٧. المالك
٨. يسرق
٩. الريش الذهبي
١٠. التصقت
١١. مرتبط
١٢. غير مدرك
١٣. يلتقط
١٤. الطائر السحري
١٥. يحملق
١٦. يضحك علي
١٧. المنظر الغريب
١٨. متحير

عندما أحضر داملينج الإوزة إلى الفندق الذي كان يقيم فيه، تجمع الناس الفضوليون لمشاهدتها. كانت الإوزة تتوهج بشدة، جاذبة انتباه الجميع. حاول أبناء صاحب الفندق الثلاثة سرقة إحدى ريشاتها الذهبية. ولكن ما إن لمس الابن الأكبر الإوزة حتى التصقت يده بها. حاول الابن الثاني مساعدته، لكنه التصق هو الآخر. ثم تعلق الابن الأصغر بها أيضاً. في الصباح، استيقظ داملينج غير مدرك لما حدث. حمل الإوزة وغادر الفندق. ولدهشته، تبعه الأطفال الثلاثة، وهم لا يزالون ملتصقين بالطائر السحري. حقد الناس بهم وهم يسيرون في الطريق، يضحكون على هذا المنظر الغريب. واصل داملينج سيره، رغم حيرته، والإوزة تحت ذراعه والأطفال الثلاثة يتبعونه، غير قادرين على التخلص منها.

Exercises on Chapter 3**A** Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

SB Exercises

	T	F
1. The hotel owner's sons were afraid of the goose.	☐	☐
2. The goose had a magical power that made people stick to it.	☐	☐
3. Only one son tried to take a golden feather.	☐	☐
4. Dummling knew that the sons were stuck to the goose.	☐	☐
5. People laughed when they saw Dummling and the boys walking down the road.	☐	☐

Bit by Bit Exercises

	T	F
6. Curious people gathered to see the goose.	☐	☐
7. The goose was glowing brightly.	☐	☐
8. Dummling left the hotel without taking the goose.	☐	☐
9. The three children followed Dummling still stuck to the goose.	☐	☐
10. The goose flew away while Dummling walked.	☐	☐
11. Everyone laughed at the unusual scene.	☐	☐
12. Dummling carried the goose under his arm.	☐	☐
13. The children were able to free themselves easily.	☐	☐

14. The hotel owner tried to catch Dummling and the goose.

☐ ☐

15. The magical bird had golden feathers.

☐ ☐

16. The eldest son tried to steal a feather.

☐ ☐

17. The goose stopped glowing when people watched it.

☐ ☐

18. Dummling noticed immediately that the children were stuck.

☐ ☐

19. The youngest son became attached to the goose last.

☐ ☐

20. The magical goose had no golden feathers.

☐ ☐

B Answer the following questions:

SB Exercises

1. What happened first: the eldest son touched the goose or Dummling woke up?

ماذا حدث أولاً: هل لمس الابن الأكبر الإوزة أم استيقظ داملينج؟

- The eldest son touched the goose first. Dummling woke up later.

لمس الابن الأكبر الإوزة أولاً. استيقظ داملينج بعد ذلك.

2. What do the boys' actions tell us about their personalities?

ماذا تخبرنا تصرفات الأولاد عن شخصياتهم؟

- Their actions show that they are greedy and careless because they tried to steal the goose's golden feathers.

تصرفاتهم تظهر أنهم طماعون ومستهترون لأنهم حاولوا سرقة الريش الذهبي للإوزة.

3. How do you think Dummling felt when he saw the three boys following him?

كيف تعتقد أن دوملينج شعر عندما رأى الأولاد الثلاثة يتبعونه؟

- Dummling probably felt surprised and puzzled to see them stuck to the goose.

ربما شعر دوملينج بالدهشة والحيرة عندما رأى الأولاد عالقين بالإوزة.

Bit by Bit Exercises

1. Who brought the goose to the hotel?
- Dummling.
من أحضر الإوزة إلى الفندق؟
داملينج.
2. What did curious people do when they saw the goose?
ماذا فعل الناس الفضوليون عندما رأوا الإوزة؟
- They gathered to look at it.
تجمعوا للنظر إليها.
3. How did the goose look?
كيف بدت الإوزة؟
- It glowed brightly.
كانت تتوهج بشدة.
4. Who tried to steal one of the golden feathers?
من حاول سرقة أحد الريشات الذهبية؟
- The hotel owner's three children.
أطفال صاحب الفندق الثلاثة.
5. What happened when the eldest touched the goose?
ماذا حدث عندما لمس الأكبر الإوزة؟
- His hand stuck fast.
علقت يده بقوة.
6. What about the youngest son?
ماذا عن الابن الأصغر؟
- He became attached too.
لقد أصبح عالقًا أيضًا.
7. How did people react when they saw Dummling and the children?
كيف تفاعل الناس عندما رأوا داملينج والأطفال؟
- They stared and laughed at the strange sight.
حدقوا وضحكوا من المشهد الغريب.

Critical thinking Exercises

SB Exercises

1. If you were one of the sons, what would you do differently?
إذا كنت واحدًا من الأبناء، ماذا كنت ستفعل بشكل مختلف؟
- If I were one of the sons, I would not try to steal the goose's golden feather. I would respect others' belongings and avoid being greedy.
إذا كنت واحدًا من الأبناء، لما حاولت سرقة الريشة الذهبية للإوزة. كنت سأحترم ممتلكات الآخرين وأتجنب الطمع.
2. How does this part of the story show that greed can lead to problems?
كيف يظهر هذا الجزء من القصة أن الطمع قد يؤدي إلى مشاكل؟
- This part of the story shows that greed causes problems because the sons got stuck to the goose when they tried to take its feather. Their selfishness made them unable to move and embarrassed them.
هذا الجزء من القصة يوضح أن الطمع يسبب المشاكل لأن الأبناء تعلقوا بالإوزة عندما حاولوا أخذ الريشة. جعلهم أنانيتهم غير قادرين على الحركة وأحرجتهم.

Bit by Bit Exercises

3. Why did so many people gather when Dummling brought the goose to the hotel?

لماذا تجمع الكثير من الناس عندما أحضر دمملينغ الإوزة إلى الفندق؟

- Because the goose was glowing brightly and attracted attention.

لأن الإوزة كانت تتوهج بشدة وجذبت الانتباه.

4. Why did the hotel owner's children try to steal a feather?

لماذا حاول أطفال صاحب الفندق سرقة ريشة؟

- They wanted the golden feathers for themselves.

لقد أرادوا الريشات الذهبية لأنفسهم.

5. Why did the children get stuck to the goose?

لماذا علق الأطفال بالإوزة؟

- Because the goose was magical and prevented them from stealing its feathers.

لأن الإوزة كانت سحرية ومنعتهم من سرقة ريشها.

6. Why was Dummling unaware of what had happened in the morning?

لماذا لم يكن دمملينغ واعيًا لما حدث في الصباح؟

- He didn't know the children had touched the goose.

لم يكن يعلم أن الأطفال لمسوا الإوزة.

7. What does it mean that the youngest son "became attached"?

ماذا يعني أن الابن الأصغر "أصبح عالقًا"؟

- He also got stuck to the magical goose like his brothers.

لقد علق أيضًا بالإوزة السحرية مثل إخوته.

8. What does this story teach about greed or stealing?

ماذا تعلمنا هذه القصة عن الطمع أو السرقة؟

- Trying to steal from others can lead to trouble or unexpected consequences.

محاولة السرقة تؤدي إلى المشاكل أو عواقب غير متوقعة.

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

amazement (n)	ذهول / دهشة	challenge (n)	تحدي
wonder (n)	تعجب / دهشة	let go (phr)	يُفلت / يطلق سراح
parade (n)	موكب احتفالي	struggle (v) (d)	يكافح / يبذل جهداً شاقاً
without	بدون	magical (adj)	سحري
stuck (adj)	عالق / ملتصق	laughter (n)	ضحك / ضحكات
choice (n)	اختيار	foolish (adj)	أحمق / غبي
schoolmaster (n)	ناظر مدرسة	strange (adj)	غريب
sight (n)	مشهد	royal palace (n)	قصر ملكي
free (adj)	حر	follow (v) (ed)	يتبع
instead (adv)	بدلاً من	pull (v) (ed)	يسحب / يجر
soldier (n)	جندي	cause (v) (d)	يسبب
unable (adj)	غير قادر	point (v) (ed)	يشير
join in	ينضم إلى / يشارك في	lead to	يؤدي إلى
along the way	على طول الطريق	wait for	ينتظر
laugh at	يضحك على	take place	يحدث / يقع



Definitions

struggling (v)	يقاوم / يكافح	trying very hard to do something that is difficult
amazement (n)	ذهول / دهشة	a strong feeling of great surprise ⁽¹⁾
parade (n)	موكب احتفالي	a group of people moving together in a celebration ⁽²⁾
challenge (n)	تحدي	a difficult situation that tests someone's strength ⁽³⁾ , or courage ⁽⁴⁾
let go (phr)	يُفلت / يطلق سراح	allow someone to go free
wonder (v)	تعجب / يتعجب / يتساءل	want to know something

١. مفاجأة
٢. احتفال
٣. قوة
٤. شجاعة

- Read the following text.

Dummling walked down the road with the goose under his arm. Behind him, the three boys were **stuck**⁽¹⁾, **struggling**⁽²⁾ and crying, but they had no **choice**⁽³⁾ but to follow. Along the way, a **schoolmaster**⁽⁴⁾ laughed at the **sight**⁽⁵⁾ and tried to pull them **free**⁽⁶⁾. Instead, he stuck fast as well. Soon, a farmer joined in, and then a soldier, and even more people.

A lot of people followed Dummling through the village, all



unable⁽⁷⁾ to let go of the **magical**⁽⁸⁾ goose. The **sight**⁽⁹⁾ caused **laughter**⁽¹⁰⁾ and **amazement**⁽¹¹⁾ wherever they went. Children clapped, and villagers pointed in **wonder**⁽¹²⁾. Dummling, who had once been seen **foolish**⁽¹³⁾, now walked proudly at the front of this strange **parade**⁽¹⁴⁾. He did not know it yet, but his journey was leading him to **the royal palace**⁽¹⁵⁾, where an unusual **challenge**⁽¹⁶⁾ was waiting for him.

١. عالق
٢. يكافح/يبذل جهداً
٣. شاقاً
٤. ناظر مدرسة
٥. حر
٦. جندي
٧. غير قادر
٨. يفلت
٩. سحري
١٠. ضحك
١١. دهشة
١٢. تعجب
١٣. أحمق/غبي
١٤. موكب
١٥. القصر الملكي
١٦. تحدي

سار داملينج في الطريق حاملاً الإوزة تحت ذراعه. خلفه، كان الأولاد الثلاثة عالقين، يكافحون ويبكون، ولم يكن أمامهم خيار سوى اللحاق به. في الطريق، ضحك معلم من المنظر وحاول تحريرهم، لكنه علق هو الآخر. سرعان ما انضم إليهم فلاح، ثم جندي، ثم المزيد من الناس. تبع الكثير من الناس داملينج عبر القرية، جميعهم غير قادرين على ترك الإوزة السحرية. أثار المنظر الضحك والدهشة أينما ذهبوا. صفق الأطفال، وأشار القرويون في دهشة. داملينج، الذي كان يُنظر إليه سابقاً على أنه أحمق، سار الآن بفخر في مقدمة هذا الموكب الغريب. لم يكن يعلم بعد، لكن رحلته كانت تقوده إلى القصر الملكي، حيث كان ينتظره تحدٍ غير عادي.

Exercises on Chapter 4

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

SB Exercises

	T	F
1. The boys were happy to follow Dummling.	☐	☐
2. The schoolmaster was able to free the boys.	☐	☐
3. More and more people became stuck to the goose.	☐	☐
4. The villagers were angry when they saw Dummling's parade.	☐	☐
5. Dummling was walking toward the royal palace.	☐	☐

Bit by Bit Exercises

	T	F
6. Dummling carried a magical goose under his arm.	☐	☐
7. The three boys had a choice and could leave if they wanted to.	☐	☐
8. The magical goose made it easy for people to let go.	☐	☐
9. The sight of the parade caused people to feel sadness.	☐	☐
10. Children clapped and people pointed in wonder at the parade.	☐	☐
11. Dummling felt ashamed because people laughed at him.	☐	☐
12. In the past, people thought Dummling was foolish.	☐	☐
13. The challenge waiting at the palace was very common and usual.	☐	☐

14. The goose would lead Dummling to the royal palace.

☐ ☐

15. The sight of the parade caused laughter and amazement.

☐ ☐

B Answer the following questions:

SB Exercises

1. How has Dummling changed from the beginning of the story?

كيف تغير "داملينج" (Dummling) عن بداية القصة؟

- At first, Dummling looked foolish. Now he feels proud.

في البداية، كان يبدو أحمقاً. أما الآن فهو يشعر بالفخر.

2. Why did more people begin to follow Dummling?

لماذا بدأ المزيد من الناس في اتباع "داملينج"؟

- People began to follow Dummling because they got stuck to the magical goose.

بدأ الناس في اتباعه لأنهم التصقوا بالإوزة السحرية.

3. How do you think Dummling felt when everyone started laughing and clapping?

كيف تعتقد أن "داملينج" شعر عندما بدأ الجميع بالضحك والتصفيق؟

- He felt happy and proud.

شعر بالسعادة والفخر.

4. Where did this part of the story mainly take place?

أين وقع هذا الجزء من القصة بشكل أساسي؟

- It took place in the village, on the road.

وقع في القرية، على الطريق.

Bit by Bit Exercises

5. What happened to the people who tried to help Dummling?

ماذا حدث للأشخاص الذين حاولوا مساعدة "داملينج"؟

- They got stuck to the magical goose and could not let go.

التصقوا بالإوزة السحرية ولم يستطيعوا الإفلات.

6. What did the villagers do when they saw the parade?

ماذا فعل القرويون عندما رأوا الموكب؟

- They laughed, clapped, and watched in amazement.

ضحكوا، صفقوا، وشاهدوا بذهول.

7. Why did the villagers laugh and clap?

لماذا ضحك القرويون وصفقوا؟

- Because the parade was funny, strange, and amazing to watch.

لأن الموكب كان مضحكاً، غريباً، ومذهلاً في مشاهدته.

Critical thinking Exercises

SB Exercises

1. What does this chapter teach us about people who laugh at others before knowing the whole story?

ماذا يعلمنا هذا الفصل عن الأشخاص الذين يضحكون على الآخرين قبل معرفة القصة كاملة؟

- This chapter shows that people who laugh at others too quickly can be wrong. The villagers and schoolmaster laughed at Dummling at first, but later they saw he was clever and important.

يظهر هذا الفصل أن الأشخاص الذين يضحكون على الآخرين بسرعة كبيرة قد يكونون مخطئين. القرويون وناظر المدرسة ضحكوا على "داملينج" في البداية، لكنهم رأوا لاحقاً أنه ذكي ومهم.

2. If you were one of the villagers, what would you have thought or done when you saw the parade?

لو كنت أحد القرويين، ماذا كنت ستفكر أو تفعل عندما ترى الموكب؟

- I would laugh and watch because it looks funny. Then, I would follow the parade to see what happens next!

كنت سأضحك وأشاهد لأن المنظر يبدو مضحكاً. ثم كنت سأتابع الموكب لأرى ماذا سيحدث بعد ذلك!

Bit by Bit Exercises

3. How did Dummling feel when he led the parade?

كيف شعر "داملينج" عندما قاد الموكب؟

- He felt proud, happy, and confident. شعر بالفخر، السعادة، والثقة.

4. How did the parade change the villagers' opinion of Dummling?

كيف غير الموكب رأي القرويين في "داملينج"؟

- They stopped thinking he was foolish and saw he was clever.

توقفوا عن الاعتقاد بأنه أحمق ورأوا أنه ذكي.

5. How do you think the three boys felt when they got stuck?

كيف تعتقد أن الأولاد الثلاثة شعروا عندما علقوا (التصقوا)؟

- They felt scared and worried. شعروا بالخوف والقلق.

6. What would you do if you were Dummling in this story?

ماذا كنت ستفعل لو كنت مكان "داملينج" في هذه القصة؟

- I would keep walking and try to lead everyone safely.

كنت سأستمر في المشي وأحاول قيادة الجميع بأمان.

7. How do small actions, like helping or clapping, make a big difference in the story?

كيف تصنع الأفعال الصغيرة، مثل المساعدة أو التصفيق، فرقاً كبيراً في القصة؟

- They show kindness and make people happy, and they help Dummling feel proud. إنها تظهر اللطف وتجعل الناس سعداء، وتساعد "داملينج" على الشعور بالفخر.

Exercises on Chapter 4**A Read and write (T) True or (F) False:**

	T	F
1. Only the three boys followed Dummling; no one else joined.	☐	☐
2. Dummling walked proudly even though he was at the front of a strange parade.	☐	☐
3. The schoolmaster tried to help but got stuck too.	☐	☐
4. There were a soldier and a farmer among the people at the parade.	☐	☐
5. Dummling was seen as foolish before this adventure.	☐	☐
6. The villagers were angry and scared of Dummling and the goose.	☐	☐
7. Dummling carried the goose in his hand.	☐	☐
8. The three boys could easily let go of the goose.	☐	☐
9. A farmer and a soldier joined the stuck line.	☐	☐
10. Children clapped at the strange parade.	☐	☐
11. Dummling felt ashamed and hid.	☐	☐
12. Dummling was walking towards the royal palace.	☐	☐

B Answer the following questions:

1. Where did Dummling walk with the goose?

2. How did the schoolmaster feel when he first saw the boys?

3. Why did the villagers point at the parade?

4. What was waiting for Dummling at the palace?

5. Do you think the goose is trying to help Dummling or play a trick on him?

6. Why do you think the goose made everyone follow Dummling?

7. How was Dummling carrying the golden goose?

8. What happened to the three boys from the hotel?

9. What happened to the schoolmaster when he touched the boys?

10. How did the villagers feel when they saw the parade?

11. What did the children do when they saw the line of people?

12. How did Dummling feel as he walked in front?

13. Where was Dummling's journey leading him?

14. What kind of challenge do you think is waiting at the palace?

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

kingdom (n)	مملكة	determination (n)	عزيمة
princess (n)	أميرة	face (v)	يواجه
goose (n)	إوزة	marry (v)	يتزوج
kindness (n)	لطف/طيبة	doubted (v)	شك في
marriage (n)	زواج	smiled (v)	ابتسمت
promise (n)	وعد	laughed (v)	ضحكت
parade (n)	موكب	entered (v)	دخل
tasks (n)	مهام	stuck (adj)	عالق
joy (n)	فرح/سعادة	surprised (adj)	متفاجئ



Definitions

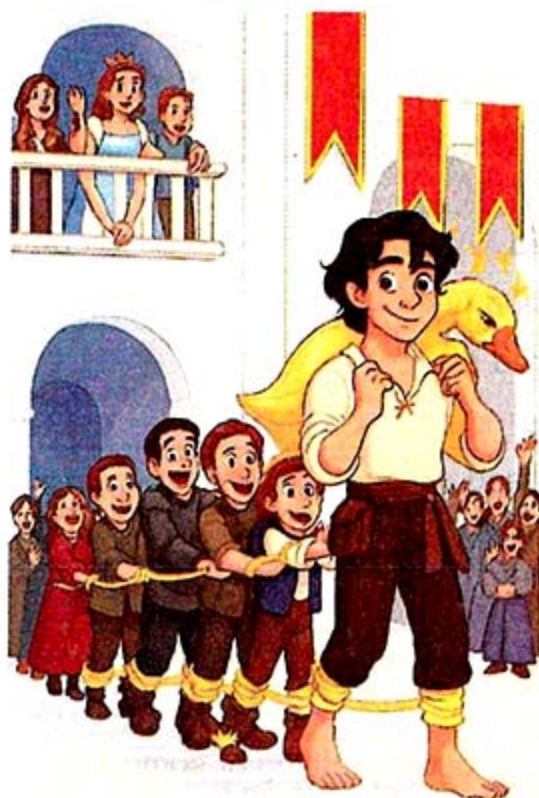
doubt (v)	يشك	feel not sure about something or someone
kingdom (n)	مملكة	a country ruled ⁽¹⁾ by a king or queen
worthy (adj)	جدير ويستحق	being good enough to deserve ⁽²⁾ something
determination (n)	تصميم	not giving up easily and continuing to try hard
prove (v)	يثبت	show your abilities ⁽³⁾ , skills, or value through actions
strength (n)	قوة	being physically ⁽⁴⁾ strong

١. تحكم
٢. يستحق
٣. قدرات
٤. بدنياً

- Read the following text. What helped Oummling to face challenges?

What helped Dummling to face challenges⁽¹⁾?

In the kingdom⁽²⁾, there was a princess⁽³⁾ who had never smiled or laughed⁽⁴⁾. Her father, the king, said that whoever⁽⁵⁾ could make her laugh, would win her hand in marriage⁽⁶⁾. Many tried, but none⁽⁷⁾ succeeded. When Dummling entered the town with his strange parade⁽⁸⁾ of people stuck⁽⁹⁾ to the goose⁽¹⁰⁾, the princess looked from her window.



She could not stop her laughter at the funny scene. For the first time, her heart was filled with joy, and she laughed loudly. The king was surprised⁽¹¹⁾ but kept his promise⁽¹²⁾. He said that Dummling could marry his daughter⁽¹³⁾ if he could also prove himself worthy through other tasks. Though many still doubted⁽¹⁴⁾ him, Dummling's kindness and determination⁽¹⁵⁾ gave him strength⁽¹⁶⁾ to face what was coming.

١. التحديات
٢. المملكة
٣. الأميرة
٤. تضحك
٥. من يستطيع / أي شخص
٦. ينال يدها للزواج
٧. لا أحد
٨. موكب / عرض
٩. ملتصق / عالق
١٠. إوزة
١١. مندهش
١٢. وفى بوعد
١٣. يتزوج ابنته
١٤. شكك / شكوا فيه
١٥. العزيمة
١٦. القوة

في المملكة، كانت هناك أميرة لم تبتسم قط أو تضحك. قال والدها الملك إن من يستطيع إضحكها سيفوز بها زوجاً. حاول الكثيرون، لكن لم ينجح أحد. عندما دخل داملينج المدينة مع موكبه الغريب من الناس الملتصقين بالإوزة، نظرت الأميرة من نافذتها. لم تستطع كبح ضحكها من المشهد المضحك. ولأول مرة، امتلأ قلبها بالفرح، وضحكت بصوت عالٍ. تفاجأ الملك لكنه وفى بوعد. قال إن داملينج يمكنه الزواج من ابنته إذا استطاع أيضاً إثبات جدارته من خلال مهام أخرى. على الرغم من أن الكثيرين مازالوا يشككون فيه، إلا أن لطف داملينج وعزمته منحاه القوة لمواجهة ما هو قادم.

Exercises on Chapter 5

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

SB Exercises

	T	F
1. The princess laughed easily at everything.	☐	☐
2. The king promised that whoever made his daughter laugh could marry her.	☐	☐
3. Dummling's parade made the princess smile and laugh.	☐	☐
4. The king broke his promise after seeing Dummling.	☐	☐
5. Dummling was ready to face new challenges.	☐	☐

Bit by Bit Exercises

	T	F
1. The princess had never laughed before Dummling arrived.	☐	☐
2. Many people succeeded in making the princess laugh before Dummling.	☐	☐
3. Dummling entered the town with a strange parade of people stuck to a goose.	☐	☐
4. The princess could not stop laughing at the funny scene.	☐	☐
5. The king was angry when he saw his daughter laughing.	☐	☐
6. The king promised that Dummling could marry his daughter if he proved himself worthy.	☐	☐
7. Dummling was afraid to face the challenges ahead.	☐	☐

8. Kindness and determination gave Dummling strength to face what was coming.

☐ ☐

9. The parade of Dummling was ordinary and not funny.

☐ ☐

10. The story shows that creativity and good character help solve problems.

☐ ☐

B Answer the following questions:

SB Exercises

1. Why did the princess finally laugh?

لماذا ضحكت الأميرة في النهاية؟

- The princess finally laughed because she saw Dummling's strange parade of people stuck to the goose. The scene was very funny and made her heart fill with joy.

ضحكت الأميرة في النهاية لأنها رأت موكب داملينغ الغريب من الناس الملتصقين بالإوزة. كان المشهد مضحكاً جداً وملاً قلبها بالفرح.

2. How did the king feel when he saw his daughter laughing?

كيف شعر الملك عندما رأى ابنته تضحك؟

- The king was surprised but he kept his promise to Dummling.

شعر الملك بالدهشة، لكنه وفى بوعده داملينغ.

3. What did the king ask Dummling to do after making the princess laugh?

ماذا طلب الملك من داملينغ بعد أن جعل الأميرة تضحك؟

- The king asked Dummling to prove himself worthy through other tasks before marrying his daughter.

طلب الملك من داملينغ أن يثبت جدارته من خلال مهام أخرى قبل الزواج من ابنته.

4. Why do you think the people were surprised when Dummling entered the palace?

لماذا تعتقد أن الناس كانوا مندهشين عندما دخل داملينغ القصر؟

- People were surprised because Dummling entered with a strange and funny parade that no one had ever seen before.

كان الناس مندهشين لأن داملينغ دخل مع موكب غريب ومضحك لم يره أحد من قبل.

Bit by Bit Exercises

5. What did many people try to do before Dummling arrived?

ماذا حاول الكثير من الناس فعله قبل وصول داملينغ؟

- Many people tried to make the princess laugh, but none succeeded.

حاول الكثير من الناس جعل الأميرة تضحك، لكن لم ينجح أحد.

6. What is special about the princess at the beginning of the story?

ما المميز في الأميرة في بداية القصة؟

- The princess had never smiled or laughed before.

الأميرة لم تبتسم أو تضحك من قبل.

7. How did Dummling feel when facing the king's tasks?

كيف شعر داملينغ عند مواجهة مهام الملك؟

- Dummling's kindness and determination gave him strength to face the challenges.

لطف داملينغ وعزمته أعطوه القوة لمواجهة التحديات.

8. Why was the parade of people funny to the princess?

لماذا كان موكب الناس مضحكاً للأميرة؟

- The parade was funny because people were stuck to the goose, which looked very strange.

كان الموكب مضحكاً لأن الناس كانوا ملتصقين بالإوزة، وهو منظر غريب جداً.

9. What does the story show about Dummling's character?

ماذا يظهر النص عن شخصية دوملينغ؟

- The story shows that Dummling is kind, determined, and brave enough to face challenges.

يظهر النص أن داملينغ لطيف، مصمم، وشجاع بما يكفي لمواجهة التحديات.

Critical thinking questions

SB Exercises

1. If you were the king, what kind of tasks would you give Dummling to test if he truly deserves to marry the princess?

إذا كنت الملك، ما نوع المهام التي كنت ستعطيها لداملينغ لاختبار ما إذا كان يستحق حقاً الزواج من الأميرة؟

- If I were the king, I would give Dummling tasks that test his kindness, intelligence, and bravery.

إذا كنت الملك، كنت سأعطي داملينغ مهاماً تختبر لطفه وذكائه وشجاعته.

2. Why do you think the princess laughed at Dummling's parade?

لماذا تعتقد أن الأميرة ضحكت على موكب داملينج؟

- The princess laughed because the parade was very unusual and funny.

ضحكت الأميرة لأن الموكب كان غير عادي ومضحك جدًا.

Bit by Bit Exercises

3. Why do you think the king wanted Dummling to prove himself even after making the princess laugh?

لماذا تعتقد أن الملك أراد من داملينج أن يثبت نفسه حتى بعد أن جعل الأميرة تضحك؟

- The king wanted Dummling to prove himself because making someone laugh is only one skill. He needed to ensure that Dummling had good character, courage, and the ability to face real challenges.

أراد الملك من داملينج أن يثبت نفسه لأن جعل شخص يضحك مهارة واحدة فقط. كان بحاجة للتأكد من أن داملينج ذو خلق حسن وشجاع وقادر على مواجهة التحديات الحقيقية.

4. How does Dummling's kindness and determination help him in the story?

كيف ساعدت لطف داملينج وعزمته في القصة؟

- Dummling's kindness and determination gave him the strength and confidence to face difficult tasks and overcome doubts from others.

منحه لطف داملينج وعزمته القوة والثقة لمواجهة المهام الصعبة والتغلب على شكوك الآخرين.

5. What lesson can we learn from the princess laughing at something simple and funny?

ما الدرس الذي يمكن أن نتعلمه من ضحك الأميرة على شيء بسيط ومضحك؟

- We can learn that joy can come from small and unexpected things, and laughter can have a positive effect on people's hearts.

يمكننا أن نتعلم أن الفرح قد يأتي من أشياء صغيرة وغير متوقعة، وأن الضحك له تأثير إيجابي على قلوب الناس.

6. Why were people surprised by Dummling's parade, and what does it tell us about creativity?

لماذا تفاجأ الناس من موكب داملينج، وماذا يخبرنا ذلك عن الإبداع؟

- People were surprised because the parade was unusual and funny. It shows that creative and original ideas can attract attention and solve problems in unexpected ways.

تفاجأ الناس لأن الموكب كان غريبًا ومضحكًا. يوضح ذلك أن الأفكار الإبداعية والأصلية يمكن أن تجذب الانتباه وتحل المشاكل بطرق غير متوقعة.

7. Do you think Dummling's success depended more on his clever idea or his character? Why?

هل تعتقد أن نجاح داملينج اعتمد أكثر على فكرته الذكية أم شخصيته؟ ولماذا؟

- Dummling's success depended on both, but his character was more important because kindness, determination, and courage allowed him to face challenges beyond just making the princess laugh.

اعتمد نجاح داملينج على الاثنين، لكن شخصيته كانت أكثر أهمية لأن لطفه وعزمته وشجاعته سمحت له بمواجهة التحديات التي تتجاوز مجرد جعل الأميرة تضحك.

Exercises on Chapter 5

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

	T	F
1. The princess never smiled or laughed.	☐	☐
2. The king said the princess would marry the person who made her rich.	☐	☐
3. Many people tried to make the princess laugh.	☐	☐
4. Dummling made the princess laugh with a funny goose.	☐	☐
5. The princess saw the funny scene from her door.	☐	☐
6. The king was happy and let Dummling marry the princess right away.	☐	☐
7. The king gave Dummling more tasks to do.	☐	☐
8. Dummling was strong and kind.	☐	☐
9. Everyone believed Dummling would succeed easily.	☐	☐
10. The princess's heart felt happy for the first time.	☐	☐

B Answer the following questions:

1. What did the king promise to the person who could make his daughter laugh?

2. How did Dummling make the princess laugh?

3. What did the king ask Dummling to do after he made the princess laugh?

4. Why did many people doubt Dummling?

5. What gave Dummling the strength to face the challenges ahead?

6. Why do you think the king wanted Dummling to prove himself even after making the princess laugh?

7. How does Dummling's kindness and determination help him face challenges in the story?

8. What lesson can we learn from the princess laughing at something unusual and funny?

9. Why were people surprised by Dummling's parade, and what does it tell us about creativity?

10. Do you think Dummling's success depended more on his clever idea or his character? Why?

Story Time

Chapter Six

Dumpling's Reward

The Golden Goose

Vocabulary



المفردات

grand (adj)	عظيم/فخم	wealth (n)	ثروة
modesty (n)	التواضع	prince (n)	أمير
fortune (n)	ثروة/ حظ	across the land	عبر البلاد/ في جميع أنحاء الأرض
generosity (n)	الكرم/ السخاء	laugh at	يضحك على
goodness (n)	الصالح/ الطيبة	achieve success	يحقق النجاح
whole (adj)	كُل	no longer	لم يعد
reward (n)	مكافأة	remain (v) (ed)	يبقى/ يظل
true (adj)	حقيقي/ صادق	allow (v) (ed)	يسمح
wise (adj)	حكيم	complete (v) (d)	يُكمل/ يُتم
great (adj)	عظيم	celebrate (v) (d)	يحتفل
gentle (adj)	رقيق/ لطيف	prove (v) (d)	يثبت/ يبرهن
sign (n)	علامة/ إشارة	remind (v) (ed)	يُذكر
soul (n)	الروح	spread (v) -spread- spread	ينشر/ ينتشر
tale (n)	حكاية/ قصة	lie in (v) (lay/ lain)	تُكمن في



Definitions

grand (adj)	عظيم/فخم	large, beautiful, and impressive ⁽¹⁾	
modesty (adj)	التواضع	not thinking you are better than others and showing respect ⁽²⁾	
fortune (n)	ثروة/ حظ	great wealth ⁽³⁾ or good luck	١. مؤثر
remained (v)	بقي/ ظل	continue to exist	٢. الاحترام
goodness (n)	الصالح/ الطيبة	the quality ⁽⁴⁾ of being good	٣. ثروة
generosity (n)	الكرم/ السخاء	being kind and giving	٤. خاصية

- Read the following text.

The king was **true**⁽¹⁾ to his word and **allowed**⁽²⁾ Dummling to marry the princess after he completed the challenges **wisely**⁽³⁾. The wedding was **grand**⁽⁴⁾, and the whole **kingdom celebrated**⁽⁵⁾. The people no longer laughed at Dummling, for his kindness and **modesty**⁽⁶⁾ had brought him great **fortune**⁽⁷⁾. He became a **wise**⁽⁸⁾ and **gentle**⁽⁹⁾ prince, loved by all. The golden goose **remained**⁽¹⁰⁾



with him, a **sign**⁽¹¹⁾ of the rewards of kindness and **generosity**⁽¹²⁾. Dummling's **goodness proved**⁽¹³⁾ that even the simplest **soul**⁽¹⁴⁾, with a kind heart, could **achieve success**⁽¹⁵⁾. The **tale**⁽¹⁶⁾ of the golden goose spread across the land, reminding all that **true wealth**⁽¹⁷⁾ lies not in gold, but in kindness, modesty, and love.

١. صادق
٢. سمح
٣. بحكمة
٤. عظيم
٥. كل المملكة
٦. احتفلت
٧. تواضعه
٨. حظ / ثروة
٩. حكيم
١٠. لطيف
١١. ظلت
١٢. علامة
١٣. الكرم
١٤. طبيته أثبتت
١٥. روح
١٦. يحقق النجاح
١٧. حكاية
١٨. الثروة الحقيقية

أوفى الملك بوعده وسمح لداملينج بالزواج من الأميرة بعد أن

أنهى التحديات بحكمة. كان الزفاف فخماً، واحتفلت المملكة بأسرها. لم يعد الناس يسخرون من داملينج، فقد جلب له لطفه وتواضعه ثروة طائلة. أصبح أميراً حكيماً ولطيفاً، محبوباً من الجميع. وبقيت الإوزة الذهبية معه، رمزاً لثواب اللطف والكرم. أثبتت طيبة داملينج أن حتى أبسط النفوس، ذات القلب الطيب، يمكنها تحقيق النجاح. انتشرت قصة الإوزة الذهبية في أرجاء البلاد، لتذكر الجميع بأن الثروة الحقيقية لا تكمن في الذهب، بل في اللطف والتواضع والمحبة.

Exercises on Chapter 6**A** Read and write (T) True or (F) False:**SB Exercises**

	T	F
1. The king did not keep his promise to Dummling.	☐	☐
2. Dummling became a gentle and wise prince.	☐	☐
3. People still laughed at Dummling after his marriage.	☐	☐
4. The golden goose was a symbol of kindness and reward.	☐	☐
5. The story teaches us that love and kindness are more valuable than gold.	☐	☐

Bit by Bit Exercises

	T	F
6. The king allowed Dummling to marry the princess.	☐	☐
7. Dummling failed the challenges and felt sad.	☐	☐
8. The wedding was small and quiet.	☐	☐
9. People stopped laughing at Dummling.	☐	☐
10. The golden goose was taken away from Dummling.	☐	☐
11. Dummling was loved by all the people.	☐	☐
12. The story shows that true wealth is kindness and love.	☐	☐



Answer the following questions:

SB Exercises

1. What did the king allow Dummling to do after completing the challenges?

ماذا سمح الملك لـ "داملينج" أن يفعل بعد إتمام التحديات؟

- The king allowed Dummling to marry the princess.

سمح الملك لـ "داملينج" بالزواج من الأميرة.

2. How did the people's opinion toward Dummling change?

كيف تغير رأي الناس تجاه "داملينج"؟

- People stopped laughing at Dummling and began to respect him.

توقف الناس عن الضحك على "داملينج" وبدأوا في احترامه.

3. What kind of person did Dummling become after his marriage?

أي نوع من الأشخاص أصبح "داملينج" بعد زواجه؟

- Dummling became a wise and gentle prince who was loved by all.

أصبح "داملينج" أميراً حكيماً ولطيفاً ومحبباً من الجميع.

4. Explain in your own words what the story teaches us about true fortune.

اشرح بأسلوبك ماذا تعلمنا القصة عن "الثروة الحقيقية"؟

- The story teaches us that kindness and love are the true fortune.

تعلمنا القصة أن اللطف والحب هما الثروة الحقيقية.

Bit by Bit Exercises

5. Why did the king allow Dummling to marry the princess?

لماذا سمح الملك لـ "داملينج" بالزواج من الأميرة؟

- The king allowed Dummling to marry the princess because he wisely

completed the challenges.

سمح له الملك بالزواج منها لأنه أتم التحديات بحكمة.

6. How did the people feel about Dummling at the end of the story?

كيف كان شعور الناس تجاه "داملينج" في نهاية القصة؟

- The people loved and respected Dummling and stopped laughing at him.

أحب الناس "داملينج" واحترموه وتوقفوا عن الضحك عليه.

7. Why was the wedding important to the whole kingdom?

لماذا كان حفل الزفاف مهماً للمملكة بأكملها؟

- The wedding was important to the whole kingdom because it was a grand

celebration and showed that kindness and modesty could lead to great

success and happiness for everyone.

كان حفل الزفاف مهماً لأنه كان احتفالاً عظيماً، وأظهر أن اللطف والتواضع يمكن أن يؤديا إلى نجاح وسعادة

كبيرة للجميع.

8. What did the golden goose stand for in Dummling's life?

ماذا كانت تمثل "الوزة الذهبية" في حياة "داملينج"؟

- The golden goose stood for kindness, generosity, and the rewards of doing good.

كانت تمثل اللطف، والكرم، ومكافأة فعل الخير.

Critical thinking questions

SB Exercises

1. Why do you think Dummling's kindness was more powerful than his brothers' cleverness or pride?

لماذا تعتقد أن طيبة "داملينج" كانت أقوى من ذكاء أو غرور إخوته؟

- Dummling's kindness was more powerful because it was real and from the heart. His brothers were only thinking about themselves, but Dummling helped others.

لأن طيبة "داملينج" كانت حقيقية ومن القلب. إخوته كانوا يفكرون في أنفسهم فقط، لكن "داملينج" ساعد الآخرين.

2. What message does the story send about how we should treat others?

ما الرسالة التي ترسلها القصة حول كيفية معاملة الآخرين؟

- The story tells us to treat others with kindness, respect, and generosity.

تخبرنا القصة أن نعامل الآخرين بلطف، واحترام، وكرم.

Bit by Bit Exercises

3. How did Dummling's kindness help him succeed?

كيف ساعده لطفه على النجاح؟

- Dummling's kindness helped him make good choices and earn respect and success.

ساعده لطفه على اتخاذ خيارات جيدة واكتساب الاحترام والنجاح.

4. Why do you think people stopped laughing at Dummling?

لماذا تعتقد أن الناس توقفوا عن الضحك على "داملينج"؟

- People stopped laughing because Dummling proved he was kind, wise, and successful.

توقفوا عن الضحك لأن "داملينج" أثبت أنه طيب وحكيم وناجح.

5. How did Dummling change the way others saw him?

كيف غير "داملينج" الطريقة التي يراه بها الآخرون؟

- Dummling changed the way others saw him by proving through his actions that a simple, kind person can be wise and successful.

غير نظرهم له من خلال إثبات أن الشخص البسيط والطيب يمكن أن يكون حكيماً وناجحاً عبر أفعاله.

6. Why do you think the king tested Dummling with challenges?

لماذا تعتقد أن الملك اختبر "داملينج" بالتحديات؟

- I think the king tested Dummling with challenges to see if he was truly wise, kind, and worthy of marrying the princess.

أعتقد أن الملك اختبره ليرى ما إذا كان حقاً حكيماً، وطيباً، ويستحق الزواج من الأميرة.

7. Do you think Dummling deserved the reward? Why or why not?

هل تعتقد أن "داملينج" استحق المكافأة؟ ولماذا؟

- Yes, Dummling deserved the reward because he was kind, humble, and wise.

نعم، استحق المكافأة لأنه كان طيباً، متواضعاً، وحكيماً.

Exercises on Chapter 6

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

	T	F
1. Dummling married the princess after finishing the challenges.	☐	☐
2. The whole kingdom celebrated the wedding.	☐	☐
3. People continued to laugh at Dummling after the wedding.	☐	☐
4. Dummling became a cruel and strict prince.	☐	☐
5. Dummling was known for his kindness and modesty.	☐	☐
6. Dummling cared only about gold.	☐	☐
7. The king broke his promise.	☐	☐
8. The wedding was very small.	☐	☐
9. The golden goose stayed with Dummling.	☐	☐
10. The story says gold is the most important wealth.	☐	☐
11. Dummling's success came from his kind heart.	☐	☐
12. The tale of the golden goose was forgotten.	☐	☐

B Answer the following questions:

1. What did the king allow Dummling to do after he completed the challenges?

2. How did the people feel about Dummling by the end of the story?

3. What remained with Dummling as a sign of his reward?

4. Why did the people stop laughing at Dummling?

5. Why do you think the king kept his promise to Dummling instead of choosing someone richer or cleverer?

6. Do you agree that a kind heart is more important than being clever or strong?
Why or why not?

7. How might the story change if Dummling was not kind?

8. Why do you think kindness brought Dummling respect from others?

9. Why do you think the golden goose stayed with Dummling?

10. What would you do if you were Dummling at the end of the story?

Listening Material

نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بأسئلة الاستماع الواردة في وحدات كتاب Bit Bit

Unit 7

Al Azhar Exercises

1- Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Fatma went to the Egyptian Museum yesterday. She bought a ticket for 50 pounds. She saw amazing artifacts. She enjoyed her time.

Test on Unit 7

1- Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Tourists visit Egypt every day. They go to The Valley of the Kings in Luxor. They take photos and enjoy their time. In the morning, is the best time to go there. It's the quietest time of the day. Tour guides help tourists by providing them with useful information.

Unit 8

Al Azhar Exercises

1- Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Last weekend, I visited my cousin on his farm. We fed the animals and picked fresh vegetables. The work was tiring, but enjoyable. My cousin taught me how to care for plants. I learned many new things and felt proud of helping on the farm.

Test on Unit 8

1- Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Last Sunday, my family and I visited the city zoo. It was a sunny and warm day, perfect for a walk. We saw the big lions sleeping under a tree. The monkeys were the best! They were very funny and ate lots of bananas. My little brother couldn't stop laughing at them.

We had a picnic lunch near the bird cages. It was a fantastic day.

Unit 9

Al Azhar Exercises

1- Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

I went on a trip to Sinai with my family. I enjoyed the mountains and the sunny beaches there. I took some photos there.

Test on Unit 9

1- Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Making scrambled eggs is easy and quick! First, break three eggs into a bowl. Then, add a little milk and salt. Mix well with a fork. Next, put some butter in a pan and heat it. When the butter is hot, pour in the eggs and stir gently. After about two minutes, the eggs become soft and fluffy. Finally, put them on a plate and enjoy!

Unit 10

General Exercises Lesson 3

1- Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Last week, Laila saw an elderly woman carrying a heavy shopping bag. She ran to help and carried it for her alone. By smiling at the woman and giving her attention, Laila showed respect and kindness. Although it was a huge effort, it was very useful and rewarding. In fact, this small action brought hope and happiness to the woman's day.

Al Azhar Exercises**1- Listen to the text and answer the following questions:**

Omar plans to learn new skills this summer. He will volunteer at a charity and make flyers to invite people. Doing this work will make him proud.

Test on Unit 10**1- Listen to the text and answer the following questions:**

Ahmed was sad because he didn't understand the math lesson. His best friend, Mazen, decided to help. Carefully, he explained the lesson to him after school. He used simple examples. Soon, Ahmed found the answers! He thanked his friend for helping him. Mazen felt that helping him was rewarding. This small act of kindness made both friends happy.

Unit 11**Al Azhar Exercises****1- Listen to the text and answer the following questions:**

Every morning, I wake up early and walk to school. The streets are quiet, and the air feels fresh. I meet my friends at the gate, and we talk about our plans. After classes, we play football or read in the library before going home happily. It helps us relax and enjoy simple moments together each day after long lessons.

Test on Unit 11**1- Listen to the text and answer the following questions:**

Every morning, Lina helps her mother at home before school. She makes her bed, feeds the cat, and prepares her bag. After school, she does her homework and watches her favorite TV show. In the evening, Lina reads a short story and talks with her family.

These daily habits help her feel organized, calm, and ready for the next day.

Unit 12**Lesson 3 General Exercises****1- Listen to the text and answer the following questions:**

Seif was unhealthy and inactive. He ate junk food and had too much screen time. He felt tired and weak. One day, he decided to follow healthy habits. He started eating balanced meals and drinking plenty of water. He began cycling every day to keep fit. Soon, Seif felt refreshed, strong, and active. His positive choices helped his physical and mental well-being.

Al Azhar Exercises**1- Listen to the text and answer the following questions:**

Karim keeps his desk organized. He puts his books away neatly. All his materials are in order. This habit is very good because it helps him stay focused during lessons.

Test on Unit 12**1- Listen to the text and answer the following questions:**

A group of teenagers spent their weekend together doing healthy activities. They went cycling to stay fit and safe. After exercise, they ate balanced meals and avoided sugary drinks. They followed instructions, kept places tidy, and showed respect while talking. They felt proud of their friendship and ended the day refreshed, focused, and ready for school.

Bit by Bit

هكذا.. تكون الإنجليزية

كتاب ينمي مهاراتك اللغوية ويطورها
على أسس قوية من الإنجليزية الحقيقية
كتاب متميز يليق بمن يتطلع إلى مستقبل باهر



دار غزة

للطباعة والنشر والتوزيع

ghazzahouse@gmail.com

١٠ شارع كامل صدقي الفجالة

Fb.com/Bit.By.Bit.Ghazza



للكتاب والملحق

الثمن 150 جنيها

Bit by Bit
كتب في اللغة الإنجليزية

ENGLISH

FOR PREPARATORY SCHOOLS

ملحق تسميع المفردات والواجب المنزلي

20
26

الصف الأول الإعدادي
الفصل الدراسي الثاني



1st
PREP
SECOND TERM

دار غزة
للطباعة والنشر والتوزيع
ghazzahouse@gmail.com

R

Review on Unit 7 (Reviving the Spirit of Civilization)

Lessons ① & ②

عظيم/كبير/مهيّب	مومياوات ملكية
ازياء	تراث
يُخَي (إعادة الحياة لشيء قديم أو مفقود)	ذهبي
يُخَي/يستحضر/يرمم	موكب
يدفن	فرعون
حشود/جماهير	مركبة (وسيلة نقل)
رمز	يشهد (حفل أو حدث)
فرق الحراسة	اسلاف/اجداد
جندى	كنز
مجيد/عظيم	جمال
اداء	واجب/مسئولية
المتحف القومى للحضارة المصرية	قطع اثرية
زى/طقم ملابس	موسيقار
جيل	تقليدى
ينبض بالحياة/على قيد الحياة	بشكل مباشر / على الهواء
يكرم	فخر
يلهم	نُصِب تذكاري/مُعَلَّم/أثر تاريخي
احترام/يحترمه	اصول/جذور
يتجمع/يحتشد	يدمر/يتلف

Expressions & Prepositions

يشارك فى	مركبة مصممة خصيصا
الاساس ل/مفتاح ل	يشاهد الحدث على الهواء/مباشر
قواعد الامان	يصبح نابضاً بالحياة
على طول الطريق	يحدث
فى التلفزيون	حدث استثنائي/حدث يُحدث مرة واحدة فى الحياة
إخفاء زُوج الحضارة	

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
يشارك		
يحدث		
يرتدى		
يحضر/يجلب		
يتلألأ/يسطع/يشرق		
يبدأ		
يشترى		

1. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
priceless		
powerful		
damage		
preserve		
grand		
witness		
national		

Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ation / -ful / -al / -en / -ist / -ian / -ed / -ity / -ly / -ous

gold	power
special	tradition
civiliz	Egypt
glor	careful
success	protect
nation	historic
archaeolog	secur
decorat	music
scient	



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- "....." means a set of actions done in the same way for a long time.
a. Festivals b. Habits c. Parades d. Ceremonies
- To get the adjective from the word "tradition", we add the suffix
a. -ous b. ive c. -ful d. -al
- He **witnessed** the show yesterday. The antonym of "witness" is
a. attend b. watch c. ignore d. fix
- "....." means very large, important, or impressive.
a. Grand b. Tiny c. Simple d. Small
- The grand parade will place in Tahrir Square.
a. make b. do c. take d. get
- To is to put in the ground and cover with soil.
a. inspire b. damage c. gather d. bury
- We form the noun from the word "secure" by adding the suffix
a. -ion b. -ment c. -ity d. -ness
- The tiger looks powerful. The word "**powerful**" is similar in meaning to
a. weak b. strong c. ineffective d. lazy
- We must protect our for future generations.
a. heritage b. ceremony c. performance d. parade
- are the preserved bodies of ancient kings and queens.
a. Costumes b. Ceremonies c. Archeologists d. Royal mummies
- We add the prefix to the word "national" to mean global.
a. inter- b. dis- c. un- d. in-
- Education is the key building a better future.
a. for b. to c. with d. of
- People preserve old buildings. "....." is an antonym of "preserve".
a. Keep b. Protect c. Destroy d. Save
- The fish in the bowl is still; it hasn't died yet.
a. live b. life c. lives d. alive
- The event aims to the spirit of civilization.
a. revive b. destroy c. bury d. damage

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

glorious - vehicles - inspired - ancestors - gathered

The Pharaohs' Golden Parade was a grand celebration in Cairo. People ① _____ in crowds at Tahrir Square to witness the event. Twenty-two royal mummies moved to a new home. They traveled in specially designed ② _____. These mummies were priceless treasures from our ③ _____. The streets were lined with people. It was a ④ _____ moment for every Egyptian citizen. People across the world watched the event live on television and online.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

1. It is a good idea to preserve our historical heritage. (should)

2. It is necessary for drivers to stop at red lights. (must)

3. Wearing a helmet is not a rule for cycling here. (don't have to)

4. You aren't allowed to touch the statues in the museum. (mustn't)

5. It is very important to do your homework. (have to)

6. It isn't necessary to buy a ticket; the celebration is free for everyone. (don't have to)

7. It is necessary for us to gather at the square at 6 PM. (must)

8. If I were you, I wouldn't eat that old bread. (shouldn't)

9. There is no need for Hala to cook; we are eating out. (doesn't have to)

10. Don't throw trash on the ground; it's against the rules. (mustn't)

11. It is necessary for him to show his ID card at the gate. (has to)

12. It isn't necessary to bring a pen; I have an extra one. (don't have to)

4 Complete the following dialog:

Ahmed and Mona are talking about the parade.

Mona : Did you see the parade last night?

Ahmed : Yes, I watched it live. It was a ① event.

Mona : ② did you like the most?

Ahmed : The vehicles were specially designed for the royal mummies.

Mona : ③ did you feel when you saw the parade?

Ahmed : It made me feel proud.

Mona : Me too. It was a once-in-a-lifetime event. We were lucky to ④ it.

Lessons 3 , 5 & 6

عرض/معرض	قطع أثرية
حضارة	رمز
رائع/خلاب/مبهر	أعجوبة/روعة
مركز للترميم (للحفاظ على الآثار)	موضة
السياحية الأجنبية	ورش
يحتوى على/يضم	نادر/فريد
يسمح/يتيح	يستكشف
يعرض	يحتفل
يدمج/يمزج	يمر بـ/يواجه/يعيش تجربة
ثقافى	واجهات زجاجية
واعد/مبشر	صاله/يهو/ممر
أثرى	متر مربع
شاشات عرض تفاعلية	خاص
نماذج ثلاثية الابعاد	مزيج
مؤرخ	ارشادات/ادلة رقمية
تحفة فنية	مرشد
يحجز	حكمة
كامل	مهندس معمارى
رسالة	فنان/رسام
عبر الانترنت	متحمس
نصائح	افتتاح
مكتظ/مزدحم/ملئى	اقتراح
أدوات/مواد	طابور
يزعج	زميل الفصل
ينشئ/يخلق	ينتظر
يتصرف	

Expressions & Prepositions

مزيج من	موجود/يقع في
بشكل جديد	يمثل جسرا
يرحب بـ	رمز لـ
يجرب/يستمتع بروعة	في وسط/قلب
في التلفزيون	يبدو متحمس
يشبه	من جميع انحاء العالم
يوم فخر وطني	يتعلم عن
ينتظر في طوابير طويلة	ممتلئ بالفخر
محترمه لـ	

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs		تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة	
Present	Past simple	Past Participle	
يقف/يمثل			
يخبر			
يظهر/يعرض			
يجعل			
يرسل			
يسمع			
يتحدث			
يتعلم			
يقرا			
يكبر/ينمو			
يحافظ على			

1. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
promising		
allow		
blend		
magnificent		
modern		
unique		

simple		
online		
excited		
quietly		
breathtaking		

2. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ion / -ing / -ation / -ed / inter- / -al / -ian / -ical / -or / -dom / -ly / -ful

Egypt	design
exhibit	digit
conserv	nation
promis	civiliz
archaeolog	active
visit	excit
suggest	real
histor	help
wis	inform

Lesson



Lessons 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Students visited the to see historical artifacts.
a. park b. exhibition c. hotel d. library
- This painting is **unique** and cannot be copied. "Unique" is an antonym for
a. special b. rare c. ordinary d. uncommon
- A is a picture or sign that shows something.
a. treasure b. museum c. statue d. symbol
- Students explore history using displays and 3D models.
a. ancient b. interactive c. slow d. old
- We form the noun from the verb "exhibit" by adding the suffix
a. -tion b. -ition c. -ion d. -sion

6. The sunset was magnificent. "-----" is similar in meaning to "magnificent".
 a. Impressive b. Insignificant c. Unimpressive d. Unimportant
7. The museum ----- a bridge between past and present.
 a. symbol as b. such as c. example of d. stands as
8. The word "-----" means a piece of art or tool made by humans long ago.
 a. artifact b. experiment c. outfit d. bridge
9. The synonym of "promising" is -----.
 a. dull b. hopeful c. hopeless d. helpless
10. To get the adjective from the verb "design", add the suffix -----.
 a. -ful b. -al c. -ive d. -ed
11. ----- is the people's way of life, culture, and achievements.
 a. Decoration b. Collection c. Civilization d. Pollution
12. The festival celebrates Egypt's ----- heritage and traditions.
 a. modern b. cultural c. ordinary d. normal
13. They don't **allow** smoking in the office. "-----" is the opposite of "allow".
 a. Refuse b. Approve c. Agree d. Support
14. We use the suffix ----- to change the verb "visit" into a noun for a person.
 a. -ian b. -ist c. -er d. -or
15. The museum hall is ----- and very impressive.
 a. magnificent b. common c. tiny d. ordinary

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

artifacts - digital - promising - national - blend

Inside the Grand Egyptian Museum, visitors can explore a unique exhibition. This cultural space displays a ① ----- of history and technology. You can see 3D models and use ② ----- guides to learn about the Pharaohs. These interactive displays allow us to see ancient ③ ----- in a new way. It is a ④ ----- experience that helps education become more fun for kids.

Lessons



Lessons 5 - 6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The painting in the museum is a true -----.
 a. wisdom b. book c. opening d. masterpiece
2. A famous ----- wrote a book about Egyptian civilization.
 a. pharaoh b. historian c. architect d. guide

3. To get the noun from the adjective "wise", we add the suffix
a. -ful b. -ive c. -dom d. -al
4. Shahenda was filled pride after winning the race.
a. of b. from c. with d. at
5. The adjective from the word "help" is formed by adding the suffix
a. -ive b. -al c. -ful d. -ly
6. We add the suffix "-ion" to change the verb "suggest" into a
a. noun b. adjective c. adverb d. prepositions
7. A friendly explained the history of the palace.
a. pharaoh b. history c. architecture d. guide
8. The words "breathtaking" and "boring" are
a. synonyms b. suffixes c. antonyms d. prefixes
9. We can learn English online at home. "....." is the opposite of "online".
a. Connected b. Offline c. Digital d. On the internet
10. We want to tickets for the school trip.
a. look b. book c. hear d. create
11. The word "....." is similar in meaning to "passionate".
a. uninspired b. awesome c. clear d. excited
12. Children must be to rules at school.
a. respectful b. breathtaking c. uninspired d. clear

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

ancient - masterpiece - excited - breathtaking - modern

Yesterday, our class visited the museum. We were very ① to see the ancient artifacts. The guide explained everything clearly. I thought the golden statue was a ② It was ③ to see it up close. Everyone listened quietly. The museum teaches us a lot about ④ civilizations. I will really remember this day. Our teacher said, "Of course, learning history is fun!"

Test on Unit 7

A: Listening

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A. Write True (T) or False (F):



	T	F
1. Mostafa went to the Grand Egyptian Museum last month.	☐	☐
2. Mostafa saw golden statues and learned about the pharaohs.	☐	☐

B. Listen again and complete:

- The guide showed Mostafa many old
- He saw displays and tried some activities.
- He felt very happy and

2 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

- The Great Pyramid is a magnificent of our civilization.
a. root b. blend c. symbol d. way
- The synonym of "breathtaking" is
a. awesome b. difficult c. ugly d. boring
- The word "....." means important history, culture, and traditions passed from one generation to another.
a. ceremonies b. costumes c. celebration d. heritage
- To get the noun for a person from the word "history", we add the suffix
a. -ist b. -ian c. -er d. - or

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

preserve - honor - duty - destroy - key

Mr. Hassan is a historian. His ① is to study old monuments and artifacts. He gives advice on how to protect them from damage. He says we must respect these treasures. They are a ② to understanding our roots. His work helps ③ our heritage for the next generation. He feels it is an ④ to do this job.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The school organized a grand celebration for National Heritage Day. Students wore costumes from different eras and performed a parade in the playground. The crowds of parents and teachers witnessed the event with joy. The teachers explained how traditions revive the country's heritage. Everyone felt filled with pride as students danced and sang. The hall was lined with artifacts and symbols of Egypt's glorious past. Musicians played loudly, and the performance amazed the audience. The celebration showed how we must preserve history and honor our ancestors. Students learned wisdom from the past and they enjoyed a breathtaking day together.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Students learned from the past and they enjoyed a breathtaking day together.
a. patience b. politeness c. wisdom d. respect
- The word "glorious" means
a. grand b. unimportant c. insignificant d. ordinary

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What's the main idea of the passage?

4. What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?

5. How would you feel if you witnessed this event?

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. The youngest brother was kind to the old man.	☐	☐
2. The eldest brother got injured while cutting wood.	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think Dummiling's brothers thought he could not succeed?

2. If you were one of the brothers, what would you do to the old man?

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the words between brackets:

1. It is not necessary to run; we have plenty of time. (don't have to)

2. It is forbidden to shout in the library. (mustn't)

3. I advise you to wear a coat because it is cold. (should)

4. It is necessary for him to show his ID card at the gate. (has to)

7 Complete the following dialog:

A tourist is asking a tour guide some questions about the museum.

Tourist : When did the museum open?

Guide : The museum ① in 2021 for everyone to enjoy.

Tourist : What can we do inside the museum?

Guide : You can see artifacts, join ② and take photos.

Tourist : How should visitors ③ inside?

Guide : Visitors should be quiet, respectful, and not touch the artifacts.

Tourist : ④ you tell me about this artifact?

Guide : Of course! This is a golden necklace from ancient Egypt.

8 Write a paragraph of NIENTY (90) words on:

"The Grand Egyptian Museum"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review on Unit 8 (Family Values and Roles)

Lessons ① & ②

توائم	يجالس أو يعتنى بالاطفال
مهتم بالآخرين /حنون	يصلح
دور /وظيفة	يعتني بـ
الطفولة	بيتي /مصنوع بالمنزل
شريك	بأمان
مناقشة	يقبل
الأعمال المنزلية	يعطي طعماً /مذاقاً
الواجبات المدرسية	يجيب /يرد
مسؤولية	يصرّ / يصمم
دور /نوبة	شرط
شقة	لذيذ الطعم
مريض	مرتب
حلّ	عادل
الاكبر سناً	ودود
يصرّ / يصمم	يجادل
يحضر /يجهز	

Expressions & Prepositions

يتجادل مع	بدون شروط
يتجادل حول	يُخرج
له دور	يخص /ينتمي لـ
يتناوب الأدوار	يساعد في
يجهز لـ	يغسل الأطباق
يتفق على	يشارك مع
في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	في رأيي

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
يقود		
يحافظ على		
يقضي		
يتحطم/ يتعطل		
يطعم/ يغذي		
يجد		

1. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
patient		
fair		
caring		
tidy		
take care of		
fix		
roles		
apartment		

Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ity / -ing / -ly / -ian / -er / -ion	
discuss	car
Egypt	responsibil
teach	teach
safe	

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A. Write True (T) or False (F):



	T	F
1. Karim visited the farm on Friday.	☐	☐
2. Karim rode the donkey during his visit to the farm.	☐	☐

B. Listen again and complete:

- Karim helped feed the
- Karim watered the
- Karim ate lunch with his

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- To have a means to have a job or responsibility in a family or group.
a. car b. turn c. role d. house
- Someone who is is kind and helpful to others
a. caring b. clever c. cruel d. angry
- To something means to repair or make it work again.
a. break b. buy c. sell d. fix
- To get the noun from the verb "teach", we add the "er".
a. prefix b. suffix c. synonym d. antonym
- The suffix "....." changes the adjective "safe" into an adverb.
a. ly b. al c. or d. ed
- To get the noun from the verb "discuss", we add the suffix ".....".
a. ied b. ian c. ion d. ful
- I take care of my little brother after school. "Take care of" means
a. look for b. look after c. give up d. take out
- Our apartment has three bedrooms. "Apartment" can be replaced with
a. train b. school c. street d. flat
- Your room is tidy and comfortable. "Tidy" is opposite in meaning to
a. messy b. cheap c. wide d. clean
- In the school play, Lina has an important to play.
a. room b. place c. role d. rule
- The two sisters are; they have the same birthday and look exactly alike.
a. trips b. teams c. tools d. twins

12. Mr. Ali is a teacher. He always helps his students and listens to them.
 a. caring b. fair c. local d. delicious
13. The teacher helped us find the to the difficult math problem.
 a. vacation b. station c. solution d. tradition
14. Making my bed and tidying my room is my at home.
 a. childhood b. responsibility c. apartment d. equipment
15. We live in a beautiful town, where we can walk to the beach.
 a. farm b. desert c. mountain d. coastal
16. I have happy memories from my, especially my time with my grandmother.
 a. childhood b. housework c. schoolwork d. neighbor
17. Cleaning the floor and dusting the shelves are examples of
 a. schoolwork b. homework c. housework d. paperwork
18. I can't go out this afternoon. I have much to do for tomorrow's exam.
 a. housework b. whiteboard c. childhood d. schoolwork
19. My grandmother made a chocolate cake, and it tastes!
 a. difficult b. delicious c. dangerous d. distant
20. The game was Both teams had the same chance to win.
 a. fair b. local c. caring d. delicious

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

1. That blue bicycle belongs to me. (mine)

2. This is her notebook on the desk. (hers)

3. Those are our sandwiches for the picnic. (ours)

4. The red car belongs to Jack. ('s)

5. Is this your umbrella? (yours)

6. The house belongs to Mr. Ahmed. ('s)

7. This phone belongs to Sarah. (her)

8. This the cat's bed. (its)

9. These books belong to me. (my)

10. This food belongs to the dog.

(its)

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

insist - on - homework - chores - take

My brother and I often help our parents with housework **1** weekends. These **2** are done every day, so we always **3** turns washing the dishes after dinner. My parents **4** that we finish our schoolwork first, but they are very happy when we work as a team to keep our apartment tidy.

Lessons 3 , 5 & 6

تقاليد	حفلة مفاجئة
عادات	يتبادل
مصنوع يدويا	الفناء الخلفي
ضخم	قريب / حميم
كثير / زاهي الالوان	يحتفل بـ
مشهور	ينظم / يرتب
خاص / مخصوص	لحم الدجاج
يتجمع	طازج
يحدث	في أي وقت
يخلق / يصنع	احتفال
مخبز	بالتأكيد
عيد الميلاد	هذا هو العدل أو الصواب
ماذا عن	يحتفل بـ
عمل جماعي جيد	يصف
شيء عظيم	يزين
إنها لفكرة جيدة	أسرار
تقاليد	كتب الغموض (الأنغاز)
بالضبط	الأعمال المنزلية
محدد	أرفف
وصفي	شخصية
مخلص	خلفية
أمين	خاتمة
يعمل بجد	البناء الجسماني
متعاون	الطول / الارتفاع
محظوظ	ينفض الغبار
ذكي	يسقي

Expressions & Prepositions

يعلق الأضواء	أتمنى أن تكون بخير
يرتب الغرفة	لا يختلف
صديقي المقرب	يضحك على
يجهز طاولة الطعام	يأتي للمنزل
يسعد	في المقابل
موجود لمساعدة ...	ينتقل من .. إلى ...
يسقي النباتات	يسمع عن
لا تقلق	قليلا
سأعتني بذلك	ارتب فراشي
أثق فيه لمعرفة أسراري	في نفس عمر
	باختصار

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
يختفي/ يخفي		
يأتي		
يعلق/ يرفع		
يخبر		
يعدّ/ تغرب/ يضبط		
يجلس		
يعتقد		
يعلق		
يرتب (السرير)		

1. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
funny		
colorful		
exchange		
huge		
organize		
famous		
gather		
honest		
smart		
assist		
specific		
lucky		

2. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ion / -ery / -ful / -er / -y / -est / -ance / -tion / -ity

young	beauti
bigg	celebrat
funn	color
bak	personal
descrip	appear
help	

Lessons

Lessons 3 - 5 - 6
1 Complete the following dialog:

Huda is talking to Omar about his new school.

Huda : Hello Omar! Do you like your new school?

Omar : Yes, I like it very much.

Huda : What subject do you enjoy the most?

Omar : I enjoy ①

Huda : That's great. Why do you like it?

Omar : Because it is ②

Huda : When do you study this subject?

Omar : I study it on ③

Huda : Nice. Good luck with your study!

Omar : Thank you. See you ④

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. are ways of doing things that are passed from one generation to another.

- a. Chores b. Shelves c. Traditions d. Secrets

2. The things you remember from the past are your

- a. memories b. customs c. backyards d. playgrounds

3. To is to give something and receive something in return.

- a. assist b. exchange c. describe d. decorate

 4. They live in a **huge** house. "Huge" is closest in meaning to

- a. small b. tiny c. old d. enormous

 5. She gave a **smart** answer in class. "Smart" is opposite in meaning to

- a. foolish b. clever c. quick d. correct

6. Sara is an **honest** student. I trust her. "Honest" is an antonym for.....
 a. untrue b. unkind c. dishonest d. careful
7. The "ful" changes the noun "care" into an adjective.
 a. synonym b. prefix c. antonym d. suffix
8. The "un" makes the opposite of the adjective "true".
 a. suffix b. prefix c. antonym d. synonym
9. The suffix "....." changes the verb "bake" into a noun.
 a. ed b. al c. y d. s
10. We are putting a small swimming pool in our garden.
 a. kitchen b. backyard c. ceiling d. basement
11. The test was a quiz, so no one was prepared for it.
 a. surprise b. daily c. long d. easy
12. I bought a nice for my mother on her birthday.
 a. chore b. backyard c. secret d. gift
13. My aunt sent me a scarf that she made herself using soft wool.
 a. factory b. handmade c. expensive d. loyal
14. Yesterday, all the family around the table for dinner.
 a. gathered b. assisted c. celebrated d. surprised
15. A: Is this the right answer? - B:! It's the only correct answer.
 a. Slowly b. Nearly c. Exactly d. Safely
16. Could you please me with this difficult math problem?
 a. assist b. gather c. celebrate d. surprise
17. On Friday, my sister and I share, like cleaning and shopping.
 a. lessons b. secrets c. chores d. sports
18. A friend is someone who stays with you even when things are difficult.
 a. careless b. loyal c. noisy d. nervous
19. I don't allow anyone to read my private diary. I always keep my in it.
 a. keys b. shoes c. photos d. secrets
20. We will the New Year with music and dancing.
 a. celebrate b. assist c. gather d. surprise

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

sum - closest - visit - cheer - hobbies

I am lucky to have Osama as my ① friend. He is exactly the same age as I am, so we enjoy the same ② When I feel sad, he always knows how to ③ me up. I know he is always there for me whenever I need help. To ④ up, our friendship is very important.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Sami, and I live in a small house near the sea. Every morning, I wake up early and go for a long walk on the beach with my dog, Max. After our walk, I have breakfast and then go to my job. I am a photographer. I take pictures of people and families. In the afternoon, I sometimes work in my garden. I grow tomatoes and flowers. In the evening, I cook a nice dinner and read a book. It is a very peaceful life.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Sami takes his dog for a walk on the
 a. garden b. beach c. boat d. street
2. Sami works as a
 a. cook b. gardener c. farmer d. photographer

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What do you like to do in the morning?

4. Do you think Sami has a good life? Why?

5. What kind of pictures do you like to take or look at?

Test on Unit 8
A: Listening
1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:
A. Write True (T) or False (F):


	T	F
1. Hani and I went to the city on Sunday.	☐	☐
2. We saw old paintings at the museum.	☐	☐

B. Listen again and complete:

3. For lunch, we went to a small
4. I bought a new in the afternoon.
5. The city was very big and

2 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

- Two babies born to the same mother at the same time are "_____".
a. roles b. twins c. patients d. partners
- The players gathered to listen to the coach's plan. "Gathered" means _____.
a. left b. played c. cried d. met
- To get the comparative form of the adjective "old", we add the suffix "_____".
a. -er b. -ed c. -al d. -or
- Tidying my room and taking the trash out are my daily _____.
a. cheers b. chairs c. chores d. charts

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

music - huge - angry - helpful - fix

Every Saturday, my family shares chores at home. I try to ① _____ small problems, like a loose chair. Our house is ② _____, so work takes time. My sister is very ③ _____ and smiles while cleaning. When we finish together, we rest happily and enjoy tea in the evening after dinner and listen to ④ _____.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My brother gave me a new guitar for my birthday. I was very excited because I always wanted to play music. At first, it was very difficult. My fingers hurt a lot, and the sounds were not good. But I did not stop. I practiced for thirty minutes every day after school. My music teacher was very kind and helped me a lot. Now, I can play three easy songs. My family loves to listen to me play. I feel very happy when I play, and I want to learn a new song next month. It is a fantastic hobby.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- At first, learning the guitar was very _____.
a. easy b. difficult c. boring d. tiring
- The writer's _____ helped him a lot.
a. brother b. family c. father d. teacher

B. Answer the following questions:

- What birthday present did the writer receive?

- What problems did the writer face at first?

- How many songs can the writer play easily now?

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. Dumpling found a golden goose inside the tree.	☐	☐
2. The hotel owner and his three children were kind and generous.	☐	☐

B: Answer the following questions:

1. What did the hotel owner and his children want to do?

2. Why do you think the old man helped Dumpling, but not his brothers?

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the words between brackets:

1. Are those books theirs? (their)

2. The black shirt belongs to Ali. (Ali's)

3. That is your bike, not mine. (yours)

4. The notebook on the desk is Mona's. (hers)

7 Complete the following dialog:

Ahmed comes to attend Samir's sister's birthday party.

Ahmed : Hello, Samir. What are you doing?

Samir : I'm preparing for my sister's birthday party.

Ahmed : Can I ① you do anything you need?

Samir : Thank you very much. Now everything is Okay.

Ahmed : Look at this card I made. It's ② not from a shop.

Samir : It's perfect! Now, all of us can ③ in the garden. The food is ready.

Ahmed : Okay. After we eat, are we going to ④ your sister's birthday with a song.

8 Write a paragraph of NIENTY (90) words on:

"My new neighbor"

Review on Unit 9 (Making it yourself)

Lessons ① & ②

سلطة	معلقة ممثلة
صحي	يطوي- يلف
عيش	يومي
طبق	طحينة
طماطم	مخللات
الطعام	صلصة
خس	انشطة
جبنه	سندوتش
المطبخ	لذيذ
نظام يومي	رغيف
طاقة	تقليدي
مكونات	مقلي
خيار	يضيف
	يصب

Expressions & Prepositions

فلافل مقلية	يعمل قائمة
وجبة افطار جيدة	الروتين اليومي
بينما تغسل الاطباق	تقضي ثلاثون دقيقة في عمل التمارين
يعمل ساندوتش طعمية	جاهز للمدرسة
في الجيم	تشغل
تبقى منظمة	يحبوا اكل الفلافل للافطار

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present
Past simple
Past Participle

يشترى
يباع
يعطي
يضع
تشرق
يصبح
يقول

1. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
carefully		
right		
healthy		
organised		
traditional		
tidy		
clean		

2. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ped / -ful / -al / -ly / -y

tradition	health
chop	spoon
careful	tast

Lessons



Lessons 1 - 2

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Nada is talking to her mother about healthy food.

Mother : Do you like eating healthy food, Nada?

Nada : Yes, I do.

Mother : What ① do you usually eat?

Nada : I usually eat fruit, vegetables, milk and eggs.

Mother : Which food do you ② most?

Nada : I like ③ very much.

Mother : Why ④ you like this food?

Nada : Because it makes me strong and gives me energy.

2 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

- She enjoys activities after school.
a. everyday b. fatty c. tasty d. chopped
- She added a little to her salad to make it tasty.
a. tahini b. water c. petrol d. aspirin
- To form a noun from the adjective "curious", we add the suffix
a. -ful b. -ness c. -ity d. -ion
- We add "-y" to the word "taste" to form a / an
a. adverb b. verb c. noun d. adjective
- Before school, you should be for your lessons.
a. ready b. tasty c. traditional d. fried
- The antonym of "right" is
a. wrong b. neat c. healthy d. careful
- He used a of tahini for his meal.
a. plate b. loaf c. spoonful d. fold
- The chef prepared a falafel sandwich for the customers.
a. dull b. folding c. tasty d. everyday

9. They usually go to the _____ after work to stay fit.
 a. gym b. school c. garden d. spoon
10. We add "-ful" to the word "help" to form a/an _____.
 a. verb b. noun c. adjective d. adverb
11. We should _____ our time wisely to finish homework.
 a. add b. chop c. fold d. spend
12. The antonym of "healthy" is _____.
 a. good b. unhealthy c. traditional d. neat
13. She cut the vegetables _____ to make the salad.
 a. chopped b. folded c. added d. eaten
14. I want to _____ some salt to my soup.
 a. add b. fold c. turn d. spend
15. The _____ was served with tahini and sauce.
 a. loaf b. sandwich c. salad d. street
16. To form the adverb of the word "quick", we add the suffix _____.
 a. -ness b. -ful c. -ly d. -ion
17. The synonym of "organised" is _____.
 a. messy b. disorganised c. neat d. careless

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

1. The teacher's pen is on the desk. (of)

2. The color of the sky is blue. ('s)

3. The color of the paint is red. ('s)

4. The school of girls is organised. (The girls.....)

5. The names of the students are on the list. ('s)

6. The table's legs are wooden. (of)

7. The idea of the teacher was interesting. ('s)

8. Nada's shoes are new.

(of)

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

traditional - respectful - list - tasty -meals

In our family we follow a ❶ _____ of healthy habits when we plan our ❷ _____. We choose fresh fruit and vegetables and we enjoy ❸ _____ dishes that include warm bread, soup, and salad. These meals are ❹ _____ but also light and balanced, so we feel active all day.

5 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Many families today are choosing homemade meals instead of fast food. Homemade meals are usually fresher and healthier because they are prepared with clean ingredients and less oil. When people cook at home, they can control the amount of sugar and salt in their food. Families also enjoy eating together at home because it gives them time to talk and share their day. Cooking at home can save money, too, because buying fresh food is often cheaper than eating in restaurants. For many people, homemade meals mean better health, stronger relationships, and happy memories around the table.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is the main idea of the text?-----.
- a. How to cook fast food b. Why restaurants are important
- c. The benefits of homemade meals d. Different kinds of families
2. The word "they" in the sentence "because they are prepared with clean ingredients" refers to .
- a. restaurants b. families c. people d. homemade meals

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Give two benefits of homemade meals mentioned in the text.

4. What do families enjoy doing while eating together at home?

5. What do you think: Is cooking at home better than eating fast food? Why or why no?

Lessons 3 , 5 & 6

كعكة	ابن / ابنة العم
ملون	مميز - خاص
الضيوف	قائمة
احتفال	مناسبة
أنشطة	مندهش
تخرج	عيد ميلاد
اعضاء	لافتة
زينة	تنظيف
حجرة المعيشة	حفلة
لا يمكن نسيان	وجبات خفيفة
ملح	يحتفل
طبقة	يصيح
زيتون	لمبات - انوار
اناء	صناعة منزلية
فراولة	رئيس الطهاة
الحافة	تعليمات
وصفة اكل	مخفوق / مخلوط / متشابك
زيت	سلطانية
عسل نحل	ملاعق كبيرة
هش / ناعم	الحرارة
ذهبي	مطعم
يتذوق	عجينة
يخلط	دقيق
يضيف	خميرة
يصب	إضافات
يسرع / يندفع	يحرك

Expressions & Prepositions

يعد خطة	تقوم بالتسوق
يعلق / يرفع	يغلق
يعد ساندوتشات	في الاحتفالات
يعد من اجل	صنع لافتة كبيرة لعيد الميلاد
في نهاية اليوم	هل يمكن ان اضيف؟
ابدا بخلط	يضع البيتزا في الفرن
يقلب	يصنع الكيك في البيت
ماذا يجب ان افعل؟	لا استطيع الانتظار
	مستعد للمدرسة

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

ياخذ		
يقول		
ياكل		
يكتب		
يلصق		
يصنع		
ينشر		
يصبح		
يضع		
يكسر		

1. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
shout		
celebrate		
surprised		
special		
rush		
smooth		
thin		
homemade		
fresh		

2. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ful / -able / un- / -ion / -d / -ing / -ture / -ed / -en / -er

surprise	forgett
forgettable	celebrat
color	lay
mix	gold
scrambl	instruct
topp	



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ali is at a fast food restaurant asking for a meal.

Ali : Excuse me, I'd like to order a meal, please.

Worker : Sure. What would you like to ① _____ ?

Ali : I'd like a chicken sandwich and some fries, please.

Worker : Would you like a ② _____ with your meal?

Ali : Yes, I'd like a cola.

Worker : Do you want your sandwich ③ _____ or to take away?

Ali : To take away, please.

Worker : How would you like to ④ _____ ?

Ali : I'll pay in cash. Thank you.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He invited all the club _____ to the meeting.

- a. members b. guests c. decorations d. snacks

2. My sister helped me _____ the living room with balloons.

- a. decorate b. destroy c. build d. hit

3. The synonym of "special" is _____.

- a. common b. usual c. ordinary d. unique

4. We add the suffix _____ to the verb "surprise" to form an adjective

- a. -er b. -ed c. -ion d. -ful

5. The antonym of "celebrate" is _____.

- a. enjoy b. ignore c. mark d. share

6. We add the suffix _____ to the verb "celebrate" to form the noun.

- a. -er b. -ed c. -ion d. -ful

7. We served _____ like chips and sandwiches at the party.

- a. decorations b. snacks c. banner d. celebration

8. I was very when I saw my birthday cake.
 a. colorful b. surprised c. cleaned d. shouted
9. We put up a big on the front door to welcome the guests.
 a. banner b. juice c. cake d. shout
10. After the party, we helped with the
 a. celebration b. clean-up c. shout d. occasion
11. We add the prefix to form the opposite of "polite"
 a. in b. dis c. im d. ir
12. The antonym of "surprised" is
 a. amazed b. astonished c. calm d. shocked
13. The synonym of "shout" is
 a. talk b. speak c. cry out d. listen
14. We add the prefix to form the opposite of "forgettable"
 a. in b. dis c. un d. im
15. During we enjoy Iftar with our family.
 a. birthday b. Ramadan c. graduation d. celebration
16. We add the suffix to the verb "decorate" to form a noun
 a. -er b. -ed c. -ion d. -able

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

members - special - celebration - help - guests

Last week, our family had a big ① at home. All the family ② helped with the preparations, and we invited many ③ Everyone was surprised when they saw the decorations and the beautiful cake. It was a very ④ day because we spent happy time together.

Test on Unit 9

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A. Write True (T) or False (F):



	T	F
1. Students take homemade meals to school because they are healthy.	☐	☐
2. All families buy fast food every day.	☐	☐

B. Listen again and complete:

- Parents prepare sandwiches and _____ in the morning.
- Homemade meals help children _____ in class.
- My favorite lunch is rice and _____.

2 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

- We used _____ balloons to decorate the room.
a. colorful b. clean-up c. surprised d. careful
- The _____ was held in the living room.
a. party b. juice c. cake d. banner
- The antonym of "thin" is _____.
a. skinny b. slim c. thick d. soft
- To form the opposite of the word "agree," we add the prefix _____.
a. re- b. un- c. dis- d. in-

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

dough - brush - restaurant - add - layer

Last weekend, I went to a ① _____ that is famous for its homemade bread. The chef prepared the ② _____ by carefully mixing flour, salt, and yeast. He told me to ③ _____ my favorite toppings and create each ④ _____ perfectly. I was sure it would taste great. After baking, the bread smelled amazing.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last weekend, I took my family to have lunch in a big restaurant in Alexandria. It's a famous restaurant. The waiter brought us the menu. I ordered chicken with rice. My wife asked for meat balls with pasta. My son ordered fish with salad. My daughter wanted to eat meat with potatoes. At the end of the meal, I had to pay a lot of money. The food was delicious, but the prices weren't good enough. The weather was great. We walked to our home happily.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The mother ordered meat balls with
 a. pasta b. rice c. salad d. potatoes
- The writer had to pay money.....
 a. little b. less c. much d. few

B. Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the passage?

- Where is the restaurant?

- Do you think that the writer enjoyed eating in the restaurant? Why/ Why not?

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. The children were angry at Dummling.	☐	☐
2. The road was crowded with people staring at Dummling and the goose.	☐	☐

B: Answer the following questions:

- How did Dummling carry the goose when he left the hotel?

- Why were people laughing as Dummling walked down the road?

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the words between brackets:

1. The dog's tail is long. (of)

2. Peter's house is near the school. (of)

3. The student's homework is on the desk. (The homework.....)

4. The nest of the bird is in the tree. (The bird's)

7 Complete the following dialog:

Omar meets Adel ata restaurant

Omar : Hello Adel! How are you?

Adel : I'm ①....., thanks.

Omar : What will you ②.....?

Adel : I'm going to eat ③.....

Omar : Pizza! ④.....?

Adel : Because it is delicious.

Omar : I'll have one too.

8 Write a paragraph of NIENTY (90) words on:

"Why do you think we should eat healthy food?"

Review on Unit 10 (Helping Others)

Lessons ① & ②

اهتمام	لطف / عطف
مقابلة	هادف / له معنى
متطوع / يتطوع	مجتمع
بود / بحفاوة (ترحيباً حاراً)	منشور
تجربة حياتية / يجرب	حي سكني
يلاحظ	مجز (معنوياً) / مكافئ
يحيي	يحسن
يدرّش	يدعو
يدرك	يذكر
يثبت	جهد / مجهود
ينظم	راحة
يشرح	سعادة
كبار السن	مقعد خشبي طويل
جار	قفص
ماوى حيوانات	ثقة
مسؤولية	عمل تطوعي
عمل جماعي	مصنوع منزلياً
	بشدة / بقوة

Expressions & Prepositions

يشارك تجربة حياتية (خبرة)	مليء بـ
يتفق على	يظهر اللطف
يقلل التلوث	يناقش ... مع
يجمع القمامة	يطرق على
يبني ثقة	يعطي اهتماماً / رعاية
يفكر في	محتاج / بحاجة إلى
يحدث فرقاً	بعيد جداً

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
يفكر		
يختار		
يعني		
يشعر		
يعطي		
يقضي		

1. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
carefully		
colorful		
kind		
meaningful		
friendly		
lonely		

2. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ment / -ness / -ly / -ful / -hood / -ce / -less / -ity / un-

friendly	careful
neighbor	warm
differen	responsibil
color	meaning
simp	kind
happi	announce
deep	lone
kind	care
color	meaning

Lessons



Lessons 1 - 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- is the area or place where people live near each other.
a. Neighbor b. Neighborhood c. Childhood d. Comfort
- Teaching a child to read is truly
a. rewarding b. unimportant c. meaningless d. unkind
- We add the prefix to get the antonym of the word "friendly".
a. in- b. dis- c. un- d. ir-
- Yassin felt lonely. The synonym of "lonely" is
a. sociable b. friendly c. isolated d. cruel
- The suffix "-ly" changes the adjective "warm" into a/an
a. noun b. verb c. adverb d. conjunction
- Voluntary work helps a difference for people.
a. do b. get c. make d. take
- are small pieces of paper with information or announcements.
a. Experiences b. Actions c. Flyers d. Responsibilities
- The suffix changes the word "color" into an adjective.
a. -ive b. -al c. -ful d. -ian
- Please give to the safety rules at the animal shelter.
a. care b. attention c. confidence d. difference
- My best friend is kind. "....." is the opposite of "kind".
a. Cruel b. Sociable c. friendly d. gentle
- She felt a bit nervous before her first university
a. interview b. purpose c. comfort d. responsibility
- To get the noun from the word "responsible", we add the suffix
a. -ity b. -ility c. -ment d. -ion
- To show, they created homemade meals for families in need.
a. announcement b. flyers c. kindness d. comfort
- She walked carefully. "**Carefully**" is similar in meaning to
a. carelessly b. colorless c. cautiously d. quickly
- Teamwork helps students confidence at school.
a. do b. build c. discuss d. share

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

proud - volunteers - rewarding - experience - chatting

Our neighborhood is a great place to live because people show kindness to each other. Last week, I joined a group of ① to help the elderly. We gave them attention and spent time ② It was a meaningful ③ for me. We also shared around flyers to invite more people to join us. I feel deeply ④ of our community.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

1. Selim intends to visit his cousins next Friday. (will)

.....

2. Nahla always cleans her room on Saturdays. (next Saturday)

.....

3. I won't go to the park because it is raining. (Why)

.....

4. We intend to play a football match after school. (will)

.....

5. Does she help her mother every day? (tomorrow)

.....

6. Laila wrote a short story last week. (next month)

.....

7. I didn't write the email last night. (tomorrow)

.....

8. The volunteers will plant trees in the school garden. (Where)

.....

9. I didn't study well, so I get bad grades. (I promise)

.....

10. Adel is a fast runner. I expect him to win the race. (will)

.....

4 Complete the following dialog:

Sami is talking to Hany about their plans for the weekend.

Sami : What will you do this Saturday?

Hany : I will ① at the local animal shelter.

Sami : ② will you do there?

Hany : I will feed the dogs and keep the place clean.

Sami : ③ it be a meaningful experience?

Hany : Yes, it will be very rewarding and fun.

Sami : Will you join a team?

Hany : Yes, I will work with a great team to make a ④

Lessons ③ , ⑤ & ⑥

وحيده/بمفرده	جهد
قوي	صبر
مجاني	ضخم
مشروع	أمل
يومي	كامل
مفيد	حقيبة تسوق
يغير	احترام
يتبرع	يحمل
بالإضافة الى	عمل خيري
يهتم/يرعى	رائع
فرصة	يفهم
عامل	يعامل
قرية	جائع

Expressions & Prepositions

يكتف مالاً	يكتسم ل
يتعلم مهارات جديدة	في الواقع / في الحقيقة
يقوم بعمل (تطوعي)	جزء من
يفكر في	يجهز ... ل
فخور بـ	يخطط ل
على الأقل	يصنع منشورات
يعطي فرصة	ينظف

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

يكتف
يبد
يعني
يفهم
يسمع
يقابل

1. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
sad		
free		
difficult		
huge		
alone		
powerful		
simple		
local		
ready		
excellent		
proud		
start		

2. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ful / -ly / -ment	
power_____	calm_____
slow_____	useful_____
environ_____	

Lessons



Lessons 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A simple smile is a gift that does not _____ money.
a. change b. carry c. cost d. show
- _____ is the ability to wait calmly.
a. Respect b. Effort c. Patience d. Action
- Dalida looks sad. "_____" is the antonym of "sad".
a. Effective b. Sociable c. Cheerful d. Weak
- To be _____ is to have control over people and events.
a. powerful b. patient c. cheerful d. huge
- _____ fact, helping others makes us feel very happy and proud.
a. In b. On c. At d. With
- We get the adverb from the word "slow" by adding the suffix _____.
a. -er b. -ing c. -ly d. -al
- This task is simple. The word "_____" is similar in meaning to "simple".
a. hard b. difficult c. complex d. easy
- The word "_____" means trying hard to do something.
a. hope b. patience c. effort d. project
- The park is free today. The opposite of "free" is _____.
a. costly b. no paid c. at no cost d. cheap
- To get the adjective from the noun "power", we add the suffix _____.
a. -ive b. -al c. -ful d. -able

11. The words "huge" and "enormous" are
 a. opposites b. antonyms c. synonyms d. suffixes
12. Sharing flyers about the clean-up project is very
 a. weak b. powerless c. ineffective d. useful

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

effort - change - hope - respect - mean

Last month, I noticed an elderly man who always sat alone in the park. I decided to take action. Every day, I smiled at him and stopped to chat. I showed him ① and gave him my attention. This small ② brought him happiness. I learned that a simple act of kindness can ③ someone's day. It was a powerful experience that gave me ④ No one should feel so alone.

Lessons

Lessons 5 - 6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- This helps many people in our small village.
 a. charity b. environment c. community d. patience
- Shaza did an **excellent** job. The antonym of "excellent" is
 a. outstanding b. common c. great d. amazing
- They voluntary work to help clean the local park.
 a. make b. get c. do d. take
- My son is **ready** for school. "....." is the opposite of "ready".
 a. Ready b. Prepared c. Unprepared d. Organized
- You should your neighbors with respect and care.
 a. learn b. protect c. prepare d. treat
- The noun from the word "environ" is formed by adding the suffix
 a. -tion b. -ence c. -ment d. -ness
- I will **start** my work next Monday. "Start" is similar in meaning to
 a. begin b. end c. finish d. stop
- Please a chance to the new worker to learn.
 a. make b. take c. give d. do

9. We add the suffix to get the adverb of the word "useful".
 a. -al b. -less c. -ness d. -ly
10. Mazen feels proud today. "....." has the same meaning of 'proud'.
 a. Ashamed b. Pleased c. Sad d. Angry
11. We go to the local shop every weekend. The antonym of "local" is
 a. national b. regional c. international d. nearby
12. I will prepare a special gift my kind neighbor.
 a. of b. at c. with d. for

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

alone - donate - skills - bring - clean up

Next holiday, I will do something meaningful to my community. I will join a local charity that helps hungry people. I want to prepare meals and ① my time there. I will work with other volunteers to ② our village park and protect the environment. I will also visit elderly neighbors who live ③ I believe that voluntary work will help me learn new ④ and bring hope to our community.

Test on Unit 10

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A. Write True (T) or False (F):

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



	T	F
1. The neighbors found the dog after one week.	☐	☐
2. The neighbors made flyers with a picture to help.	☐	☐

B. Listen again and complete:

3. Mrs. Ghada felt very when she lost her dog.
4. The neighbors shared the flyers around the
5. Mrs. Ghada was so happy and thanked her neighbors

2 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

- We can help by planting trees to the environment.
 a. learn b. protect c. prepare d. treat
- The word "....." means without other people.
 a. alone b. sociable c. friendly d. together
- We add the suffix to get the noun from the word "differ".
 a. -ment b. -ion c. -ness d. -ence
- Helping others is **meaningful**. The synonym of "meaningful" is
 a. unimportant b. important c. meaningless d. unnecessary

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

comfort - keep - effort - patience - feed

My family has a new plan. We want to help more at home. My job is to ① my room clean. My sister will ② our pet cat. My parents prepare our meals. On Saturday, we do a whole house clean up together. We listen to music and it becomes fun! This ③ makes our home a happy place. I realized that taking care of our home is important and brings everyone ④

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My brother and I love animals. We wanted to do voluntary work. We chose to help at the local animal shelter. **It** was a big responsibility. We had to feed the cats and dogs and clean up their spaces. It was difficult work that needed patience, but we worked as a team. We learned that animals need care and attention just like people. We treated every animal with **gentleness**. Seeing a sad dog become happy was a powerful feeling. This rewarding work did not cost money, but it gave us so much happiness. We felt proud of our useful help.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The passage is mainly about
 a. loving animals b. hard volunteer work
 c. helping at a shelter d. learning about pets
- The word "gentleness" means to
 a. be strong and quick b. be soft and kind
 c. work very hard d. feel very happy

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?

4. What were their two main jobs at the animal shelter?

5. How would you feel if you were with the writer and his brother?

Story**5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):**

	T	F
1. Dummling carried a magical goose on his back.	☐	☐
2. The sight of the parade caused people to feel amazed.	☐	☐

B: Answer the following questions:

1. How do you think Dummling felt when everyone started laughing and clapping?

2. Why do you think the goose made everyone follow Dummling?

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the words between brackets:

1. They are expected to finish the project on time. (will)

2. Don't worry. I promise to carry the bags for you. (will)

3. Ahmed did well in the test. I expect him to get high marks. (will)

4. Dad has left the office. He arrives home soon. (will)

Review on Unit 11 (The Natural World)

Lessons ① & ②

شلالات	شاهق / مرتفع جدًا
مناظر	يرتفع / يعلو
هدير/صوت دوي/صخب	مسطح
عجائب / روائع	ضباب / رذاذ
تشكيلة / مجموعة متنوعة	نوع / فصيلة
منتصف النهار	معالم / علامات بارزة
مناخ	شلالات فيكتوريا
البيئة	لا نهاية له / متواصل
الحياة اليومية	ضخم / عملاق
مياة عذبة	الذي يقع
جيل	كريم وافي من الشمس
مراسل	طبيعي
محطة إذاعية	مدو / رعد
توقعات الطقس	قوي
تحذير	مرطب
تحديث	في النهاية / أخيرا
شريك	في هذه الأثناء / أثناء ذلك
حالة الطقس	يؤثر على
بحكمة	يجزب / يمزب
بالخارج / في مكان مفتوح	

Expressions & Prepositions

يشبه	ما حالة الطقس
يعتني بـ	لا يوجد فرصة لـ
يحافظ على رطوبة الجسم	سما صافية
مليء بـ	معروف بـ
يتحطم	ما نوع الطقس

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

يسقط / ينخفض

يُظهر / يعرض

يقع / يتمدد

1. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
natural		
flat		
rise		
powerful		
endless		
full		

2. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-al / -less / -ous / -ful

natur

beauti

thunder

power

end

Lessons

Lessons 1 - 2

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A. Write True (T) or False (F):

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



T F

1. Alexandria is cooler than Cairo.

☐ ☐

2. Aswan is cold most of the year.

☐ ☐

B. Listen again and complete:

1. Cairo usually has winters.
2. Aswan is very and sunny.
3. In Sinai towns, nights can be

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A is a famous and easily seen building or place.
a. roar b. wonder c. landmark d. sight
2. A is a group of animals or plants whose members are similar.
a. species b. series c. planet d. generation
3. is light fog or tiny drops of water in the air.
a. List b. Feast c. Rest d. Mist
4. The kitchen was **full** of smoke. "Full" is opposite in meaning to
a. filled b. empty c. clear d. famous
5. The USA is a **powerful** country. The word "powerful" means
a. strong b. weak c. clever d. amazing
6. This surface is not **flat** enough for the glasses. "Flat" is an antonym for
a. even b. level c. rough d. smooth
7. The "ous" changes the noun "thunder" into an adjective.
a. prefix b. suffix c. synonym d. antonym
8. The suffix "....." changes the noun "nature" into an adjective.
a. or b. ing c. ed d. al
9. We saw beautiful where the river water poured from a high mountain.
a. deserts b. apartments c. waterfalls d. skyscrapers
10. In the city, there are too many buildings that are very, very tall.
a. towering b. showering c. powering d. breaking
11. Scientists found a new of bird that lives only on one small island.
a. colors b. supplies c. secrets d. species
12. The pyramids of Egypt are one of the greatest of the world.
a. shops b. wonders c. foods d. roads
13. It is better to drink fruit juice instead of drinks with artificial sugar.
a. natural b. false c. expensive d. waxy

14. After the lightning, we heard a sound in the sky.
 a. generous b. numerous c. thunderous d. previous
15. From the airplane window, the clouds looked like an white sea.
 a. early b. easy c. empty d. endless
16. At the farm, there was a pumpkin that was amazingly big.
 a. giant b. light c. narrow d. small
17. Our new school is near the park, so we can walk there easily.
 a. affected b. varied c. located d. updated
18. Egypt is known its amazing ancient pyramids and the long Nile River.
 a. with b. for c. at d. about
19. What is the weather outside? Should I wear my jacket?
 a. like b. as c. same d. similar
20. My sister and I look each other so much. People think we are twins.
 a. after b. for c. at d. like

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

species - hydrated - protect - weather - landmark

Last weekend, we visited the big mountain, a famous ① in our country. The ② was very hot and sunny, so my mom told us to drink a lot of water to stay ③ On our walk, we saw many different ④ of beautiful birds. My favorite was the small blue one that sang a lovely song. It was a perfect day.

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

1. My bag costs \$20. Your bag costs \$35. (cheaper)

2. History is very interesting, but science is a little boring. (more)

3. Ali runs very fast. Sami runs quite fast. Ahmed runs slowly. (fastest)

4. The blue car isn't as expensive as the red car. (cheaper)

5. The city is very noisy. The countryside is very quiet. (less noisy)

6. Yesterday's test was hard, but this test is easy (easier)

7. The green dress is beautiful. The yellow dress is also beautiful. (as beautiful)
8. The winter in Canada is not as cold as the winter in Spain. (colder)
9. Among all the students, Ali speaks English the best. (than)
10. This book has 200 pages. That book has 350 pages. (smaller)

Lessons 3, 5 & 6

مواد غذائية	على عكس / بخلاف
لسان	حساس
نبات مصيدة الذباب (فينوس)	متحمس / حريص
رائع / مذهل	شاسع / كبير الاتساع
جدير بـ / مستحق لـ	قوي
سريع	متطاير / متكسر
تنافسي	فريد
مفاجأة / يفاجئ	رائع
يسمح	شاهق الارتفاع
الغابة المطيرة	يمتد
اللون البنفسجي	ينجو / يبقى على قيد الحياة
لسعة شمس	كثبان رملية
نجم البحر	سنام
خيزران	دهون
أوراق	إنجازات
النمو	قطع أثرية
يتكيف / يتأقلم	توقعات الطقس
أنت على حق	جولة
حسنًا	عجائب
لا أستطيع الانتظار	متحف
يا لها من روعة!	مجد
هذا رائع!	مخلوقات
يتقلص / يتناقص	رموش
متنوع بيولوجيًا	كبير / رائع
سريع النمو	فريسة
	داكن اللون

Expressions & Prepositions

أكثر من ٢,٥ مليون	يحصل على المغذيات من
من بين العديد	يخزن الماء
عن طريق غلق أوراقه بسرعة	يستمر في الانكماش
يستحق الحماية	يتكيف للبقاء على قيد الحياة
يكون حريصا على أن	يتغذى من
يحافظ على رطوبة الجسم	نمو سريع
أهلا بك في	يفقدون مساكنهم
انت تقصد	يصل إلى
هل سبق لك أن	يحميه من
ينجو من الحرارة	يستفيد من

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

يواصل
يفقد

1. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
fascinating		
survive		
adapt		
protect		
feed		
competitive		
biodiverse		
rapid		
endless		
unique		
hydrated		
vast		
survive		

2. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

ment- / un-

like

achieve

Lessons



Lessons 3 - 5 - 6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Venus _____ is a plant that eats insects.
a. butterfly b. flytrap c. rainforest d. starfish
- If something is _____, it has many different species.
a. sensitive b. fascinating c. competitive d. biodiverse
- To _____ is to change in order to survive.
a. adapt b. eat c. drink d. adopt
- There was rapid growth in the small town. "Rapid" is an antonym for _____.
a. fast b. quick c. slow d. dead
- The desert is vast and quiet. The word "vast" is similar in meaning to _____.
a. small b. narrow c. tiny d. large
- She waited in an endless line at the office. "Endless" is a synonym for _____.
a. unlimited b. faraway c. nearby d. limited
- A cat uses its rough _____ to clean its fur and drink water.
a. nose b. ear c. tongue d. tail
- My skin is very _____ to the sun, so I always wear a sunscreen.
a. strong b. sensitive c. dark d. happy
- While walking on the beach, we found a bright _____ in a small pool of water.
a. starfish b. spider c. giraffe d. elephant
- The island is _____ and full of different species of plants and animals.
a. empty b. naughty c. rude d. biodiverse
- Be careful with this cotton shirt. If you wash it in hot water, it will _____.
a. grow b. shrink c. tear d. disappear

12. Plants get important from the soil and water to stay healthy.
a. artifacts b. secrets c. nutrients d. problems
13. The athlete felt the of winning the gold medal in front of his fans.
a. injury b. diary c. worry d. glory
14. A helps catch insects in the garden during the summer.
a. flytrap b. firewood c. footstep d. roommate
15. You should wear a heavy jacket to protect yourself the cold wind.
a. of b. from c. with d. about
16. You will from eating more vegetables if you want to be healthy.
a. look b. worry c. give d. benefit
17. I read a book about the stars and planets; it was so interesting.
a. fascinating b. boring c. growing d. changing
18. In very cold places, people and animals adapt to the extreme cold.
a. feel b. agree c. survive d. break
19. This is a fantastic book. It's reading.
a. good b. worth c. kind d. deep
20. After the rain, the garden showed growth. All the plants looked bigger.
a. old b. green c. small d. rapid

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

underground - shrink - heat - glory - roots

The cactus is a unique plant. It does not ① in the hot sun. Its ② are sensitive and search for water deep ③ Its thick skin protects it from the strong wind and the burning ④

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My family and I went to the city zoo on Sunday. It was a sunny day, perfect for a visit. We saw many different animals. The lions were big and lazy, sleeping in the sun. Their roar was very loud! The monkeys were very funny; they were jumping from tree to tree and eating bananas. My favorite animal was the giraffe.

It was incredibly tall and used its very long tongue to eat leaves from the highest branches. We also watched the penguins. They looked funny and were amazing swimmers in the cold water. We walked a lot and felt tired, so we sat down and ate some delicious ice cream. It was a fantastic and fun day for everyone..

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The giraffe used its long tongue to eat.....
 a. ice cream b. bananas c. leaves d. animals
- The penguins were very good at in cold water.
 a. swimming b. sleeping c. jumping d. walking

B. Answer the following questions:

- What was the writer's favorite animal at the zoo? Why?

.....

- Why did the writer and his family feel tired?

.....

- What did the writer and his family like about the monkeys?

.....

4 Complete the following dialog:

Maya and Hany are talking about a visit to a coastal town.

Maya : Hi Hany! I went to a beautiful coastal town last weekend.

Hany : That's ①.....! Did you like it?

Maya : Yes, I enjoyed it very much.

Hany : What was the ②.....like there?

Maya : It was sunny and warm.

Hany : Is it ③.....visiting?

Maya : Yes, it's worth visiting. I'm sure you will enjoy it.

Hany : Is it ④.....from here?

Maya : No. It's a 30-minute drive from here.

Test on Unit 11

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A. Write True (T) or False (F):

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



	T	F
1. Rami joined the cooking course during the school year.	☐	☐
2. Rami learned how to use kitchen tools safely.	☐	☐

B. Listen again and complete:

- Rami joined a cooking course at a center.
- The teacher showed the students how to use kitchen tools
- After the course, Rami planned to cook for his

2 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

- If a place is, it has many different species of animals and plants.
a. competitive b. challenging c. biodiverse d. friendly
- This shop sells unique clothes. "Unique" is similar in meaning to
a. special b. common c. clever d. clean
- To change the noun "nature" into an adjective, we add the suffix ".....".
a. or b. er c. ed d. al
- If you stay on the beach without sunscreen, you will get a painful
a. sunset b. sunburn c. sunrise d. sunshade

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

worth - proud - relaxes - feed - benefit

Every morning, Adam helps on his uncle's farm. He ① the animals before school. The work is sometimes rapid, but Adam enjoys it. He believes the hard work is ② his time. This activity brings a clear ③, as he learns responsibility and feels ④ of helping his family every day.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Sara has a small garden at home. Every morning, she waters the flowers and takes care of the plants. She also feeds the birds and watches them eat seeds. Sometimes, her brother helps her tidy the garden. Sara feels happy when she sees the plants grow. She likes to sit under the tree and read a book. On weekends, she invites her friends to play in the garden. Gardening teaches her patience and makes her feel calm. She is proud of her garden and likes sharing its beauty with her family and friends.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Sara waters the every morning.
a. flowers b. books c. dogs d. shoes
- On weekends, Sara invites her to the garden.
a. teachers b. friends c. neighbors d. cousins

B. Answer the following questions:

- Who helps Sara in the garden sometimes?
.....

- What does Sara do under the tree?
.....

- How does gardening make Sara feel?
.....

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. Dummling's parade made the princess smile and laugh.	☐	☐
2. The king broke his promise after seeing Dummling.	☐	☐

B: Answer the following questions:

- How did the king feel when he saw his daughter laughing?
.....

- Why do you think the princess laughed at Dummling's parade?
.....

1. Football is more popular than tennis in my country.

2. This is the smallest apartment in the building.

3. February is shorter than March. (longer)

- 

Sami and Laila are talking about their history exam.

Sami : Hey Laila, the history test is tomorrow!

Laila : Yes. How about ① _____ some lessons?

Sami : That's a good idea. The ②..... is a quiet place to work.

Laila : Okay. 3 should we meet in the library?

Sami : We can meet there  _____ the break.

Laila : Great! See you in the library.

"My new school"

1. Erklärung
 2. Beispiel
 3. Beispiel

Review on Unit 12 (I Will Be Responsible)

Lessons ① & ②

أعمال منزلية	يقاطع
يضع	يؤثر
بالترتيب/مرتّب	يرتب
يجهز المائدة	يبدو
ينفض الغبار	صداقة
أدب/تهذيب	سلوكي
أخلاق حميدة/حسن الخلق	هدف
احترام/يحترم	مواد/أدوات
ينتبه	فهم
يشعر بالفخر	سلة مهملات
بشكل مرتّب	خلال
حتى	مهذب/مؤدّب
شوكة	طاقم عمل / موظفون
خصوصاً	مُرُحّب
جهد	يعامل
مُنظّم	

Expressions & Prepositions

يغسل الأطباق	يؤدي المهام المنزلية / الواجبات المدرسية
يرتب السرير	يضع (شيء ما) في مكانه
في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	يتجنب المشتتات
ينفض الغبار عن الرفوف	يعطي فرصة
يتبع القواعد / لديه قواعد	يرفع يده
في الوقت المحدد	يظهر الاحترام / المسؤولية
يرمي القمامة	يبني صداقة
يبقى مركزاً	

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

يُحضر / يجلب

يجهز / يضع

يعني / يقصد

يقضى (وقتاً)

1. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
simple		
organized		
respect		
late		
clean		
polite		
safe		
focused		

2. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ship / -ly / -al / -ity / -ence / -ed / -ion / -ness

distract

polite

responsibil

organiz

especial

neat

friend

careful

kind

behavior

pati

focus

Lessons



Lessons 1 - 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To _____ is to clean something by wiping away dirt or dust.
a. respect b. place c. dust d. interrupt
2. Students show _____ by finishing their homework on time.
a. materials b. understanding c. responsibility d. friendship
3. To change the noun "behavior" into an adjective, we add the suffix _____.
a. -ful b. -ive c. -al d. -ed
4. The antonym of the word "safe" is _____.
a. secure b. dangerous c. protected d. careful
5. The phrase "_____" means to listen carefully and focus on what is happening.
a. set the table b. pay attention c. do chores d. show respect
6. Please _____ trash in the bin, not on floor.
a. throw b. seem c. treat d. allow
7. I did **extra** homework today. "Extra" is similar in meaning to _____.
a. needed b. important c. additional d. required
8. We add the prefix _____ to form the antonym of "polite".
a. in- b. ir- c. dis- d. im-
9. "_____" are the tasks or jobs that you do at home to help.
a. Chores b. Distractions c. Manners d. Goals
10. The adverb from "neat" can be formed by adding the suffix _____.
a. -ly b. -al c. -ness d. -ion
11. When you do your homework, you should _____ distractions like TV.
a. affect b. interrupt c. avoid d. arrange
12. Mariam shows _____ by saying "please" and "thank you."
a. friendship b. disrespect c. politeness d. attention
13. I feel proud of my work. The synonym of "proud" is _____.
a. satisfied b. rude c. ashamed d. neat
14. Lily puts her toys _____ after playing every day.
a. way b. away c. ways d. a way
15. I _____ the table before dinner every evening at home.
a. sat b. set c. seat d. sit

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

proud - friendship - distracted - understanding - interrupt

A good student knows how to show respect. He pays attention in class and does not ① He brings his materials and notebook every day. He always tries to be on time. His goal is to improve his ② He treats his classmates with politeness to build ③ He works hard and this effort makes him feel ④ He knows that good learning needs focus.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

1. There are many stars in the sky. (a)
.....
2. She ate three loaves of bread for lunch. (much)
.....
3. They visited many museums in London. (a lot of)
.....
4. We have some milk for breakfast. (any)
.....
5. There are many chairs in the apartment. (much)
.....
6. We didn't take any photos on the trip. (some)
.....
7. We saw several monkeys in the forest. (a lot)
.....
8. Do they have any questions about the project? (Yes)
.....
9. I read a lot of magazines last week. (many)
.....
10. Yes, there is some sugar in the jar. (Is)
.....

4 Complete the following dialogue:

A teacher is asking Ali about how a student can be good.

Teacher: Ali, can you tell me one thing a good student should do?

Ali: Yes, a good student should bring all their

① to class, like books and notebooks.

Teacher: Good. ② is that important?

Ali : Because this helps them follow lessons and learn better.

Teacher: Excellent. ③ should a student act in class?

Ali : They should raise their hand before speaking.

Teacher: Why should we do that, Sara?

Ali : To show respect and give others ④ to talk.

Teacher: Perfect.

Lessons ③ , ⑤ & ⑥

البيئة المحيطة	النظافة الشخصية / الصحة العامة
مراهق	يشارك في
وقت الشاشة	يسترخي
لائق بدنياً	يحد من / يقلل
بدني / جسدي	يهم
مرض	متوازن
رفاهية / صحة جيدة	حبوب كاملة
صحي	بروتين
اختيار	ركوب الدراجات
عادة أساسية	الرئتين
مشروبات سكرية	عضلات
يوقع	في الوقت المحدد
ينسى	خصوصية
كرم الضيافة	يرتب / ينظم
أشقاء	مدير المدرسة
ابنة	تماماً / بالضبط
تعليمات	ممرات
أحفاد	ابن

Expressions & Prepositions

يتبع عادات صحية	يعتني بـ / يهتم بـ
يقلل التوتر	يشارك في
يعتني بـ	يحافظ على لياقة
يشعر بالانتعاش	يحمي من
يعطي تعليمات	يعطي طاقة
مرحباً بك في	يبقى آمناً / بصحة جيدة / قوياً / نشيطاً

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

ينسى

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

1. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
smart		
healthy		
strong		
personal		
balanced		
plenty		
responsible		
active		
positive		
calm		
keep		
remember		

2. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ous / -ible / -ing / in- / -al / un- / -y / -ness / ir- / -ed / -ful / -ion

ill	refresh
surround	focus
respons	regular
person	active
walk	health
run	sugar
cycl	balanc
physic	fit
danger	care
instruct	

Lessons



Lesson 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- is the practice of yourself and your surroundings clean.
a. Habit b. Hygiene c. Well-being d. Stress
- Good sleep and healthy food improve our daily.
a. illness b. surroundings c. respect d. well-being
- Playing football is a fun activity for children.
a. personal b. physical c. mental d. regular
- To get the antonym of "regular", we add the prefix
a. ab- b. un- c. ir- d. in-
- Clean protect us from illness.
a. sports b. surroundings c. games d. muscles
- The word "....." is similar in meaning to strong.
a. powerful b. balanced c. unfit d. weak
- meals help me stay strong and healthy every day.
a. Fit b. Unbalanced c. Weak d. Balanced

8. Eggs, meat, and beans have plenty of _____ for muscles.
a. metal b. protein c. drinks d. hygiene
9. To get a noun from the adjective "ill", we add the suffix _____.
a. -less b. -ness c. -ing d. -ion
10. The synonym of "responsible" is _____.
a. irresponsible b. inactive c. irregular d. reliable
11. Everyone should _____ healthy habits to avoid illness and stress.
a. protect b. take care c. stay d. follow
12. _____ keeps our legs strong and muscles healthy.
a. Sleeping b. Cycling
c. Washing hands d. Eating sweets
13. Parents teach children to care _____ their surroundings and plants.
a. for b. to c. in d. of
14. Healthy food and exercise _____ children fit every day.
a. give b. keep c. reduce d. make

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

engage - refreshed - fit - energy - limit

My day is full of healthy habits. For breakfast, I eat a balanced meal to give me
① _____. I drink plenty of water. After school, I ② _____ in a sport to keep
fit and reduce stress. I always take care of my personal hygiene. I ③ _____ my
screen time in the evening. Before bed, I relax to feel ④ _____. These habits
are a part of taking care for my body and mind.

Lessons



Lessons 5 - 6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The coach _____ instructions to players clearly.
a. makes b. does c. has d. gives
2. I _____ my room every morning before school.
a. wash b. watch c. tidy d. play
3. Do not _____ the stove because it is hot.
a. forget b. touch c. sign d. welcome

4. To form an adjective from the word "danger", we add the suffix
 a. -able b. -ive c. -ous d. -ful
5. the first day of school, I felt excited.
 a. In b. For c. On d. With
6. The synonym of "remember" is
 a. recall b. forget c. welcome d. sign
7. Our family shows to visitors and neighbors.
 a. siblings b. hospitality c. homework d. advice
8. Students should walk quietly in the school
 a. hospitality b. stove c. hallways d. instructions
9. Please your name at the bottom of the form.
 a. tidy b. touch c. sign d. welcome
10. The noun from the verb "instruct" is formed by adding the suffix
 a. -ion b. -ation c. -ition d. -tion

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

welcome - forget - hallways - instructions - remember

On the first day of school, students arrived on time and felt excited. The school principal welcomed everyone kindly and gave ① clearly. He reminded students to walk calmly in the ② and be careful. Teachers asked students not to ③ their notebooks and to tidy their desks. Everyone listened carefully and felt happy. It was a great start, and students felt ④ to their new school.

Test on Unit 12

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A. Write True (T) or False (F):



	T	F
1. Moving your body every day helps you stay strong and unhealthy.	☐	☐
2. Physical exercises keep your heart and lungs fit.	☐	☐

B. Listen again and complete:

- Staying active is for your physical health.
- You can engage in activities like walking, running, or
- Physical activity helps reduce stress and makes you feel

2 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

- To is to show care and kindness toward others.
a. place b. dust c. respect d. interrupt
- The noun of the adjective "patient" can be formed by adding the suffix
a. -ence b. -ment c. -ion d. -ness
- Sally is a very active student. The synonym of "active" is
a. inactive b. lazy c. energetic d. weak
- Good helps protect us from germs and illness.
a. respect b. study c. hygiene d. work

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

reduce - limiting - well-being - positive - increase

Caring for your mental health is just as important as your body. To stay ① , you should talk to your friends and family about your feelings. ② screen time and spending time outdoors can help you stay calm. Doing things you love, like reading or learning something new, helps ③ stress. Taking a break to relax is a great way to improve your ④

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Karim was often late for class. Being late affected his learning and interrupted the lesson. His teacher spoke to him. Karim decided to change. He made an effort to be on time every day. He organized his materials the night before. Soon, he was not only on time but also more focused. His understanding improved. He felt proud of this change. Karim learned that good habits, like being on time, have a positive effect on schoolwork and goals. The teacher noticed his improvement and gave him a chance to lead a group project.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Karim felt when he saw his improvement.
a. selfish b. proud c. ashamed d. calm
- The word "focused" means
a. distracted b. interrupted c. concentrated d. organized

B. Answer the following questions:

- What's the main idea of the passage?
.....
- What does the underlined pronoun "him" refer to?
.....
- What lesson can students learn from Karim's story?
.....

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. The golden goose was taken away from Dummling.	☐	☐
2. Dummling was known for his kindness and modesty.	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

- Do you agree that a kind heart is more important than being clever or strong?
Why or why not?
.....
- What message does the story send about how we should treat others?
.....

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the words between brackets:

- There is a lot of sugar in this cake. (much)
.....
- There is no milk in the fridge. (any)
.....
- How much coffee do you drink? (many)
.....
- The kids saw a lot of elephants in the zoo. (many)
.....

7 Complete the following dialog:

Mariam and Sofia are talking about how to stay healthy.

Mariam : Hi Leila! You look very active today. Did you get enough sleep?

Sofia : Yes, I did! I always try to avoid ①..... and go to bed early.

Mariam : That's great. ②..... should I do to improve my well-being?

Sofia : You should start with personal hygiene and eating balanced meals.

Mariam : I agree. My mom says that good hygiene helps protect us from illness.

Sofia : She is right! It is a key ③..... for staying strong and healthy.

Mariam : Do you ④..... in any sports?

Sofia : Yes, I love cycling. It keeps my heart and lungs fit.

8 Write an email of ONE NINETY (90) words to your friend Selim to tell him about the chores you do every day.

Your name is Farid and your email address is farid2015@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is selim13@gmail.com.


New Message

To : Cc Bcc

From :

Subject :

.....

Send
🔍
📎
📷
🔄
😊
🗑️
⌵

Story Summary: The Golden Goose

ملخص قصة الاوزة الذهبية

Once, a poor man had three sons. The two older brothers were selfish and unkind. When they went to the forest, they refused to help an old man, so they failed and got hurt. However, the youngest son, called "Dummling," was very kind. He shared his food with the old man. As a reward, the old man gave him a Golden Goose.

Anyone who tried to steal a feather from the goose got stuck to it. Soon, a long line of people, including children, a schoolmaster, and a soldier, were all stuck together behind Dummling. It was a very funny scene!

They reached a kingdom where the Princess never laughed. When she saw this strange parade, she laughed loudly for the first time. The King kept his promise and let Dummling marry her after he finished some tasks. Dummling became a wise prince. The story teaches us that kindness is the true wealth.

ذات مرة، كان هناك رجل فقير لديه ثلاثة أبناء. كان الأخوان الأكبر سنًا أنانيين وغير طيبين. عندما ذهبوا إلى الغابة، رفضوا مساعدة رجل عجوز، لذلك فشلوا وأصيبوا. ومع ذلك، كان الابن الأصغر، الملقب بـ "داملينج"، طيب القلب جدًا. لقد شارك طعامه مع الرجل العجوز. وكافاه الرجل العجوز بأعطائه أوزة ذهبية. أي شخص حاول سرقة ريشة من الأوزة أصبح ملتصقًا بها. وسرعان ما تشكل طابور طويل من الناس، بمن في ذلك الأطفال ومعلم المدرسة وجندي، كلهم التصقوا ببعضهم خلف "داملينج". لقد كان مشهداً مضحكاً للغاية!

وصلوا إلى مملكة كانت فيها الأميرة لا تضحك أبداً. عندما رأت هذا الموكب الغريب، ضحكت بصوت عالٍ لأول مرة. وفي الملك بوعده وسمح لـ "داملينج" بالزواج منها بعد أن أنهى بعض المهام. أصبح "داملينج" أميراً حكيمًا. تعلمنا القصة أن الطيبة هي الثروة الحقيقية.

A. Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. The poor man had three sons.	☐	☐
2. The eldest son was kind.	☐	☐
3. The father sent his sons to cut wood.	☐	☐
4. The eldest son gave food to the old man.	☐	☐
5. Dummling was the middle son.	☐	☐
6. The old man asked for food and water.	☐	☐
7. The eldest son gave food to the old man.	☐	☐
8. The middle son broke his axe.	☐	☐
9. Dummling was unkind.	☐	☐
10. People laughed at Dummling.	☐	☐
11. Dummling had a good heart.	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

1. Why did people call the youngest son "Dummling"?

.....

2. Where did the sons go to cut wood?

.....

3. Who was the first brother to go into the forest?

.....

4. What did the old man ask the eldest son for?

.....

5. What happened to the eldest son after he was rude to the old man?

.....

6. How did the eldest son feel when he went home?

7. Who went to the forest on the second day?

8. How did the middle son treat the old man?

9. What happened to the middle son's axe?

10. Why did the two older brothers laugh at Dummling?

11. What was special about Dummling's heart?

12. Which brother do you think was the most successful in the end?

Story - Chapter 2



A. Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. Dummling refused to share his food with the old man.	☐	☐
2. The old man was happy with Dummling's kindness.	☐	☐
3. The old man told Dummling that he would be rewarded.	☐	☐
4. Dummling found a silver goose inside the tree.	☐	☐
5. The goose had feathers made of pure gold.	☐	☐
6. Dummling found the goose in a small house.	☐	☐

7. Dummling stayed at a hotel in a busy market.

--	--

8. The hotel owner had only one child.

--	--

9. The hotel owner's children were very kind to the bird.

--	--

10. The children wanted to take a golden feather from the goose.

--	--

11. The golden goose was a normal bird.

--	--

12. The goose had a strange, magical power.

--	--

B. Answer the following questions:

1. How did the old man reward Dummling for his kindness?

2. Where did Dummling find the golden goose exactly?

3. What was special about the feathers of the goose?

4. How did Dummling feel when he saw the golden goose for the first time?

5. Why did Dummling go to the small hotel?

6. What did the hotel owner's children think about the goose?

7. What did Dummling share with the old man?

8. Where did the old man guide Dummling?

9. What was inside the special tree?

10. How did the goose's feathers look?

11. Where did Dummling spend the night?

12. Why were the people at the hotel surprised?

13. What feeling filled the hearts of the hotel owner's children?

14. What did the children want to take from the goose?

15. How did Dummling carry the goose?

Story - Chapter 3

A. Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. Dummling was confused about why the children were stuck.	☐	☐
2. The hotel owner's children all admired the goose from a distance.	☐	☐
3. As soon as the eldest child touched the goose, his hand got stuck.	☐	☐
4. Only the eldest child became stuck to the goose.	☐	☐
5. The second son also stuck when he tried to help.	☐	☐
6. The youngest son refused to touch the goose.	☐	☐
7. In the morning, Dummling was unaware of what had happened.	☐	☐
8. People stared and laughed at the strange sight.	☐	☐
9. Dummling was angry with the children for touching the goose.	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

1. Where did Dummling stay with the goose?

2. How many golden feathers did the eldest child try to take?

3. What did the goose do that attracted everyone's attention?

4. How did Dummling react when he noticed the children were stuck?

5. Why is the goose described as "magical"?

6. How does the story use humor to entertain the reader?

7. What lesson can we learn from Dummling's calm behavior?

Story - Chapter 4**A. Write True (T) or False (F):**

	T	F
1. Dummling walked down the road carrying a goose.	☐	☐
2. The three boys had a choice and could leave if they wanted to.	☐	☐
3. Children clapped and people pointed in wonder at the parade.	☐	☐
4. A schoolmaster laughed at the sight and got stuck too.	☐	☐
5. In the past, people thought Dummling was foolish.	☐	☐
6. The villagers were amazed and laughed at the scene.	☐	☐
7. Dummling felt proud while leading the parade.	☐	☐
8. Dummling was walking toward the royal palace.	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think so many people got stuck following Dummling?
.....
2. If you were one of the villagers, what would you have thought or done when you saw the parade?
.....
3. How do you think Dummling felt when everyone started laughing and clapping?
.....
4. Why did the villagers laugh and clap?
.....
5. How do you think the three boys felt when they got stuck?
.....
6. What would you do if you were Dummling in this story?
.....
7. What lessons have you learned from the story?
.....

Story - Chapter 5**A. Write True (T) or False (F):**

	T	F
1. The princess laughed all the time at the beginning.	☐	☐
2. The king promised that the person who made his daughter laugh would marry her.	☐	☐
3. Many people tried to make the princess laugh before Dummling.	☐	☐
4. Dummling had a goose with him when he entered the town.	☐	☐
5. The people in the parade were stuck to the goose.	☐	☐
6. The princess saw the funny scene from her garden.	☐	☐
7. The princess laughed for the first time when she saw Dummling.	☐	☐

8. The king was not surprised when the princess laughed.

--	--

9. The king married his daughter to Dummling immediately.

--	--

10. Dummling had to do more tasks to prove he was worthy.

--	--

11. Everyone believed that Dummling would succeed.

--	--

12. Dummling used his kindness and determination to face the tasks.

--	--

B. Answer the following questions:

1. Why was the king's daughter famous in the kingdom?

.....

2. What was the prize for making the princess laugh?

.....

3. Did any of the first people who tried to make her laugh succeed?

.....

4. What was strange about the parade Dummling brought to town?

.....

5. Where was the princess when she saw Dummling and the goose?

.....

6. How did the princess feel when she saw the funny scene?

.....

7. What did the king do when he saw his daughter laughing?

.....

8. Did the king keep his promise right away?

.....

9. What did Dummling need to do after making the princess laugh?

.....

10. Why did some people still doubt Dummling?

.....

11. What two qualities gave Dummling strength to face his tasks?

.....

12. How did the princess's life change after seeing Dummling?

Story - Chapter 6



A. Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. The whole kingdom celebrated the grand wedding.	☐	☐
2. People continued to laugh at Dummling after the wedding.	☐	☐
3. The story of the golden goose stayed a secret and did not spread.	☐	☐
4. Dummling became a cruel prince after the wedding.	☐	☐
5. The story shows that true wealth is kindness and love.	☐	☐
6. Dummling married the princess after finishing the challenges.	☐	☐
7. The golden goose was a symbol of kindness and reward.	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

1. How did the people's opinion of Dummling change?

2. When did the people finally stop laughing at Dummling?

3. Why do you think Dummling's kindness was more powerful than his brothers' cleverness or pride?

4. How did Dummling's kindness help him succeed?

5. Do you think Dummling will be a good king in the future? Why?

6. What's the main lesson of this tale?

General Tests on the Second Term

امتحانات عامة على الفصل الدراسي الثاني

Test 1

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A. Write True (T) or False (F):

تمن الاستماع آخر الملحق



	T	F
1. The Citadel of Qaitbay is in Cairo.	☐	☐
2. Tourists enjoy visiting the place.	☐	☐

B. Listen again and complete:

- In the is a good time to visit.
- Tourists the sea view.
- Tour explain the history.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The king lives in a grand palace. "Grand" is similar in meaning to
a. small b. dirty c. big d. clean
- To of someone or something is to look after them.
a. take care b. look for c. take out d. look up
- We add the suffix to the adjective "careful" to get the adverb.
a. -ive b. -ly c. -ing d. -ion
- The teacher asked the student to attention during the lesson.
a. make b. pay c. buy d. get

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

hydrated - hump - deserts - dunes - dry

The camel is one of the most amazing animals in the world. These creatures live in hot ① and are perfectly adapted to survive in harsh conditions. They can walk easily over sand ② Camels can stay ③ for a long time without drinking water. Its ④ stores fat, which provides energy during long journeys. Also, their long eyelashes protect their eyes from blowing sand.

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. This book belongs to him. (his)
.....
2. I promise to buy him a present. (will)
.....
3. You are not allowed to use your phone during class. (mustn't)
.....
4. My friend isn't as tall as my brother. (than)
.....

7 Complete the following dialog:

Ali and Omar are at home.

Ali : What are you doing?

Omar : I'm doing my homework. ① you help me?

Ali : Sorry, I'm busy now.

Omar : Okay. I will finish it ②

Ali : After that, please clean the ③

Omar : No problem. The door is dirty. ④ I clean it now?

Ali : Yes, please.

8 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words about:

"Nature Around Me"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 2

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A. Write True (T) or False (F):

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



	T	F
1. Ali and Hassan were arguing about schoolwork.	☐	☐
2. Ali washed the cups.	☐	☐

B. Listen again and complete:

- It was Hassan's turn to the room.
- Ali made his
- They asked their to decide.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- She showed modesty when she won the prize. "Modesty" is an antonym for
 a. pride b. fortune c. luck d. reward
- is light fog or tiny drops of water in the air.
 a. List b. Feast c. Rest d. Mist
- The suffix "....." changes the adjective "kind" into a noun.
 a. -less b. -ness c. -ion d. -ing
- We drew a with a welcome message for the school party.
 a. flag b. bell c. banner d. class

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

increase - nutrients - adapt - species - sensitive

Nature is really amazing and biodiverse, meaning it is full of different living things. There are millions of ① of animals and plants on Earth. To survive, these creatures must ② to their environment, like polar bears growing thick fur for the cold. Some insects have ③ hairs to catch their prey. Plants also need ④ from the soil to grow strong and provide us with oxygen.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Helping people around us does not need special skills or a lot of time. Sometimes, small acts of kindness can make a big **difference**. You can help by listening to a friend who feels lonely or worried. Saying kind words can give comfort and support. You may also help your neighbors by keeping the place clean or sharing what you have. Even helping someone find the right way in the street is a good action. These simple things spread love and make life better for everyone.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The passage is mainly about
 a. learning new skills b. helping people in simple ways
 c. cleaning the street d. spending money
- The underlined word "difference" means
 a. problem b. change c. place d. rule

B. Answer the following questions:

- Mention two ways people can help others according to the passage.

- How can kind words help a friend?

- What happens when people do small acts of kindness?

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

		T	F
1. Dummling knew that the sons were stuck to the goose.	SB	☐	☐
2. The schoolmaster was able to free the boys.	SB	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

- How did the people's opinion toward Dummling change?

- Why do you think both of the older brothers faced bad luck after refusing to help the old man?

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. If I were you, I'd revise my lessons. (should)

.....

2. This mobile is mine. (my)

.....

3. I am 16 years old. Noha is 17. (younger)

.....

4. She doesn't have many friends. (some)

.....

7 Complete the following dialog:

Sara and Dina are visiting the Grand Egyptian Museum.

Sara: This museum is very big.

Dina: Yes, it has many ancient statues.

Sara: I like the mummies very ①

Dina: Me too. They are very ②

Sara: Look at this statue. It is made of ③

Dina: Wow! Can we take some ④ ?

Sara: Yes, but without flash.

8 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words about:

"The importance of following school rules".

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 3

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A. Write True (T) or False (F):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Lina's birthday was last week.	☐	☐
2. The party was at school.	☐	☐

B. Listen again and complete:

- Lina is years old.
- Her best friend's name is
- They ate a cake.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The bird is still alive in the cage. "Alive" is opposite in meaning to
 a. dead b. asleep c. sick d. ill
- are ways of doing things passed from one generation to another.
 a. Civilizations b. Invitations c. Traditions d. Translations
- The suffix "....." changes the verb "celebrate" into a noun.
 a. -ous b. -ion c. -ied d. -tion
- Even a small can bring comfort and happiness to others.
 a. injury b. mistake c. danger d. effort

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

landmarks - breathtaking - species - waterfalls - pieces

Nature is full of amazing wonders that surround us everywhere. High mountains touch the clouds and offer ① views. Beautiful ② flow with clear water, creating a peaceful sound that relaxes our minds. Our planet is also home to millions of different ③ of animals and plants, each playing a special role. We should protect these natural ④ because they are precious gifts that make our world a beautiful place to live in.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

During the next school holiday, I plan to use my free time in a **positive** way. I will work with my friends to help people in my area. We will clean the streets and collect rubbish to keep the place beautiful. I will also help organize simple activities for children in the neighborhood. I believe that these small actions can make a big difference. Helping others will make me feel proud and happy, and it will spread kindness among everyone.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The passage is mainly about
 a. spending money b. helping the community during the holiday
 c. studying at school d. traveling abroad
- The underlined word "positive" means
 a. bad b. useful
 c. lazy d. angry

B. Answer the following questions:

- How will the writer help people in his area?

- Why does the writer believe small actions are important?

- How will helping others make the writer feel?

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

		T	F
1. Only one son tried to take a golden feather.	SB	☐	☐
2. More and more people became stuck to the goose.	SB	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

- What kind of person did Dummling become after his marriage?

- Greed can lead to problems. Explain.

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. It isn't necessary for him to come early. (have to)

.....

2. I own the red car. (mine)

.....

3. It is a good idea to eat healthy food every day. (should)

.....

4. No other car in the race is faster than the blue one. (the fastest)

.....

7 Complete the following dialog:

Ahmed and Karim are talking about the summer vacation.

Ahmed : The summer vacation is great.

Karim : Yes, we have a lot of free time.

Ahmed : I will visit my ①

Karim : That sounds ②

Ahmed : We will swim in the sea and play ③

Karim : I want to travel by ④

8 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words about:

" How to help your parents "

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 4

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A. Write True (T) or False (F):



	T	F
1. Mona is older than her friend.	☐	☐
2. Mona has short black hair.	☐	☐

B. Listen again and complete:

- Mona has been her best friend for years.
- Mona lives close to her
- Mona's parents work as

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Don't forget to lock the door when you leave. "Forget" is an antonym for
a. remember b. break c. repair d. remain
- A/An is a famous and easily seen building or place
a. apartment b. landmark c. species d. dune
- The suffix "....." changes the noun "thunder" into an adjective.
a. -ing b. -ion c. -ied d. -ous
- The students wrote "Welcome" on a sheet of paper and it on the board.
a. drove b. gave c. stuck d. won

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

environment - plant - pride - volunteer - proud

Next summer, I have great plans to help my local community. First, I am going to ① with a group of friends to clean the local park. I believe this will make a huge difference to the ② Also, if someone needs help with their shopping, I will offer them a hand. I also plan to ③ many trees. Helping others makes me feel ④ and happy.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

The world is full of wonderful natural places that attract visitors from everywhere. One famous natural wonder is the Great Barrier Reef in Australia. It is the largest coral reef in the world and is home to many colorful sea animals. Another amazing place is Mount Everest, the highest mountain on Earth. It is **located** in Asia and covered with snow all year round. These natural wonders show the beauty and power of nature and make people admire the world around them.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The passage is mainly about
 - modern cities
 - natural wonders
 - famous buildings
 - sea travel
- The word "located" means
 - built
 - found
 - cleaned
 - destroyed

B. Answer the following questions:

- Where is the Great Barrier Reef located?

.....

- Why is Mount Everest special?

.....

- What do natural wonders show people?

.....

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

		T	F
1. The goose had a magical power that made people stick to it.	SB	☐	☐
2. The villagers were angry when they saw Dummiling's parade.	SB	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

- Explain in your own words what the story teaches us about true fortune.

.....

- What lesson or moral do you think this story teaches about kindness and behavior?

.....

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. It's forbidden to park your car here. (mustn't)

.....

2. She doesn't want to visit Aswan. (will)

.....

3. The blue jacket is Ahmed's. (his)

.....

4. No student is better than Adel. (best)

.....

7 Complete the following dialog:

A teacher and a student are talking in class.

Teacher : Did you do your homework?

Student : Yes, I did it yesterday.

Teacher : Was it easy or ①

Student : It was a little difficult, but I finished it ②

Teacher : When do you do your homework?

Student : I do it in the ③

Teacher : Good. Keep your homework ④

8 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words about:

"Nature and weather in your country "

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 5

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A. Write True (T) or False (F):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Omar and Karim were arguing about house duties.	☐	☐
2. Omar only watered the plants.	☐	☐

B. Listen again and complete:

- It was Karim's turn to the kitchen.
- Omar also the floor.
- They asked their to decide.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We visited an ancient temple during our trip. "Ancient" is a synonym for
a. modern b. old c. smart d. clever
- The things you remember from the past are your
a. memories b. backyards c. generations d. celebrations
- The prefix "....." makes the opposite of the adjective "aware".
a. in- b. im- c. un- d. dis-
- I sometimes help by cleaning up my or school.
a. childhood b. fatherhood c. brotherhood d. neighborhood

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

attention - shopping - happiness - different - difference

Helping others is a wonderful habit that can be very simple. In fact, it should be a part of everyday life. Simple acts bring ① to everyone. For example, you can carry ② bags for an elderly neighbor, which shows respect and care. Also, explaining a lesson to a classmate is a great way of giving ③ to those in need. These small actions make a real ④ in our community.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Nature is full of interesting facts that surprise many people. Did you know that an octopus has three hearts and blue blood? This helps it live deep in the sea. A cheetah is the fastest land animal and can run very fast in a short time. Some trees, like the oak tree, can live for hundreds of years. In deserts, camels can survive for a long time without water. These amazing facts show how special and powerful nature is.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The passage is mainly about
 a. dangerous animals b. amazing facts about nature
 c. life in cities d. types of food
- The underlined word "survive" means
 a. die b. live c. sleep d. move

B. Answer the following questions:

- How many hearts does an octopus have?

.....

- Why is the cheetah special?

.....

- What do these facts show about nature?

.....

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

		T	F
1. The hotel owner's sons were afraid of the goose.	SB	☐	☐
2. Dummling was walking toward the royal palace.	SB	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

- How has Dummling changed from the beginning of the story?

.....

- What lessons have you learned from the story?

.....

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. These are the toys of the boys. (boys')

.....

2. The expect the match to start at 10 pm. (will)

.....

3. He is older than his brother. (His brother)

.....

4. There are a lot of cars in the street. (many)

.....

7 Complete the following dialog:

Hany and Samir are talking about making friends.

Samir: Hi! My name is Samir. I am new in this school.

Hany : Hello Samir! I am Hany. ① to our class.

Samir: Thank you, Hany. Everyone here seems very kind.

Hany : That's ② We value politeness and respect here.

Samir: I agree. It is important to have good ③ to make friends.

Hany : Exactly! Would you like to play football with us in the break?

Samir: That ④ fun! I love football.

Hany : Me too! Let's go together. Now we are friends!

8 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words about:

" How to Serve Your Local Community"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 6

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A. Write True (T) or False (F):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Ali's family lives in Cairo.	☐	☐
2. The mother works as a teacher.	☐	☐

B. Listen again and complete:

- There are people in the Ali family.
- Mom works at a
- She helps her children with their

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A/An..... is a group of animals or plants that are similar.
a. species b. variety c. band d. team
- She greeted me warmly this morning. "Warmly" is an antonym for
a. bravely b. cleverly c. coldly d. quickly
- To get the opposite of the word "polite", we add the prefix ".....".
a. dis- b. im- c. in- d. mis-
- To be positive, let's try to do something to our community.
a. meaningful b. careful c. meaningless d. careless

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

shelter - trash - feed - eat - rewarding

Volunteering is a great way to help our community. It is very ① because you help others and feel happy. You can collect ② in the park or clean the streets to make our city beautiful. Also, you can work at an animal ③ There, you can ④ dogs and cats that need a home. When we feed and care for animals, we make a big difference.

The dolphin is one of the smartest animals in the ocean. It lives in seas and oceans around the world. Dolphins are very friendly and often swim in groups. They use sounds to **communicate** with each other and to find food. Their smooth bodies help them swim fast in the water. Dolphins can jump high above the sea surface, which makes them exciting to watch. Because of their intelligence and social behavior, dolphins are loved by many people.

1. The passage is mainly about

- a. life in the desert b. a smart sea animal
- c. dangerous animals d. birds in the sky
- The underlined word "communicate" means _____.
- a. fight b. travel c. share information d. hide

3. Where do dolphins live?

4. How do dolphins find food?

5. Why are dolphins loved by many people?

		T	F
1. Dummling refused to share his food with the old man.	SB	☐	☐
2. The princess laughed easily at everything.	SB	☐	☐

3. Why did more people begin to follow Dummling?

4. If you were one of the villagers, what would you have thought or done when you saw the parade?

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. This car belongs to Hazem. (Hazem's)

2. I decided not to buy a house. (won't)

3. This bag belongs to my sister. (my sister's)

4. I have much money. (a lot of)

7 Complete the following dialog:

Nada and Salma are talking about nature.

Nada : I love the natural world.

Salma : Yes, nature is very beautiful.

Nada : We must keep the environment ①

Salma : I agree. We can plant trees as they give us fresh ②

Nada : That's true. We should protect animals and ③

Salma : Nature makes our life ④

8 Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend about :

"Your Best Friend". Your name is Khaled and your email address is khaled@yahoo.com. Your friend is Essam and his email address is essam@gmail.com.


New Message

To
From
Subject

: : :
: : :
: : :

Cc Bcc

-----,

Send











Test 7

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A. Write True (T) or False (F):



T	F
☐	☐
☐	☐

1. Making a cheese sandwich is difficult.

2. You need butter to make the sandwich.

B. Listen again and complete:

3. You need two slices of

4. Add the cheese and some slices.

5. Finally, close the

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If something is, it's fixed in one place and can't be moved.

a. taught b. given c. stuck d. driven

2. The new museum is a magnificent project. The word "Magnificent" means

a. impressive b. ordinary c. poor d. humble

3. To get the noun from the verb "mix", we add the suffix "....."

a. -tion b. -sion c. -ous d. -ture

4. All of us should more food and money to the poor.

a. repair b. donate c. stay d. remain

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

meaningful - attention - warmly - proud - kindness

One day, I saw an old man in our neighborhood carrying heavy bags. He looked tired, so I ran to help him. He smiled ① and thanked me. We had a ② conversation about his life. I realized that giving someone your ③ is the best gift. This small act made us both very happy because ④ changes everything for the better.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Palm trees are very useful plants in many desert areas. They can survive even in very hot and dry weather. Their long roots grow deep to reach water underground. The trees give shade, and their fruits provide food, energy, and sometimes medicine. People use their leaves to make mats, baskets, and other useful items. For desert people, palm trees are a symbol of life and hope. They are taller and stronger than many other plants and can live in harsh conditions for many years. People respect their great importance in desert nature and culture.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The passage is mainly about
 - animals in the desert
 - palm trees and their benefits
 - desert buildings
 - desert weather
- The underlined word "symbol" means
 - leaf
 - sign or representation
 - fruit
 - root

B. Answer the following questions:

- How do palm trees survive in hot and dry weather?

.....

- What are some uses of palm tree leaves?

.....

- Why are palm trees important for desert people?

.....

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

		T	F
1. The old man showed Dummling a special house.	SB	☐	☐
2. The king promised that whoever made his daughter laugh could marry her.	SB	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

- How do you think Dummling felt when everyone started laughing and clapping?

.....

4. Why do you think the princess laughed at Dummling's parade?

.....

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. Ali is my friend. (of)

.....

2. They promise to help their students. (will)

.....

3. No one is taller than Ali. (tallest)

.....

4. I have one pen. (a)

.....

7 Complete the following dialog:

Teacher : Why do we help other people?

Student : Because helping others is important.

Teacher : Who do you help at home?

Student : I help my mother in the ①

Teacher : That is very kind of you.

Student : Helping others makes me feel ②

Teacher : We should help people in the ③

Student : Yes, helping others is always ④

8 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words about:

"A birthday party"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 8

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A. Write True (T) or False (F):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. The party was for Ali.	☐	☐
2. They went shopping in the evening.	☐	☐

B. Listen again and complete:

- The family prepared a party.
- They wrote a list.
- My brother and I helped our father buy things from the

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I feel safe in this house. The word "safe" is opposite in meaning to
 a. unsafe b. secured c. attached d. protected
- A is a plant that eats insects.
 a. butterfly b. rainforest c. flytrap d. starfish
- To get the noun from the verb "amaze", we add the suffix ".....".
 a. -sion b. -ment c. -tion d. -ous
- I found a great new for chicken online.
 a. description b. bill c. maker d. recipe

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

list - cartoon - balloons - special - decorate

Next week, my family is having a big celebration for my brother's birthday. It is a very
 ① day for all of us. First, my mother and I made a ② of everything
 we need to buy. We went to the mall to get colorful ③ and some snacks.
 Tomorrow, we will ④ the living room to make it look beautiful. My brother will
 be very happy when he sees the surprise!

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

To be a good student, I will always bring my books, notebooks, and materials so I can follow lessons and learn better. I will raise my hand before speaking to show **respect** and give others a chance to share their ideas. I will listen carefully when the teacher is explaining, because understanding starts with paying attention. I will also complete my homework on time and try my best in every task. I will treat my classmates and teachers with kindness, patience, and politeness, because respect builds strong friendships and a happy classroom. Being responsible and caring makes school a better place for everyone.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The passage is mainly about
 - being a good student
 - playing with friends
 - school holidays
 - sports activities
- The underlined word "respect" means
 - ignoring others
 - being polite and caring
 - fighting
 - being late

B. Answer the following questions:

- What should a good student bring to class?
.....
- Why is listening carefully important?
.....
- How does treating classmates and teachers with kindness affect the classroom?
.....

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

		T	F
1. Dummling found a golden goose inside the tree.	SB	☐	☐
2. Dummling's parade made the princess smile and laugh.	SB	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

- Why did the old man help Dummling but not his brothers?
.....
- If you were the king, what kind of tasks would you give Dummling to test if he truly deserves to marry the princess?
.....

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. Sara has the newest dress. (Sara's)
.....
2. These are our kites. (belong)
.....
3. Tamer is the fastest runner in the race. (No runner)
.....
4. There are few books in my bag. (some)
.....

7 Complete the following dialog:

Ahmed and Kareem are talking about school this year.

Ahmed : I want to be responsible this year.

Kareem : What will you do first?

Ahmed : I will do my homework on ①

Kareem : And your room?

Ahmed : I will keep it ②

Kareem : Don't forget to ③ your parents.

Ahmed : ④ I will do that.

8 Write an email of NINETY (90):

To your friend about The Grand Egyptian Museum. Your name is Hani and your email address is hani78@yahoo.com. Your friend is Ali and his email address is ali88@gmail.com


New Message

To

From

Subject

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Send











Test 9

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A. Write True (T) or False (F):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Healthy food is important for our bodies.

T	F
☐	☐

2. Fast food is healthier than homemade food.

☐	☐
--------------------------	--------------------------

B. Listen again and complete:

3. Many people like to cook at
4. You boil pasta in with a little salt.
5. Eating at home is healthier than eating food.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My aunt is a caring person. The word "caring" is similar in meaning to
 a. kind b. unkind c. careless d. selfish
2. A/An a piece of art or tool made by humans long ago.
 a. artifact b. museum c. history d. parade
3. To get the adjective from the verb "puzzle", we add the suffix ".....".
 a. -s b. -r c. -d d. -n
4. They donated their old clothes to a
 a. glory b. charity c. enemy d. diary

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

feed - exercises - listen - makes - homework

Every day, Sarah follows a busy but organized routine. As soon as she wakes up, she ① her bed to keep her room tidy. After lunch, she always helps with the dishes. In the afternoon, she usually likes to ② to music while she is doing dishes or cleaning the kitchen. Then, she sits at her desk and does her ③ carefully. To stay healthy and strong, she also ④ for an hour every evening. These simple activities help her stay active and helpful at home.

6 Rewrite the sentences using the words between brackets:

1. I advise you to study your lessons. (should)

.....

2. Hani is taller than Khaled. (shorter)

.....

3. This laptop is mine. (my)

.....

4. I have a lot of keys. (many)

.....

7 Complete the following dialog:

Sara is talking to Ali about making things.

Sara : I like making things by myself.

Ali : That's fun! What are you making today?

Sara : I am making a small ①..... from paper.

Ali : Wow! What else will you use to ②..... it?

Sara : I will paint it and add some ③.....

Ali : It looks beautiful. Making things yourself makes you feel ④.....

8 Write a text of NIENTY (90) words on:

"How to Make Pizza"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 10

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A. Write True (T) or False (F):



T	F
☐	☐
☐	☐

1. They celebrated the birthday at home.

2. The father prepared the food.

B. Listen again and complete:

3. They decorated the room with flowers and

4. The cake was very

5. They sang songs and played

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I can't fix my broken bike. The word "fix" can be replaced with

- a. damage b. destroy c. remain d. repair

2. To is to see something happen with your own eyes.

- a. taste b. study c. witness d. adapt

3. To get the adjective from the noun "end", we add the suffix ".....".

- a. -ness b. -less c. -tion d. -ious

4. We should feel of our country.

- a. proud b. sad c. upset d. tidy

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

pickles - sandwich - shop - sauce - chop

Making a sandwich is very easy and fun. First, you need to get two slices of fresh bread. Then, you should ① some vegetables like tomatoes, cucumbers, and lettuce into small pieces. Next, spread some ② like ketchup or mayonnaise, on the bread to make it tasty. You can add cheese or meat if you like. After that, put some ③ on top to give it a salty flavor. Finally, put the second slice of bread on top. Now, your ④ is ready to eat. Enjoy your meal!

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Living a healthy life is not difficult when we make smart and **responsible** choices. One important habit is eating balanced meals every day. Our bodies need fruits, vegetables, whole grains, and proteins to stay strong and healthy. It is also better to drink plenty of water instead of sugary drinks. Another key habit is staying active. Walking, running, cycling, or playing sports with friends keeps the heart, lungs, and muscles fit. Physical activity also reduces stress and increases energy. Getting enough sleep is just as important. Teenagers especially need at least eight hours of sleep each night to stay focused and feel refreshed during the day.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The passage is mainly about
 a. healthy habits for life b. studying at school
 c. summer holidays d. popular sports
- The underlined word "responsible" means
 a. careless b. making good choices
 c. lazy d. ignoring rules

B. Answer the following questions:

- Name two important habits for living a healthy life.

- Why is physical activity important?

- How many hours of sleep do teenagers need each night?

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

SB

	T	F
1. The golden goose had magical powers.	☐	☐
2. Dumpling was ready to face new challenges.	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

- How did the king feel when he saw his daughter laughing?

- What message does the story send about how we should treat others?

6 Rewrite the sentences using the words between brackets:

1. It is not necessary to bring your own water; the school gives water.

(don't have to)

2. This is Mohamed's pencil.

(Whose)

3. The plane is fast. The bus is slow.

(than)

4. She has no money.

(any)

7 Complete the following dialog:

Hani and Mona are talking about their visit to Abu Simbel Museum.

Hani : I visited Abu Simbel Museum last weekend.

Mona : Really? How was it?

Hani : It was very ①

Mona : What did you see first?

Hani : I saw the big statues of Ramses II and some ②

Mona : Did you take any photos?

Hani : Yes, I took photos and bought a ③ as a gift.

Mona : Visiting museums makes learning about history very ④

8 Write a text of NIENTY (90) words on:

"The food you like making"

Test 11

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A. Write True (T) or False (F):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. The party was for the friend's cousin.	☐	☐
2. They listened to music and played games.	☐	☐

B. Listen again and complete:

- The room was decorated with and ribbons.
- The father prepared a big and snacks.
- At the end, they gave

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The child is curious and asks too many questions. The word "curious" means
 a. bored b. puzzled c. eager d. interesting
- is the area or place where people live near each other.
 a. Neighbor b. Neighborhood c. Childhood d. Comfort
- To get the adjective from the noun "nature", we add the suffix ".....".
 a. -al b. -or c. -ed d. -en
- Always be aware of your when walking alone.
 a. countries b. schools c. surroundings d. environments

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

traditions - surprise - memories - sad - happy

Every family has special stories that make them unique. In my family, we have many ① that we follow every year, like traveling to the beach in summer. We also respect our customs, such as gathering at my grandfather's house every Friday to eat together. These moments create beautiful ② that we always talk about and laugh when we remember them. One of my favorite stories is when we planned a ③ party for my mother's birthday last year. She was so shocked and ④ !

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last weekend, I visited the Grand Egyptian Museum, and it was an unforgettable experience. The building itself is modern and stunning, with wide open spaces full of natural light. I saw beautifully displayed artifacts, including statues of pharaohs and treasures from King Tutankhamun's tomb. There were also interactive screens that made learning history easy and fun. The museum had sections for ancient jewelry, tools, and everyday items, which helped me understand life in ancient Egypt. The visit made me appreciate Egypt's rich past even more and inspired me to read more about history. I definitely want to return soon and explore everything I missed.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The passage is mainly about
 - visiting a museum
 - traveling abroad
 - studying at school
 - attending a concert
- The underlined word "artifacts" means
 - modern buildings
 - old objects made by humans
 - paintings only
 - books

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What did the writer see at the museum?

.....

4. How did the interactive screens help visitors?

.....

5. Why does the writer want to return to the museum?

.....

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

SB

T	F
☐	☐
☐	☐

1. The old man offered the brothers food and water.

2. Dumpling's brothers were happy for his success at the start.

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What did the king ask Dumpling to do after making the princess laugh?

.....

4. Why do you think the princess never laughed before?

.....

6 Rewrite the sentences using the words between brackets:

1. I advise you to brush your teeth. (should)
.....
2. It isn't necessary for us to finish our homework. (have to)
.....
3. This pencil belongs to her. (hers)
.....
4. There are many books in the library. (a lot of)
.....

7 Complete the following dialog:

Sara and Omar are talking about their visit to the Alexandria Library.

Sara : I visited the Alexandria Library yesterday.

Omar : That's amazing! What did you see first?

Sara : I saw many old ① and beautiful books.

Omar : Did you read any of them?

Sara : Yes, I read a ② and also checked some facts.

Omar : Did you use the computers there?

Sara : Yes, I used a computer to search for ③

Omar : Visiting libraries makes learning very ④

8 Write a text of NIENTY (90) words on:

"Your favourite season and why"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 12

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A. Write True (T) or False (F):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Omar goes to school from Saturday to Wednesday.	☐	☐
2. He never walks to school.	☐	☐

B. Listen again and complete:

3. Omar wakes up at o'clock.
 4. His school starts at a.m.
 5. He has lessons after the break.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She always keeps her room clean and tidy. "Tidy" is an antonym for
 a. noisy b. messy c. ordered d. puzzled
2. A is a group of people walking together in a celebration.
 a. parade b. vehicle c. crowd d. class
3. To get the adjective from the verb "fascinate", we add the suffix "....."
 a. -ion b. -ous c. -ing d. -ied
4. Always be for your school, so that you don't miss lessons.
 a. in turn b. on time c. at night d. in bed

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

history - artifacts - museum - modern - ancient

The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM) is one of the largest and most famous museums in the world. It is located near the Great Pyramids of Giza. The museum is very big and has a ① design. Inside, you can see thousands of ancient ②, including the complete collection of King Tutankhamun.

Many tourists visit the GEM because it tells the story of Egypt's great ③ There is a huge statue of Ramesses II standing in the entrance to welcome everyone. Visiting the ④ is a great experience because you can learn a lot about how ancient Egyptians lived. It is a wonderful place that makes all Egyptians feel very proud.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Volunteering is a great way to help the community. Young people can help in many places, such as libraries, parks, and animal shelters. At the library, volunteers can organize books and read stories to children. In parks, they can collect trash, plant flowers, and paint benches to make the area beautiful. At animal shelters, they can feed and walk animals and keep the cages clean. Helping others, whether people, places, or animals, is very rewarding. Volunteering teaches responsibility, teamwork, and builds confidence. Even small actions can make a big difference and improve a whole community, making it a better and happier place for everyone.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The passage is mainly about
 a. school lessons
 b. volunteering and helping the community
 c. holiday trips
 d. family activities
- The underlined word "responsibility" means
 a. caring for duties
 b. playing with friends
 c. eating food
 d. relaxing

B. Answer the following questions:

- Name two places where volunteers can help.

- What can volunteers do in parks?

- Why is volunteering important for the community?

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

SB

	T	F
1. Dummling's brothers believed he would succeed.	☐	☐
2. The king did not keep his promise to Dummling.	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

- Why do you think the people were surprised when Dummling entered the palace?

- Why did the old man decide to help Dummling and not the others?

6 Rewrite the sentences using the words between brackets:

1. You aren't allowed to smoke in hospitals. (mustn't)
.....
2. The Nile is the longest river. (No river)
.....
3. That house belongs to them. (theirs)
.....
4. Ahmed doesn't have many toys. (few)
.....

7 Complete the following dialog:

Ali and Sara are talking about playing sports.

Ali : I like playing sports every day.

Sara : That's good for your health.

Ali : I usually play ① with my friends after school.

Sara : I prefer swimming, it is very ②

Ali : We also run in the park to keep our ③ Would you like to come?

Sara : Of ④

8 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

to your friend Fares to tell him about the voluntary work you will do next summer: Your name is Omar and your email address is omar2012@gmail.com and your friends email address is fares2014@gmail.com.


New Message

To

From

Subject

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Send











Test 13

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A. Write True (T) or False (F):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Healthy food is important for our body and mind.	☐	☐
2. Fast food is healthier than homemade food.	☐	☐

B. Listen again and complete:

- Fresh fruits, vegetables, and give vitamins and energy.
- Many families like to cook meals.
- You can prepare salads, soups, or

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We exchange gifts during the school party. "Exchange" is similar in meaning to
 a. keep b. hold c. take d. trade
- A is a car or bus used for travelling from one place to another.
 a. vehicle b. train c. plane d. ship
- To get the adjective from the noun "behavior", we add the suffix ".....".
 a. -er b. -ing c. -ed d. -al
- The wind is strong today. waves are crashing onto the beach.
 a. Powering b. Hanging c. Towering d. Fishing

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

babysit - caring - care - scare - fixes

Every member of my family has a special role to play. My parents take
 ① of us and make sure we have everything we need. My father
 ② broken things around the house, like chairs or lamps. My mother
 is a very ③ person who always listens to our problems and cooks
 delicious meals. Since I am the oldest brother, I often ④ my little
 sister when my parents are busy. We all help each other because a family works
 best when everyone does their part with love.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Household chores are important for keeping a home clean and **organized**. Every family member usually has specific tasks to do, such as washing dishes, taking out the trash, sweeping the floor, or watering the plants. Sharing responsibilities helps reduce arguments and makes everyone feel helpful. Sometimes, family members disagree about who should do certain tasks. In these cases, it is best to discuss the problem calmly and find a fair solution. For example, one person can do a chore today, while another does it tomorrow. Working together teaches responsibility, cooperation, and respect for others. It also creates a happy and comfortable home for everyone.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The passage is mainly about
 - school activities
 - household chores
 - holiday trips
 - sports events
- The underlined word "organized" means
 - messy and untidy
 - arranged in order
 - dirty and crowded
 - done slowly

B. Answer the following questions:

- Name two household chores mentioned in the passage.
.....

- What should family members do if they disagree about chores?
.....

- Why is sharing responsibilities important?
.....

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

SB

- Dummling was the youngest son.

- Dummling became a gentle and wise prince.

T	F
☐	☐
☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

- What happened first: the eldest son touched the goose or Dummling woke up?
.....

- Why do you think the two older brothers got hurt in the forest?
.....

6 Rewrite the sentences using the words between brackets:

1. Yara is tall, but Yomna is taller. (than)
.....
2. Does this bike belong to you? (your)
.....
3. Dalia is clever but Faten is cleverer. (than)
.....
4. I ate an orange yesterday. (one)
.....

7 Complete the following dialog:

Hani and Dina are talking about how to do things step by step.

Hani : Today I will show you how to make a sandwich.

Dina : Great! I want to learn.

Hani : First, you need to take two slices of ①.....

Dina : Then, what do I do next?

Hani : Spread some butter and put some ②..... inside.

Dina : Should I cut it after that?

Hani : Yes, and finally, you can serve it on a ③.....

Dina : Making things step by step is very ④.....

8 Write a text of NIENTY (90) words on:

"How to make our neighbors happy"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 14

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A. Write True (T) or False (F):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Sara helps at the animal shelter.	☐	☐
2. Ali works at the library.	☐	☐

B. Listen again and complete:

- Sara feeds the and cleans their cages.
- Ali assists at the hospital.
- Nour plants and flowers in the garden.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Egypt's weather attracts many tourists. The word "attract" can be replaced with
 a. interests b. refuses c. agrees d. refreshes
- To greet someone is to greet them in a kind or friendly way.
 a. carefully b. warmly c. highly d. finally
- To get the noun from the adjective "responsible", we add the suffix ".....".
 a. -ous b. -ies c. -ity d. -ion
- It's known that the white dove is the of peace.
 a. symbol b. sample c. maker d. flyer

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

proud - civilizations - statues - mummies - parade

The Pharaohs' Golden Parade was an amazing event in Cairo. It happened in April 2021 to move 22 royal ① from the Egyptian Museum to the National Museum of Egyptian Civilization. The mummies belonged to famous kings and queens, like Ramses II and Hatshepsut. During the ② the mummies were carried in special golden carriages that looked like ancient boats. The streets were decorated with lights, and there was beautiful music. People from all over the world watched this parade on TV. It was a ③ moment for Egypt because it showed the world our great history and ancient ④

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

On Friday, June 12, 2025, the city had a special cultural festival. The streets were full of colorful decorations and bright lights. Many people came to watch the celebrations. There were music, dances, and parades showing the country's old **traditions**. Some floats carried symbols and old objects from history. Artists and performers showed their skills, and security teams kept everyone safe. Visitors enjoyed the displays and performances. The festival helped people learn about their culture and history. It also brought families and friends together. Everyone left happy with great memories of music, art, and dancing.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The passage is mainly about
 a. a sports event b. a cultural festival
 c. a school trip d. a science experiment
- The underlined word "traditions" means
 a. old customs and habits b. new technology
 c. fast cars d. modern games

B. Answer the following questions:

- When did the festival happen?

- What did the floats carry during the parade?

- Why was the festival important for the people?

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

SB

- The middle brother's axe broke after he was rude.

- People still laughed at Dummling after his marriage.

T	F
☐	☐
☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

- What do the boys' actions tell us about their personalities?

- What is the most important lesson this story teaches children?

6 Rewrite the sentences using the words between brackets:

1. I promise to come on time. (will)

.....

2. If I were you, I wouldn't come late. (should)

.....

3. Hady is fatter than every student in class. (the)

.....

4. They have little juice in the bottle. (much)

.....

7 Complete the following dialog:

Mona and Asmaa are talking about house chores.

Mona : What are you doing now?

Asmaa : I'm washing the dishes.

Mona : I already took out the ①

Asmaa : Would you help me with the ② ?

Mona : Sorry, I'm busy now.

Asmaa : Okay, clean the rooms and I'll do the dishes.

Mona : I will finish the ③ later.

Asmaa : The cat looks hungry. Can you ④ it?

Mona : Sure, I will do it after I finish.

8 Write a paragraph of NIENTY (90) words on:

"The weather in your town"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 15

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A. Write True (T) or False (F):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Laila will stay at home and do nothing.	☐	☐
2. She will help her grandmother take care of the animals.	☐	☐

B. Listen again and complete:

- Laila will help her grandmother
- She will clean the
- She plans to donate

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Plants need water to survive. The word "survive" means.....
a. live b. help c. stay d. die
- To get the adjective from the noun "color", we add the suffix ".....".
a. ing b. ous c. ful d. ion
- are small pieces of paper with information or announcements.
a. Flyers b. Flights c. Magazines d. Papers
- A forest has many types of plants and animals.
a. different b. comfortable c. homemade d. biodiverse

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

manners - Politeness - respect - attention - money

A good student is someone who works hard to succeed. First, they always pay ① to the teachers in class to understand the lessons well. ② is also very important; a good student treats everyone with kindness. They show great ③ to their teachers and classmates. Having good ④ makes them a role model for others. By being organized and helpful, a good student makes a huge difference in their school.

6 Rewrite the sentences using the words between brackets:

1. That toy is hers. (her)

.....

2. No one is taller than Hatem. (tallest)

.....

3. My father decided to buy a car. (will)

.....

4. I have no pens. (any)

.....

7 Complete the following dialog:

Samy and Hala are talking about volunteering ideas.

Samy : I want to present some volunteering ideas to our class.

Hala : That's a great plan! What is your first idea?

Samy : We can help clean the ①..... in our neighborhood.

Hala : Good idea! And the second one?

Samy : We can visit old ②..... and spend time with them.

Hala : That will make them very ③.....

Samy : Yes, volunteering helps everyone feel ④.....

8 Write a paragraph of NIENTY (90) words on:

" The food you like most"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 16

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A. Write True (T) or False (F):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Lina ignored Sara when she was worried.

T	F
☐	☐
☐	☐

2. Sara understood the story after her sister helped her.

T	F
☐	☐

B. Listen again and complete:

3. Sara was because she couldn't read the English story.

4. Lina explained the new words using meanings.

5. This kind brought joy to both sisters.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The synonym of "surprised" is

- a. angry b. amazed c. bored d. tired

2. We add the prefix to form the opposite of happy.

- a. re- b. un- c. mis- d. in-

3. My sister helped me the living room with balloons.

- a. decorate b. destroy c. build d. hit

4. is the ability to wait calmly.

- a. Respect b. Effort c. Patience d. Action

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

library - quietly - knowledge - effort - visit

Hassan is a twelve-year-old student. One day, he decided to ① the school library after class. He sat and read ② Hassan enjoyed learning new things and gaining more ③ He learned that small ④ can help him become better every day.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Our school library used to be very quiet and boring. Few students visited it, and many books were old and dusty. Some students suggested making the library a better place. They talked to the school librarian and planned a reading corner. They made posters to invite students to join. Many students helped by bringing new books and decorating the place. They worked together after school. It took time and effort, but everyone enjoyed the work. Now, the library is lively and full of students. It encourages reading and helps students love books more.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The passage is mainly about
 a. buying new books b. improving the school library
 c. studying after school d. visiting the librarian
- The underlined word "encourages" means
 a. stops b. makes someone want to do something
 c. forgets d. avoids

B. Answer the following questions:

- How did the students make the library a better place?

.....

- What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?

.....

- What might happen if the students did not work together?

.....

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

SB

- The king was true to his word and allowed Dummling to marry the princess.

T	F
☐	☐
☐	☐

- Dummling's brothers believed he would succeed.

B. Answer the following questions:

- Why do you think the man rewarded Dummling?

.....

- Do you agree with the behavior of the hotel owner? Why or why not?

.....

6 Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. The blue jacket is Hisham's. (has)

.....

2. It is a good idea to eat healthy food every day. (should)

.....

3. Tamer is the fastest runner in the race. (No runner)

.....

4. She doesn't have many friends. (some)

.....

7 Complete the following dialog:

SB

Huda and Adam are talking about their favorite hobbies.

Huda : I enjoy drawing in my free time.

Adam : Me ①

Huda : ② hobby do you like?

Adam : I like swimming.

Huda : That's nice! I like swimming too.

Adam : Swimming is ③ It keeps me fit.

Huda : ④ does swimming make you feel?

Adam : It makes me happy.

8 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words about:

"How to help your parents"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A. Listening

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Where is the Grand Egyptian Museum located?

2. Why do you think the Grand Egyptian Museum is important for Egypt?

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Ahmed and Omar are talking on the phone.

Ahmed : Hi, Omar! How are you today?

Omar : ① _____, and you?

Ahmed : I'm good. ② _____ ?

Omar : I'm doing my homework.

Ahmed : That's good. ③ _____ ?

Omar : My brother is helping me.

Ahmed : Great! See you later.

3 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. You _____ read about Egypt's museums. It's advisable.

- a. should b. shouldn't c. mustn't d. can't

2. We care for _____ garden. It is amazing.

- a. ours b. our c. us d. ourselves

3. Best friends can tell each other their _____ because they trust each other.

- a. secrets b. names c. hobbies d. lunches

4. A good friend is always _____ and tells you the truth.

- a. shy b. honest c. funny d. noisy

4 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. I don't have some keys. (.....)
2. That house is their. (.....)
3. Riham is tall but Omar is tallest. (.....)
4. The children is doing their homework. (.....)

C: Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

My name is Lina. Last week was my 11th birthday, and my family planned a small party for me. When I came back from school, I found my cousins and friends at home. They sang "Happy Birthday" and gave me many gifts. My best friend, Sara, gave me a story book. We played games and ate a big cake. My dad bought the cake, and it was very delicious. I was very happy and enjoyed my day.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Who planned the party for Lina?

.....

2. What gift did Lina receive from Sara?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer:

3. When Lina came back from, she found her friends at home.

a. club b. shop c. park d. school

4. Lina's dad bought the cake, and it was very

a. cold b. delicious c. salty d. small

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences on:

"Who they are and their role in your life"

.....

A. Listening

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. What is one benefit of playing football?

2. Why do you think football is popular among students?

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Sara and Mona are talking at school.

Sara : Hi, Mona! How are you today?

Mona : ① _____, and you?

Sara : I'm good. ② _____?

Mona : I'm drawing in the art class.

Sara : That's nice. ③ _____?

Mona : My teacher is helping me.

Sara : Great! See you later.

3 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. You join the school trip tomorrow. It will be fun.

a. should b. shouldn't c. mustn't d. can't

2. We always help friends when they need us.

a. our b. ours c. us d. ourselves

3. It's important to wash your hands to stay

a. healthy b. happy c. tired d. hungry

4. A true friend always when you make a mistake.

a. lies b. laughs c. supports d. ignores

4 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. Raneem doesn't has any pens. (.....)

2. That house is them. (.....)

3. Do you help your brother with her homework?

(.....)

4. There are much cars in the street.

(.....)

C: Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

My name is Sara. Last weekend, my family took me to the zoo. I was very excited because I love animals. When we arrived, I saw lions, elephants, and monkeys. I took many pictures with my camera. My little brother, Adam, fed the ducks in the pond. We also had ice cream near the entrance. It was a sunny day, and I enjoyed every moment at the zoo.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Where did Sara's family take her last weekend?

.....

2. What did Sara's little brother, Adam, do at the zoo?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer:

3. Sara was very excited because she loves

a. music

b. books

c. animals

d. cars

4. Sara and her family had near the entrance.

a. sandwiches

b. ice cream

c. juice

d. cake

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences on:

"Your daily routines"

.....

.....

.....

.....

A. Listening

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. What is one benefit of playing basketball?

.....

2. Why do you think basketball is popular among students?

.....

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Ali : Have you ever eaten hamburgers before?

Sara : ①

Ali : ②?

Sara : I ate it at a famous fast food restaurant.

Ali : Did you enjoy it?

Sara : ③

Ali : Thank you.

3 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. That's my sister's bike, not

a. my b. I c. me d. mine

2. We visited the roof garden. It had an amazing view.

a. hotels' b. hotel's c. hotel of d. hotels

3. is the area or place where people live near each other.

a. Neighbor b. Neighborhood c. Childhood d. Comfort

SB

4. Lina volunteers at an animal

a. club b. shelter c. school d. park

SB

4 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. Sarahs bag is new. (.....)

2. I think it must rain soon. (.....)

3. The desk off the teacher is neat.

(.....)

4. Are Sara watching TV now?

(.....)

C: Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

My name is Omar. Last Saturday, my family took me to the park. I was very happy because I love playing outside. When we arrived, I rode my bicycle and played football with my friends. My sister, Lina, collected flowers near the playground. We also had some sandwiches and juice under a big tree. It was a sunny afternoon, and I enjoyed spending time with my family.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Where did Omar's family take him last Saturday?

.....

2. What did Omar's sister, Lina, do at the park?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer:

3. Omar was very happy because he loves

a. painting

b. singing

c. playing outside

d. reading

4. Omar and his family had under the tree.

a. pizza

b. cake

c. sandwiches and juice

d. ice cream

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences on:

"Your favorite holiday"

.....

.....

.....

.....

A. Listening

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. What is one benefit of reading books?

2. Why do you think reading is popular among students?

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Sara and Omar are talking at school.

Sara : Hi, Omar! What are you doing now?

Omar : ①

Sara : That sounds fun. ② ?

Omar : I'm drawing a picture of my pet.

Sara : Wow! ③ ?

Omar : Yes, I love animals.

Sara : Cool! See you later.

3 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. You eat fruits and vegetables every day to stay strong.

a. should

b. shouldn't

c. must

d. can

2. My little brother always shares toys with his friends.

a. ours

b. he

c. him

d. his

3. It's fun to play outside and stay

a. tired

b. bored

c. sleepy

d. healthy

4. A good student always to the teacher in class.

a. hides

b. shouts

c. runs

d. listens

4 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. Smiling at someone can makes them feel better.

(.....)

2. Next summer holiday, I would spend my time usefully.

(.....)

A. Listening

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. How many kinds of fish are there in the world?

2. What do fish use for swimming?

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Nabil is talking about his journey to Luxor.

Ahmed : When did you go to Luxor?

Nabil : ①

Ahmed : ②?

Nabil : By bus.

Ahmed : ③?

Nabil : For five days.

3 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. Children show by listening carefully to their teachers.

- a. hope b. respect c. kindness d. fact

2. You need to make great to reach your goals.

- a. smile b. value c. power d. effort

3. To get the adjective of the verb "decorate", we add the suffix ".....".

- a. -ed b. -ly c. -ive d. -ion

4. We go to school tomorrow. It's a holiday.

- a. mustn't b. shouldn't c. don't have to d. doesn't have to

4 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. Is this yours car? (.....)

2. The student chairs are broken. (.....)

3. You must smoke in hospitals.
 4. Maha is the taller girl in the team.

(.....)

(.....)

C: Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

I'm Omar. I have got two brothers and three sisters. My father is an old farmer. My mother is a housewife. She spends all her time cooking and cleaning the house. My father and mother work day and night to help us lead a happy life. They bring us up to love our country, Egypt. We live in a nice house on the farm. My father grows a lot of vegetables. He also keeps some animals and birds. At school, I have got a lot of friends. My school day begins at eight o'clock in the morning. After school, I usually help my father. I love looking after animals. I like to study farming because I want to grow the main crops on our farm.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What does Omar's father grow?

.....

2. Why does Omar like to study farming?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer:

3. Omar's school day begins at o'clock.

a. six

b. nine

c. eight

d. seven

4. Omar and his family leads a life.

a. sad

b. stressful

c. troubling

d. happy

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences on:

"Your school day"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Listening Material

Unit 7

- 1- Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Test on Unit 7

Mostafa went to the Grand Egyptian Museum last week. He was very excited. The guide showed him many old artifacts. Mostafa saw golden statues and learned about the pharaohs. He also saw interactive displays and tried some activities. Mostafa learned about Egyptian civilization. He felt very happy and proud. The visit was breathtaking and fun for him.

Unit 8

- 1- Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Lessons 1 & 2

Last weekend, Karim visited his uncle's farm. He helped feed the chickens and water the plants. Later, he rode his bike near the fields and enjoyed the fresh air. In the afternoon, he ate lunch with his uncle and listened to stories. The day was simple, peaceful, and enjoyable.

Test on Unit 8

Last Saturday, my friend Hani and I went to the city. It was very big and exciting. First, we visited the museum. We saw many old paintings. After that, we went to a small café for lunch. I had a sandwich and some juice. In the afternoon, we went shopping. I bought a new book. It was a fun day.

Unit 9

Test on Unit 9

- 1- Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Many students like taking homemade meals to school. Parents prepare sandwiches, fruit, and bottles of water in the morning before classes. These meals are fresh and healthy, and they help children concentrate. Some schools sell fast food, but many families prefer home cooking at least three days a week. My favorite lunch is rice and chicken made by my mother.

Unit 10

Test on Unit 10

- 1- Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Mrs. Ghada lost her small dog. She was very sad. We made flyers with a picture and shared them around the neighborhood. Everyone worked as a team. After two days, we found the dog! It was an excellent moment. We returned the dog to our elderly neighbor. She was so happy and thanked us warmly.

Unit 11

- 1- Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Lessons 1 & 2

In Egypt, the weather changes from town to town. Cairo is usually warm, with mild

winters. Alexandria is cooler and windy because it is near the sea. Aswan is very hot and sunny most of the year. In Sinai towns, nights can be cold, and days are dry and bright. Rain is rare, but skies stay clear often.

Test on Unit 11

During the summer holiday, Rami joined a short cooking course at a community center. He learned how to make simple meals like soup and pasta. The teacher showed the students how to use kitchen tools safely. Rami enjoyed cooking with other learners and sharing the food. At the end of the course, he felt more happy and planned to cook for his family at home.

Unit 12

Test on Unit 12

1- Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Staying active is important for your physical health. You can engage in activities like walking, running, or cycling. These exercises keep your heart and lungs fit. Physical activity also helps reduce stress and makes you feel refreshed. Whether you play football with friends or exercise alone, moving your body every day helps you stay strong and healthy.

General tests

Test 1

1- Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Tourists visit Alexandria every year. They go to the Citadel of Qaitbay. They enjoy the sea view and walk around the place. In the afternoon is a good time to visit because the weather is nice. Tour guides explain the history and help tourists during the visit.

Test 2

1- Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Ali and Hassan were arguing about the house chores. Ali said it was Hassan's turn to clean the room, but Hassan said that Ali only made his bed and didn't help much. Ali replied that he also washed the cups, so cleaning the room should be Hassan's job. They couldn't agree, so they asked their father to decide who was right.

Test 3

1- Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

My name is Lina. Last week was my 11th birthday, and my family planned a small party for me. When I arrived home from school, I found my cousins and friends in the living room. They said, "Happy Birthday!" happily. My best friend, Sara, gave me a nice gift. We played games, sang songs, and ate a delicious strawberry cake.

Test 4**1- Listen to the text and answer the following questions:**

My best friend is Mona Ali, and she has been my best friend for four years. She is fourteen years old, the same age as me, and she lives close to my school. Mona has short black hair and kind eyes. She is friendly and always helps me. She is also honest and caring, so I can share my secrets with her. Mona has one brother, and her parents work as doctors.

Test 5**1- Listen to the text and answer the following questions:**

Omar and Karim were arguing about their house duties. Omar said it was Karim's turn to clean the kitchen, but Karim said that Omar only watered the plants and didn't help much. Omar replied that he also swept the floor, so cleaning the kitchen should be Karim's job, not his. They couldn't agree, so they asked their mother to decide who was right.

Test 6**1- Listen to the text and answer the following questions:**

The Alis family lives in a house in Giza. There are six people in their family: Mom, Dad, and four children. Everyone has an important role at home.

Mom works as a teacher at a school. She teaches students every day. At home, she

cooks tasty meals for her family and helps her children with their homework. She is kind and always cares about her family.

Test 7**1- Listen to the text and answer the following questions:**

Making a delicious and healthy cheese sandwich is easy. First, you need two slices of bread, some cheese, tomato slices, and butter.

Put the bread on a clean plate. Then, spread a little butter on one slice and add the cheese. Add some tomato slices and lettuce. Finally, close the sandwich and enjoy your meal.

Test 8**1- Listen to the text and answer the following questions:**

Last Saturday, our family prepared a welcome party for my uncle, Ali. Everyone worked together to make the day wonderful. In the morning, my mother and grandmother made a plan and wrote a shopping list of what we needed: balloons, snacks, soft drinks, and a big cake. My brother and I helped our father buy everything from the market.

Test 9**1- Listen to the text and answer the following questions:**

Healthy food is very important for our bodies. Many people like to cook at home because homemade meals are clean and good for

health. A simple pasta dish can be made by boiling pasta in water with a little salt, then adding sauce and vegetables. After cooking, you can add cheese or chicken. Eating at home is usually healthier than eating fast food.

Test 10

1- Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Last month, we celebrated my mother's birthday at home. It was a happy day, and everyone felt excited. We cleaned the house and decorated the room with flowers and colorful lights. My father cooked her favorite food and made a tasty cake. I helped by bringing drinks and setting the table. My mother was very surprised when she saw the decorations and presents. We sang songs and played games together. It was a wonderful and joyful day.

Test 11

1- Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Last month, I went to my cousin's birthday party. The room was decorated with balloons and ribbons. We played exciting games and danced to music. My cousin's father prepared a big cake and some snacks for all the guests. At the end, we sang a birthday song and gave presents. Everyone enjoyed the party a lot.

Test 12

1- Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

I'm Omar. I'm a student, and this is a normal day for me. I go to school from Saturday to Wednesday. On school days, I wake up at seven o'clock. I usually eat breakfast with my family. My school is near my house, so I always walk. School starts at 8:30 a.m. and finishes at 2:30 p.m. I have three lessons before the break and three lessons after it.

Test 13

1- Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Eating healthy food helps us stay strong and active. Fresh fruits, vegetables, and brown rice give our bodies vitamins and energy. Many families enjoy cooking at home because homemade meals are safe and good for health. You can prepare different dishes like salads, soups, or fruit juices by mixing fresh ingredients.

Test 14

1- Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Last month, three young volunteers talked about their work.

Sara, 14, helps at the animal shelter. "I feed the animals and clean their cages," she said. "It makes me happy to see them healthy."

Ali, 15, spends his weekends helping at the local hospital. "I assist nurses and bring supplies. It feels good to help patients," he explained.

Nour, 16, works at the community garden. "We plant vegetables and flowers, and the garden looks nice for everyone," she said proudly.

Test 15

1- Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Laila lives in a town, but next weekend she will visit her grandmother's farm in a village near Tanta called Al-Rawda. She will help her grandmother water the plants and take care of the animals. She knows it will require effort and patience, but she is excited. Laila will clean the farm and prepare meals for the workers. She also plans to donate toys and books to a local charity.

Test 16

1- Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Sara was worried because she couldn't read the English story. Her sister, Lina, noticed that she was upset. After dinner, Lina sat with Sara and read the story slowly. She explained the new words using easy meanings. Little by little, Sara understood the story. She smiled and thanked her sister. Lina felt proud because she helped her. This kind act brought joy to both sisters.

Al Azhar

Test 1

The Grand Egyptian Museum is one of the most important cultural projects in Egypt. It is near the Giza Pyramids. The museum

connects Egypt's past with its future. It has modern buildings, glass fronts, and large halls. The museum is very big and shows many important ancient objects.

Test 2

Football is one of the most popular sports in the world. Many people enjoy watching and playing it. Football helps people stay healthy and strong. It also teaches teamwork and cooperation. Many students like playing football with their friends after school.

Test 3

Basketball is a very popular sport in many countries. People enjoy watching and playing basketball. Playing basketball helps people stay active and fit. It also teaches them how to work as a team. Many students enjoy playing basketball with their friends during breaks or after school.

Test 4

Reading books is a fun and useful activity. Many people enjoy reading in their free time. Reading helps people learn new things and improve their imagination. It also teaches patience and focus. Many students like reading storybooks or comics at home or in the school library.

Test 5

Fish live in seas, rivers and lakes. There are more than 30,000 kinds of fish in the world. Their size ranges from 2 centimetres to 20 metres long. They use their fins and tails for swimming. Most fish feed on other fish.